Abstract

The reledmac provides many tools in order to typeset scholarly editions. It is based on the eledmac package, which was based on the ledmac package, which was based on the EDMAC \TeX\ package.

It can be used in combination with reledpar in order to typeset two texts in parallel, like an original text and its translation in a modern language.

reledmac provides many tools and options. Normally, they are all documented in this file. Also provided is a help folder, examples. The folder contains additional examples (although not for every possible case). Examples starting with "1-" are for basic uses, those starting with "2-" are for advanced uses.

To report bugs or request a new feature, please go to ledmac GitHub page and click on "New Issue": \url{https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues/}. You must create an account on github.com to access my page (maieul/ledmac). GitHub accounts are free for open-source users. You can post messages in English or in French (preferred).

You can subscribe to the reledmac mail list at: \url{http://geekographie.maieul.net/146}

Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................. 12
  1.1 Aim of the package ................................................ 12
  1.2 History .................................................................. 13
    1.2.1 EDMAC ................................................................ 13
    1.2.2 ledmac ............................................................. 14
Contents

1.2.3 eledmac .................................................. 15
1.2.4 releledmac .............................................. 15
1.3 Bibliography .............................................. 15
1.4 Acknowledgements ...................................... 15

2 How the package works — the problem of the number of B\LaTeX{} runs .... 15

3 Compatibility warning ................................... 16

4 Options ..................................................... 16
  4.1 Specific features ...................................... 16
  4.2 Optimizing package performance .................... 17

5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering .............................. 18
  5.1 Text lines numbering .................................. 18
  5.2 Paragraphs .............................................. 18
    5.2.1 Basics ............................................ 18
    5.2.2 Automatically producing \pstart ... \pend ...... 19
    5.2.3 Content before specific \pstart and after specific \pend .... 19
    5.2.4 Content before every \pstart and after every \pend .... 20
    5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs (\pstart) .................. 20
    5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left ............... 21
    5.2.7 Memory limits .................................... 21
  5.3 Lineation commands ................................... 21
    5.3.1 Disabling lineation ................................ 21
    5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step ................. 22
    5.3.3 Setting lineation reset .......................... 22
    5.3.4 Setting line number margin ...................... 23
    5.3.5 Other settings .................................... 23
  5.4 Changing the line numbers ................................ 23
    5.4.1 Sublineation ...................................... 23
    5.4.2 Locking lineation ................................ 24
    5.4.3 Setting and changing line number ............... 24
    5.4.4 Line number style ................................ 24
    5.4.5 Skipping and hidding number .................... 25
  5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers ......................... 25
    5.5.1 Resetting annotation ............................. 26
    5.5.2 Modifying annotation associated with a specific note .... 27
    5.5.3 Changing the position of the annotation ........... 27
    5.5.4 Changing the macro in which annotations are wrapped .... 27
    5.5.5 Not printing the second identical annotations .... 28
    5.5.6 Separator between annotations ................... 28
    5.5.7 Annotations in the apparatus ..................... 28
  5.6 Executing code at each line ................................ 28
  5.7 Executing code at a specific line ........................ 29


# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>6 Apparatus commands</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Terminology</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 Critical notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1 The lemma</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2 Footnotes</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.3 Endnotes</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5 Change lemma and line number</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.1 Basic use</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.2 Case setting</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.3 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.4 Notes about right-to-left texts</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.5 Use with <code>\lemma</code> command</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.6 Sameword for a group of words</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.7 Customizing</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.8 Problems with some macros</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.9 Automatic sameword annotation</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4 Apparatus of manuscripts</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4.1 Marking sections of text</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4.3 Settings</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5 Familiar notes</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.1 Basic use</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.2 Customizing mark</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6 Printing the footnote mark without printing the footnote text</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7 Changing series</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1 Create a new series</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2 Delete series</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.3 Series order</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8 Position of critical and familiar footnotes</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7 Apparatus customization</strong></td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 Introduction</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 Notes arrangement in a series</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 Disabling footnote</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 Control number printing</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.1 Print line number only at first time</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2 Print page number only at first time</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.3 Arbitrary text before line number</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4 Separator for line range</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.5 Abbreviate line range</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.6 Disabling line number printing</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.7 Disabling page number printing</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.4.8 Printing pstart number</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.9 Printing stanza number</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.10 Options for line number annotations</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.11 Separator between line and subline numbers</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.12 Separator between page and line numbers</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.13 Space around number</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.14 Space around line symbol</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.15 Space in place of number</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.16 Boxing line number and line symbol</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 Separator between the lemma and the note</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.1 For footnotes</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.2 For endnotes</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6 Font style</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1 For line number</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.2 For the lemma</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.3 For all notes</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7 Wrapping notes</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.1 Wrapping lemmas</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.2 Wrapping contents</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8 Indent of notes content</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9 Arbitrary code</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9.1 Arbitrary code around line number</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9.2 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9.3 Arbitrary code before inserting note</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10 Options for footnotes in columns</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10.1 Alignment</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10.2 Size of the columns</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11 Options for paragraphed footnotes and notes grouped by line</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11.1 Mark separation of notes</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11.2 Ragged text</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12 Options for block of notes</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.1 Grouping notes by line</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.2 Text before notes</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.3 Code before notes</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.4 Spacing</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.5 Rule</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.6 Maximum height</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12.7 Width</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.13 Footnotes and the \texttt{reledpar} columns</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.14 Endnotes in one paragraph</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 8 Fonts

58
Contents

9 Verse ........................................... 58
  9.1 Basic ......................................... 58
  9.2 Define stanza indents ........................ 59
  9.3 Repeating stanza indents ................... 59
  9.4 Notes about the scope of the indent settings 60
  9.5 Manual stanza indent ....................... 60
  9.6 Stanza breaking .............................. 60
  9.7 Hanging symbol ............................. 61
  9.8 Long verse and page break ............... 61
  9.9 Content before/after verses ............... 61
  9.10 Numbering stanza ......................... 62
  9.11 Antilabe .................................... 63
  9.12 Various tools .............................. 63
  9.13 Notes on empty lines ..................... 63

10 Grouping ..................................... 63

11 Cross referencing ............................ 64
  11.1 Basic use .................................. 64
  11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note .... 65
  11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case .. 65
    11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note 65
  11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing .......... 66
  11.5 Normal BiX cross-referencing ............ 66
  11.6 References to start and end lines ....... 66
    11.6.1 Reference to main text lines .......... 66
    11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus 67
    11.6.3 Settings ............................... 67
    11.6.4 Combining multiple references ........ 69
  11.7 Compatibility with \texttt{xr} package .... 69

12 Sidenotes .................................... 70
  12.1 Basics ................................... 70
  12.2 Setting ................................... 70
    12.2.1 Width ................................ 70
    12.2.2 Vertical position ..................... 70
    12.2.3 Distance to the main text .......... 70
    12.2.4 Font .................................. 70
    12.2.5 Separator between notes ........... 71

13 Indexing ..................................... 71
  13.1 Basics .................................... 71
  13.2 Use with \texttt{imakeidx} or \texttt{indextools} .... 71
  13.3 Referring to critical notes ............... 71
  13.4 Separator between page and line numbers 72
  13.5 Using xindy ............................... 72
## Contents

13.6 Advanced setting ................................................. 73

### 14 Glossary

14.1 Preamble setting .............................................. 73
14.2 Commands ......................................................... 74

### 15 Tabular material

### 16 Sectioning commands

16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes .......... 77
16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes ........... 77
16.3 Optimization ...................................................... 78

### 17 Quotation environments

### 18 Page breaks

18.1 Control page breaking ........................................... 79
18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses .................................. 79

### 19 Miscellaneous

19.1 Known and suspected limitations .................................. 80
  19.1.1 Non-standard geometry ....................................... 80
  19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility ................................ 80
  19.1.3 "No room for a new" .......................................... 80
  19.1.4 Marginal notes .................................................. 80
  19.1.5 Paragraph shape ............................................... 81
  19.1.6 Paragraped footnotes .......................................... 81
  19.1.7 Use with other packages ...................................... 81
  19.2 Parallel typesetting ............................................. 82

I Implementation overview ............................................. 83

II Preliminaries ......................................................... 83

  II.1 Links with original EDMAC .................................... 83
  II.2 Package declaration ............................................. 83
  II.3 Package options .................................................. 84
    II.3.1 Options of reledpar .......................................... 84
    II.3.2 Options of reledmac ......................................... 84
  II.4 Loading packages ................................................ 86
  II.5 Compatibility with LuaLaTeX ..................................... 87
  II.6 Boolean flags .................................................... 87
  II.7 Messages .......................................................... 88
  II.8 Gobbling .......................................................... 95
  II.9 Wrapping content ............................................... 96
  II.10 Miscellaneous commands .................................... 96
  II.11 Prepare reledpar ................................................ 97
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>II.12 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Sectioning commands</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV List macros</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Line counting</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.1 Choosing the system of lineation</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.2 Line number margin</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.3 Line number initialization and increment</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.4 Line number locking</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.5 Line number style</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.6 Line number printing</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.7 Line number counters and lists</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.8 Line number locking counter</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.9 Line number associated to lemma</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.10 Reading the line-list file</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.11 Commands within the line-list file</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.12 Writing to the line-list file</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI Marking text for notes</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.1 \edtext itself</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.2 Substitute lemma</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.3 Substitute line numbers</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.4 Lemma disambiguation</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.1 Boxes, counters, \pstart and \pend</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2 Processing one line</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2.1 General process</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2.2 Process for &quot;normal&quot; line</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2.3 Process for line containing \eledsection command</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2.4 Hooks</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII Line and page number computation</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.1 Continuous line numbering between parallel typesetting and normal typesetting</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX Line number annotation</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X Line number printing</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI Pstart number printing inside</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

XIX Specific skip for first series of footnotes 254
   XIX.1 Overview ............................................. 254
   XIX.2 User level command .............................. 254
   XIX.3 Internal commands ............................... 255

XX Endnotes 256
   XX.1 Internal commands .................................. 256
   XX.2 User level commands .............................. 260
      XX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes .......... 260
      XX.2.2 Printing endnotes ......................... 261

XXI Generate series of notes 270
   XXI.1 Test if series is still existing ............. 271
   XXI.2 Init specific to \reledpar ................. 271
   XXI.3 For critical footnotes ...................... 271
      XXI.3.1 Options ...................................... 271
      XXI.3.2 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot 273
      XXI.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, \footnote, \bfootnote etc .............................................. 274
   XXI.4 For familiar footnotes ....................... 277
      XXI.4.1 Options ...................................... 277
      XXI.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes (\footnoteX) 278
   XXI.5 The endnotes ...................................... 280
      XXI.5.1 The auxiliary file ......................... 280
      XXI.5.2 The main macro ......................... 281
      XXI.5.3 Tools ......................................... 281
      XXI.5.4 Internal commands ....................... 282
      XXI.5.5 The options ............................... 282
   XXI.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E) .......... 284

XXII Setting series display 284
   XXII.1 Change series order ......................... 284
   XXII.2 Test series order ............................. 285
      XXII.2.1 Get the first series ..................... 285
   XXII.3 Series setting .................................. 285
      XXII.3.1 General way of working .................. 285
      XXII.3.2 Tools to set options .................... 285
      XXII.3.3 Tools to generate options commands .... 287
      XXII.3.4 Options for critical notes ............. 289
      XXII.3.5 Options for familiar notes ............. 291
      XXII.3.6 Options for endnotes ................... 292
   XXII.4 Hooks for a particular footnote ............. 293
   XXII.5 Alias ............................................. 295
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXIII Output routine</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIII.1 Extra footnotes output</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIII.2 Patching standard output’s commands</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV Page numbering in parallel typsetting</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV Cross referencing</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV.1 Compatibility with xref</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVI Sidenotes</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVII Minipages and such</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII Indexing</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.1 Looking on package order</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.2 Auxiliary macros for \index</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.3 Code specific to \index in critical footnotes</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.4 Analysis of command in indexed text</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.5 Code for the formatted index</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.6 Main code</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.7 Hyperlink</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.8 “innote” and “notenumber” option of indextools package</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX Glossaries</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX Verse</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.1 Hanging symbol management</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.2 Using &amp; character</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.3 Code category setting</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.4 Stanza count and indent</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.5 Numbering stanza</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.6 Stanza number in note</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.7 Main work</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.8 Restore catcode and penalties</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.9 Dealing with antilabe</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI Apparatus of Manuscripts</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.1 User level macro</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.2 Setting macro</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.3 Counters and lists</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.4 Auxiliary file macros</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.5 Action macro</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.6 Inserting footnote</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.7 Other</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Introduction

1.1 Aim of the package

The reledmac package, together with \TeX, provides several important facilities for formatting critical editions of texts in a traditional manner. Major features include:

- automatic stepped line numbering, by page, section or paragraph;
- sub-lineation within the main series of line numbers;
- variant readings automatically keyed to line numbers;
- caters to both prose and verse;
- multiple series of footnotes and endnotes;
1.2 History

- block or columnar formatting of the footnotes;
- simple tabular material may be line numbered;
- indexing keyed to page and line numbers.

reledmac allows the scholar engaged in preparing a critical edition to focus attention wholly on the task of creating the critical text and evaluating the variant readings, text-critical notes and testimonia. \LaTeX{} and reledmac will take care of the formatting and visual correlation of all the disparate types of information.

Apart from reledmac there are other \LaTeX{} packages for typesetting critical editions. However, the aim of reledmac is to provide an “all in one” and flexible tool in the field of critical editions.

Any suggestions for new features are welcome.

This manual contains a general description of how to use reledmac, followed by the complete source code and its extensive documentation (in sections I and following, enumerated with Roman numerals). It ends with a list of actions to do when migrating from one version to other, a change history and an index to the source code.

You do not need to read the source code for this package in order to use it; we provide this code primarily for reference, and many of our comments on it repeat material that is also found in earlier sections. But no documentation, however thorough, can cover every question that comes up and many can be answered quickly by consulting the code. On a first reading, we suggest that you read only the general documentation in sections II unless you are particularly interested in the innards of reledmac.

1.2 History

1.2.1 EDMAC

The original version of EDMAC was TEXTED.TEX, written by John Lavagnino in late 1987 and early 1988 for formatting critical editions of English plays.

John passed these macros on to Dominik Wujastyk who, in September–October 1988, added the footnote paragraphing mechanism, margin swapping and other changes to suit his own purposes, making the style more like that traditionally used for classical texts in Latin and Greek (e.g., the Oxford Classical Texts series). He also wrote some extra documentation and sent the files out to several people. This version of the macros was the first to be called EDMAC.

The present version was developed in the summer of 1990, with the intent of adding necessary features, streamlining and documenting the code, and further generalizing it to make it easily adaptable to the needs of editors in different disciplines. John did most of the general reworking and documentation, with the financial assistance of the Division of the Humanities and Social Sciences, California Institute of Technology. Dominik adapted the code to the conventions of Frank Mittelbach’s \texttt{doc} option, and added some documentation, multiple-column footnotes, cross-references, and crop marks. A description by John and Dominik of this version of EDMAC was published as “An overview of EDMAC: a Plain \LaTeX{} format for critical editions”, \textit{TUGboat} 11 (1990), pp. 623–643.

\footnote{This version of the macros was used to format the Sanskrit text in volume 1 of \textit{Metarules of Paninian Grammar} by Dominik Wujastyk (Groningen: Forsten, 1993).}
From 1991 through 1994, the macros continued to evolve, and were tested at a number of sites. We are very grateful to all the members of the (now defunct) edmac@mailbase.ac.uk discussion group who helped us with smoothing out the bugs and infelicities in the macros. Ron Whitney and our anonymous reviewer at the TUG were both of great help in ironing out last-minute wrinkles, while Ron made some important suggestions which may help to make future versions of EDMAC even more efficient. Wayne Sullivan, in particular, provided several important fixes and contributions, including adapting the Mittelbach/Schöpf "New Font Selection Scheme" for use with Plain TeX and EDMAC. Another project Wayne has worked on is a DVI post-processor which works with an EDMAC that has been slightly modified to output \specials. This combination enables you to recover to some extent the text of each line as ASCII code, facilitating the creation of concordances, an index verborum, etc.

As of 1994, we were pleased to be able to say that EDMAC was being used for the real-life book production of several interesting editions, such as the Latin texts of Euclid’s Elements,\[2\] an edition of the letters of Nicolaus Copernicus,\[3\] Simon Bredon’s Arithmetico,\[4\] a Latin translation by Plato of Tivoli of an Arabic astrolabe text, a Latin translation of part II of the Arabic Algebra by Abū Kāmil Shuja’ b. Aslam,\[5\] the Latin Rithmachia of Werinher von Tegernsee,\[6\] a middle-Dutch romance epic on the Crusades,\[7\] a seventeenth-century Hungarian politico-philosophical tract,\[8\] an anonymous Latin compilation from Hungary entitled Sermones Compilati in Studio Generali Quinquecclesiensi in Regno Ungarie,\[9\] the collected letters and papers of Leibniz,\[10\] Theodosius’s Spherics, the German Algorismus of Sacrobosco, the Sanskrit text of the Kāśikāvṛtti of Vāmana and Jayāditya,\[11\] and the English texts of Thomas Middleton’s collected works.

1.2.2 edmac

Version 1.0 of tabmac was released by Herbert Breger in October 1996. This added the capability for typesetting tabular material.

Version 0.01 of edstanza was released by Wayne Sullivan in June 1992, to help a colleague with typesetting Irish verse.

In March 2003 Peter Wilson started an attempt to port EDMAC from TeX to LaTeX.

---


\[3\] Being prepared at the German Copernicus Research Institute, Munich.

\[4\] Being prepared by Menso Folkerts et al., at the Institut für Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften in Munich.

\[5\] Richard Lorch, Gerhard Brey et al., at the same Institute.


\[7\] Menso Folkerts, “Die Rithmachia des Werinher von Tegernsee”, ibid.


\[10\] Being produced, as was the previous book, by Gyula Mayer in Budapest.

\[11\] Leibniz, Sämtliche Schriften und Briefe, series I, III, VII, being edited by Dr. H. Breger, Dr. N. Gädeke and others at the Leibniz-Archiv, Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek, Hannover. (see http://www.nlb-hannover.de/Leibniz)

\[12\] Being prepared at Poona and Lausanne Universities.
1.3 Bibliography

The starting point was EDMAC version 3.16 as documented on 19 July 1994 (available from CTAN). In August 2003 the tabmac functions were added; the starting point for these being version 1.0 of October 1996. The edstanza (v0.01) functions were added in February 2004. Sidenotes and regular footnotes in numbered text were added in April 2004. This port was called ledmac (\LaTeX EDMAC).

Since July 2011, ledmac is maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. It is increasingly powerful and flexible, but it also has become increasingly divergent from the original TeX macro.

1.2.3 eledmac

Important changes were put in version 1.0, to make ledmac more easily extensible (see \hfill 7 p. 43). These changes can trigger small problems with the old customization. That is why a new name was selected: eledmac (extended ledmac).

To migrate from ledmac to eledmac, please read \hfill A.2 p. 409.

1.2.4 reledmac

eledmac has facilitated the creation of customized critical editions. However, the changes made to allow such customization were made in a non-systematic way. Many deprecated commands were kept and many technical "debts" were accumulated, hindering the future evolution of the package.

For these reasons, Maïeul Rouquette decided on a spring cleaning of the code. As some commands name were changed, the resulting compatibility was broken (a little).

A new name was selected: reledmac (extended renewed eledmac). To migrate from eledmac to reledmac, please read \hfill A.9 p. 412.

1.3 Bibliography

A collaborative list of works edited with (r)(e)(ledmac is available at \hfill https://www.zotero.org/groups/209265/critical_editions_typeset_with_edmac_ledmac_eledmac_and_reledmac/ Please add your own edition made with (r)(e)ledmac.

If you write a book or an article about (r)(e)ledmac, please add it on the collaborative bibliography on \hfill https://www.zotero.org/groups/1024519/.

1.4 Acknowledgements

Maïeul Rouquette may thank his predecessor, and all the reledmac communaty. Especially, he may thanks all the people who checks English spell and grammar for the handbook.

2 How the package works — the problem of the number of \LaTeX runs

The reledmac package is a three-pass package like \LaTeX itself. Although your textual apparatus and line numbers will be printed on the first run, it takes two more compila-
tions by \LaTeX{} to be sure that everything is correctly placed, and one more if you typeset right-to-left text with Xe\LaTeX{}. If you make any subsequent changes altering the number of lines or notes, the input file may similarly require three passes to get everything to the right place. \texttt{reledmac} will tell you that you need to make more runs when it detects changes, but it does not expend the labor to check this thoroughly. If you have problems with a line or two misnumbered at the top of a page, try running \LaTeX{} once or twice more.

However, the best way to be sure that one has made the right number of runs is to use some of \LaTeX{}'s run scripts like \texttt{latexmk}.

\section{Compatibility warning}

If you use other classes than \texttt{article} or \texttt{book}, or modify the layout with \texttt{geometry}, some settings should be made to have correct height for the blocks of notes.

Please read \texttt{7.12.6 p. 57}.

If you use the Lua\TeX{} engine, you need Lua\TeX{} 1.1.0 or later. A file may mix \texttt{numbered} and \texttt{unnumbered} text.

Numbered text is printed with marginal line numbers and can include footnotes and endnotes that are referenced to those line numbers: this is how you will want to print the text that you are editing.

Unnumbered text is not printed with line numbers, and you can’t use \texttt{reledmac}'s note commands with it: this is appropriate for introductions and other material added by the editor around the edited text.

\section{Options}

The package can be loaded with a number of global options which are listed here. There are two types of options: 1) options which provide specific features, and, 2) options which optimize the package’s performance. It is advisable for you to read the relevant parts of the handbook, before reading about the first type of option (specific features), but you can look at the second type (package optimization) in your first reading of the manual.

\subsection{Specific features}

\texttt{draft} underlines lemmas in the main text.

\texttt{auxdir} \texttt{reledmac} generates auxiliary files. It could be useful to store them in a specific directory. You can set it using \texttt{auxdir=\langle folder\rangle} option. Note the two following point:

1. \TeX{} is not able to create folder. You should create it yourself.
2. The option does not change the default \TeX{}auxiliary files (.aux, .toc, …).

\texttt{antilabe} enable \texttt{\antilabe} feature (see \texttt{9.11 p. 63}).
4.2 Optimizing package performance

eledmac-compat help to migrate from eledmac to reledmac (see A.9.5 p. 413);
nopenalties must be called in some cases when using paragraphed endnotes (see ?? p. ??);
nopbinverse prevents page break within verse environment;
noquotation by default, the quotation environment is redefined within numbered text. You can disable this redefinition with noquotation (see 17 p. 78);
noresetlinenumannotation does not reset the annotations to line number at each line (see 5.5 p. 25);
parapparatus by default, the apparatus cannot contain paragraph breaks; this option enables paragraphing inside the apparatus;
swcaseinsensitive make \sameword command case insensitive;
widthliketwocolumns set the width of the text printed in a single column to be the same as the width of the text printed in two parallel columns with reledpar. This is useful when alternating between normal and parallel typesetting;
xindy and xindy+hyperref select xindy as the index processor (13.5 p. 72).

4.2 Optimizing package performance

nocritical disables tools for critical footnotes (\Afootnote, \Bfootnote etc.). If you do not need critical footnotes, this option lets reledmac run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

noeledsec disables tools for \eledsection and related commands (16.2 p. 77).

noend disables tools for endnotes (\Aendnote, \Bendnote etc.). If you do not need endnotes, this option lets reledmac run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

nofamiliar disables tools for familiar footnotes (\footnoteA, \footnoteB etc.). If you do not need familiar footnotes, this option lets reledmac run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

noledgroup reledmac allows use of a series of critical notes and a new series of normal notes inside minipage and ledgroup environments (see 10 p. 64). However, such features use up computer memory, at the expense of other processing needs. So if you do not need this feature, use noledgroup option. This should make reledmac faster.

series reledmac defines five levels of notes: A, B, C, D, E. Using all these levels consumes memory space and processing speed. This is why, if your work does not require the entire A–E series, you can narrow down the available number of series. For example, if you only need A and B series, call the package with series={A,B} option.
5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering

5.1 Text lines numbering

\beginnumbering Each section of numbered text must be preceded by \beginnumbering and followed by \endnumbering, as in the following example.

\beginnumbering
Text
\endnumbering

The \beginnumbering macro resets the line number to zero, reads an auxiliary file called ⟨jobname⟩.nn (where ⟨jobname⟩ is the name of the main input file for this job, and nn is 1 for the first numbered section, 2 for the second section, and so on), and then creates a new version of this auxiliary file to collect information during this run. The first instance of \beginnumbering also opens a file called ⟨jobname⟩.<series>end to receive the text of the endnotes. \endnumbering closes the ⟨jobname⟩.nn file.

If the line numbering of a text is to be continuous from start to end, then the whole text will be typed between one pair of \beginnumbering and \endnumbering commands. But your text will most often contain chapter or other divisions marking sections that should be independently numbered, and these will be appropriate places to begin new numbered sections.

relsedmac has to read and store in memory a certain amount of information about the entire section when it encounters a \beginnumbering command, so it speeds up the processing and reduces memory use when a text is divided into a larger number of sections (at the expense of multiplying the number of external files that are generated).

5.2 Paragraphs

5.2.1 Basics

\pstart Within a numbered section, each paragraph of numbered text must be marked using the \pstart and \pend commands like this:

\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend

Text that appears within a numbered section but is not marked with \pstart and \pend will not be numbered.

The following example shows the proper section and paragraph markup and the kind of output that would typically be generated:
This is a sample paragraph, with lines numbered automatically.

This paragraph too has its lines automatically numbered.

The lines of this paragraph are not numbered.

And here the numbering begins again.

\beginnumbering
\autopar
A paragraph of numbered text.

Another paragraph of numbered text.
\endnumbering

\autopar fails, however, on paragraphs that start with a \{ or with any other command that starts a new group before it generates any text. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly, before the new group is opened, using \indent, \noindent, or \leavevmode, or using \pstart itself.\footnote{For a detailed study of the reasons for this restriction, see Barbara Beeton, "Initiation rites", \textit{TUGboat} 12 (1991), pp. 257–258.}

\begin{numbering}
\autopar
\end{numbering}

Both \pstart and \pend can take an optional argument in brackets. Its content will be printed before the beginning of \pstart / after the end of \pend instead of the argument of \AtEveryPstart / \AtEveryPend.

5.2  Paragraphs

\begin{numbering}
\autopar
\end{numbering}

\autopar
You can use \autopar to avoid the nuisance of this paragraph markup and still have every paragraph automatically numbered. The \autopar command needs to be called inside a \beginnumbering...\endnumbering structure, as follows:

\beginnumbering
\autopar
A paragraph of numbered text.

Another paragraph of numbered text.
\endnumbering

\begin{numbering}
\autopar
\end{numbering}

\autopar
Note that a `\noindent` will be automatically added before this argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip` will be inserted. You can use a second optional argument in brackets to avoid that `\noindent`.

```latex
\pstart[foo] % A `\noindent` will be inserted before foo.
\pstart[] [foo]% No `\noindent` before foo.
```

The second optional argument of `\pstart / \pend` replaces the argument of `\AtEveryPstart* / \AtEveryPend*`.

If you need to start a `\pstart` with brackets, or to add brackets after a `\pend`, just add a `\relax` between `\pstart`...`\pend` and the brackets.

This feature is also useful when typesetting verses (see 9 p. 58) or `reledpar` (see 19.2 p. 82).

A `\noindent` is automatically added before this argument.

### 5.2.4 Content before every `\pstart` and after every `\pend`

You can use both `\AtEveryPstart` and `\AtEveryPend`. Their arguments will be printed before every `\pstart` begins / after every `\pend` ends.

Note that a `\noindent` will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip`. You can use the starred version of `\AtEveryPstart` and `\AtEveryPend` to avoid the `\noindent`.

The argument of `\AtStartEveryPstart / \AtEndEveryPend` will be inserted at the beginning / the end of every `\pstart / \pend` in the same paragraph. For example, if you want each `\pstart` to start with a star, you can use:

```latex
\AtStartEveryPstart{*}
```

Instead of manually doing

```latex
\pstart * Real pstart content.\pend
```

### 5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs (\pstart)

It is possible to insert a number at every `\pstart` command; you must use the `\numberpstarttrue` command to have it. You can stop the numbering with `\numberpstartfalse`.

You can redefine the command `\thepstart` to change style. You can change the value of the pstart number by using `after \beginnumbering`:

```latex
\setcounter{pstart}{value}
```

On each `\beginnumbering` the numbering restarts.

With the `\sidepstartnumtrue` command, the number of `\pstart` will be printed at the sides of the text. In this case, the line number will not be printed.

With the `\labelpstarttrue` command, a `\label` added just after a `\pstart` will refer to the number of this pstart.
5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left

If you use languages written right to left with \LaTeX or \TeXeL, you must switch text direction before the \pstart command.

5.2.7 Memory limits

This paragraph is kept for history, but the problems described below should not appear with the most recent version of \TeX.

reledmac stores a lot of information about line numbers and footnotes in memory as it goes through a numbered section. But at the end of such a section, it empties its memory out, so to speak. If your text has a very long numbered section it is possible that your \TeX may reach its memory limit. There are two solutions to this.

The first solution is to get a larger \TeX with increased memory.

The second solution is to split your long section into several smaller ones. The trouble with this is that your line numbering will start again at zero with each new section. To avoid this problem, we provide \pausenumbering and \resumenumbering which are just like \endnumbering \beginnumbering, except that they arrange for your line numbering to continue across the break. Use \pausenumbering only between numbered paragraphs:

\beginnumbering
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
\pausenumbering
\resumenumbering
\pstart
Another paragraph.
\pend
\endnumbering

We have defined these commands as two macros, in case you find it necessary to insert text between numbered sections without disturbing the line numbering. But if you are really just using these macros to save memory, you might as well type,

\newcommand{\memorybreak}{\pausenumbering\resumenumbering}

and type \memorybreak between the relevant \pend and \pstart.

5.3 Lineation commands

5.3.1 Disabling lineation

Line numbering can be disabled with \numberlinefalse. It can be enabled again with \numberlinetrue.

This feature must be used with caution.

• It should not be use if you have critical footnotes after \numberlinefalse.
It could be used in the following cases:

- You want only familiar footnotes, not critical footnotes;
- You want only parallel typesetting (using `reledpar`) but no critical footnotes.
- You disable, for a portion of text, line numbering.

It must not be used if:

- You do not want to have the line number in the margins, but do want to use critical footnotes. In this case, set `\firstlinenum` to a big value, such as 100,000 (5.3.2 p. 22).
- You want to freeze the line numbering for some line, but still keep critical footnotes. In this case, use `\startlock` (5.4.2 p. 24).

A successor to `reledmac` may disable this feature.

### 5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step

- `\firstlinenum` and `\linenumincrement` control the behavior: `\firstlinenum` specifies the first line that will have a printed number, and `\linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. For example, to start printing numbers at the first line and to have every other line numbered:

```
\firstlinenum{1} \linenumincrement{2}
```

- `\firstsublinenum` and `\sublinenumincrement` are for controlling sub-line numbering.

You can define `\linenumberlist` to specify a non-uniform distribution of printed line numbers. For example:

```
\gdef\linenumberlist{1,2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29}
```

to have numbers printed on prime-numbered lines only. There must be no spaces within the definition which consists of comma-separated integer numbers. The numbers can be in any order but it is easier to read if you put them in numerical order. Either omitting the definition of `\linenumberlist` or following the empty definition `\gdef\linenumberlist{}`

the standard numbering sequence is applied. The standard sequence is that specified by the combination of the `\firstlinenum`, `\linenumincrement`, `\firstsublinenum` and `\sublinenumincrement` counter values.

### 5.3.3 Setting lineation reset

- `\lineation` lines can be numbered either by page, by pstart or by section; you specify this using the `\lineation{<arg>}` macro, where `<arg>` is either `page`, `pstart` or `section`.

You may only use this command at places where numbering is not in effect; you can’t change the lineation system within a section. You can change it between sections: they don’t all have to use the same lineation system. The package’s standard setting is


5.4 Changing the line numbers

\lineation{section}. If the lineation is by pstart, the pstart number will be printed before the line number in the notes.

5.3.4 Setting line number margin

The command \linenummargin{⟨location⟩} specifies the margin where the line (or pstart) numbers will be printed. The permissible values for ⟨location⟩ are left, right, inner, or outer: for example, \linenummargin{inner}. The package’s default setting is \linenummargin{left} to typeset the numbers in the left hand margin. You can change this whenever you’re not in the middle of making a paragraph.

More precisely, the value of \linenummargin used is the value in effect at the \pend of a numbered paragraph. Apart from an initial setting for \linenummargin, only change \linenummargin after a \pend, whereupon it will apply to all following numbered paragraphs, until changed again (changing it between a \pstart and \pend pair will apply the change to all of the current paragraph).

5.3.5 Other settings

When a marginal line number is to be printed, there are many ways to display it. You can redefine \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum to change the way marginal line numbers are printed in the left and right margins respectively; the initial versions print the number in font \numlabfont (described below) at a distance \linenumsep (initially set to one pica) from the text.

5.4 Changing the line numbers

Normally, line numbering starts at 1 for the first line of a section and increments by one for each line thereafter. There are various common modifications of this system and the commands described here allow you to put such modifications into effect.

5.4.1 Sublineation

You insert the \startsub and \endsub commands in your text to turn sub-lineation on and off. For example, stage directions in plays are often numbered with sub-line numbers: as line 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, rather than as 11, 12, and 13. Titles and headings are sometimes numbered with sub-line numbers as well.

When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it doesn’t take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if it changes in the middle.

You can change the separator between the line number and the subline number either by using \xsublinesep without any optional argument (7.4.11 p. 49) or by using \xsublinesepside. In the second case, it will change the separator only for line numbers in the margins, not in the footnotes.
5.4.2 Locking lineation

\startlock \endlock The \startlock command, used in running text, locks the line number at its current value, until you insert \endlock. It can tell for itself whether you are in a patch of line or sub-line numbering. One use for line-number locking is in printing poetry: there the line numbers should be those of verse lines rather than of printed lines, even when a verse line requires several printed lines. But in this case you may use the \stanza mechanism, see p. 58.

\lockdisp When line-number locking is used, several printed lines may have the same line number, and you have to specify whether you want the number attached to the first printed line or the last, or whether you just want the number printed by them all, assuming that the settings of the previous parameters requires the display of a line number for this line. You specify your preference using \lockdisp{⟨arg⟩}; its argument is a word, either first, last, or all. The package initially sets this as \lockdisp{first}.

5.4.3 Setting and changing line number

\setline \advanceline In some cases you may want to modify the line numbers that are automatically calculated: if you are printing only fragments of a work but want to print line numbers appropriate to a complete version, for example. The \setline{⟨num⟩} and \advanceline{⟨num⟩} commands may be used to change the current line’s number (or the sub-line number, if sub-lineation is currently on). They change both the marginal line numbers and the line numbers passed to the notes. \setline takes one argument, the value to which you want the line number set; it must be 0 or greater. \advanceline takes one argument, an amount that should be added to the current line number; it may be positive or negative.

\setlinenum The \setline and \advanceline macros should only be used within a \pstart...\pend group. The \setlinenum{⟨num⟩} command can be used outside such a group, for example, between a \pend and a \pstart. It sets the line number to ⟨num⟩. It has no effect if used within a \pstart...\pend group.

5.4.4 Line number style

\linenumberstyle \sublinenumberstyle Line numbers are normally printed as arabic numbers. You can use \linenumberstyle{⟨style⟩} to change the numbering style. ⟨style⟩ must be one of:

Alph Uppercase letters (A … Z).
alph Lowercase letters (a … z).
arabic Arabic numerals (1, 2, …)
Roman Uppercase Roman numerals (I, II, …)
roman Lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, …)

Note that with the Alph or alph styles, “numbers” must be between 1 and 26 inclusive. Similarly \sublinenumberstyle{⟨style⟩} can be used to change the numbering style of sub-line numbers, which is normally arabic numerals.
5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers

5.4.5 Skipping and hiding number

\skipnumbering When inserted into a numbered line, the macro \skipnumbering causes the numbering of that particular line to be skipped; that is, the line number is unchanged and no line number will be printed. Note that if you use it in \stanza, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

\hidenumbering When inserted into a numbered line, the macro \hidenumbering causes the number for that particular line to be hidden; namely, no line number will print. Note that if you use it in \stanza, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

\hidenumberingonleftpage is like hidenumbering, but is applied only on left page. \hidenumberingonrightpage is applied on right page. They can be useful if the position of the line number is depending on the position of the page, but the position of the marginal note is fixed.

5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers

You may want to have two or more numbers associated with a line of text. Consider, for example, the following cases:

- You want to split a line of verse into two parts depending upon some stylistic / rhythmic / linguistic convention.
- You want to add the line number used by a previous edition of the work.
- You want to typeset biblical text, and use division in verse.

In such instances, you must add the second number manually, as reledmac can’t determine a general pattern for such numbering, which depends too heavily upon the edited text\footnote{14}. To resolve this issue, reledmac allows you to annotate line numbers using the following command:

\linenumannotation{<annotation>}

The annotation can contain any textual value (whether number, text, or other) such as the line number from the older edition. Here are some characteristics of line number annotation:

- An annotation is associated with a line of text. It is reset with each new line of text, unless you use the noresetlinenumannotation option of reledmac.
- It is printed alongside the line number in the margin.
- It is printed following the line number in critical footnotes and endnotes.
- And of particular interest: the annotation is printed in the critical note only when the \edtext is issued after the \linenumannotation.
• If two or more annotations are called before an \edtext, the last one is used in associated notes.

• If an annotation is called within an \edtext, it is printed as an annotation for the end of the lemma.

Here is an example, supposing we are on line 1:

\edtext{first lemma}
\linenumannotation{A}
\edtext{second lemma}{...}
\edtext{third%}
  \linenumannotation{B}
  lemma}{...}
\edtext{fourth lemma}&

In the critical notes, the line number will be followed

• by nothing in the first lemma, as there is no annotation for this line;

• by “A” for the second lemma;

• by “A-B” for the third lemma, as it starts while annotation A is still in effect and it finishes after annotation B has already taken effect;

• by “B” for the fourth lemma.

Note that the annotation must be called before the beginning of a \edtext to be taken into account as a starting annotation. So:

\linenumannotation{A}\edtext{something...\linenumannotation{B}}{\Afootnote{foo}}

will use A as starting annotation, while:

\edtext{\linenumannotation{A}something...\linenumannotation{B}}{\Afootnote{foo}}

won’t.

5.5.1 Resetting annotation

You can manually reset annotation using \resetlinenumannotation{}. Note that this macro takes no argument, but you should use empty brackets or \in order to avoid gobbling spaces\footnote{17}
5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers

5.5.2 Modifying annotation associated with a specific note

The \linenum macro changes the line number passed to a note. The \lineannot macro does the same for the annotations. It takes one argument, containing the beginning and ending annotations separated by a pipe (|). As with \linenum, if one wishes to change some specific part of the annotation, one can use

\lineannot{b}% to change the ending annotation
\lineannot{a}% to change the beginning annotation
\lineannot{a|b}% to change both
\lineannot{\empty}% to delete the beginning annotation

5.5.3 Changing the position of the annotation

By default, annotations are placed after line numbers in both margin and footnote. To change this behavior, one can use one of the following commands:

- \Xlinenumannotationposition\langle s\rangle\{\langle v\rangle\} changes the position in critical footnotes with \langle s\rangle for the series of footnotes to which it applies, where \langle s\rangle may be a comma-separated list of series. When \langle s\rangle is empty, the change applies also to annotations at the sides of the page, alongside the line number.
- \Xlinenumannotationpositionside\langle v\rangle changes the position at the sides of the page, alongside the line numbers.
- \Xendlinenumannotationposition\langle s\rangle\{\langle v\rangle\} changes the position in critical endnotes, \langle s\rangle for the series of endnotes to which it applies, where \langle s\rangle may once again be a comma-separated list of series.

In each of these three commands, \langle v\rangle can be after or before to indicate position with regards to the line number.

With the \linenumannotationothersidetrue, the annotation will appear on the margin side opposite to the line number.

You can reset the default behavior with \linenumannotationothersidefalse.

5.5.4 Changing the macro in which annotations are wrapped

By default, annotations are wrapped in the \textsuperscript macro. You can modify this using one of the following:

- \Xwraplinenumannotation\langle s\rangle\{\langle cmd\rangle\} for critical footnotes; \langle s\rangle indicates the series of notes to which it applies and may be a comma-separated list of series. When \langle s\rangle is empty, the change applies to the annotations in the margins also—around the line number—as well as to the annotations referenced using the \annotationref command of the crossref mechanism [11p.64].

\footnote{As for all \TeX{} macro with no argument.}
5.5.5 Not printing the second identical annotations

If you print only line number annotation, you may get in critical notes something like 6–6, because the starting and ending annotations are the same. You can avoid that using \Xnoidenticallinenumannotation\{\}(s)\{\}(cmd)\} for critical endnotes, where \{\}(s) indicates the series of notes to which it applies, which may be a comma-separated list.

5.5.6 Separator between annotations

If there are more than one annotation in the same line, there are separated by a comma. If you want to change the separator, you can use \setlinenumannotationsep\{\}(sep)\}.

5.5.7 Annotations in the apparatus

Some other options for annotations in the apparatus are described in 7.4.10 p. 48.

5.6 Executing code at each line

relmac provides an advanced feature for users. The argument passed to \dolinehook\{\}(arg)\} will be executed before slicing a new line in the paragraph. The argument passed to \doinsidelinehook\{\}(arg)\} will be executed before printing a new line, when the line

\@gobble command takes one argument, and returns nothing.
number has already been fixed. In many cases, the latter is more useful than the former. The file [examples/2-line_numbers_in_header.tex] provides an example for printing the first and last line numbers of a page in the header.

### 5.7 Executing code at a specific line

Sometime, you want to execute a code at a precise point in the flow of your text. For example, if the current header of the page corresponds to the position inside the text, you may want to use \markboth (or similar) command. The main problem is that you need to execute \markboth when \reledmac typesets the text, and not when it reads it, because that could create damage with vertical spacing.

The \doinsidethislinehook\{⟨code⟩\} macro allows ⟨code⟩ to be executed when the text is typeset. The ⟨code⟩ will be executed in the line equivalent to the position of \doinsidethislinehook in the flow of the text.

For example, with the following code:

\begin{verbatim}
\beginnumbering
\pstart
... 1.\doinsidelinehook\{\markboth{1}{1}\} a
\pends
\end{verbatim}

\markboth{1}{1} will be executed at the line the 1. will be typeset. The ⟨code⟩ of \doinsidethislinehook will be executed only at the second run of \LaTeX.

See the file [examples/2-subdivision-number-in-header.tex] for an example. Especially, the use of this command with \LaTeX counters is quite complex, but the example show you how to deal with this problem.

### 6 Apparatus commands

#### 6.1 Terminology

We call “critical notes” notes which refer to both a lemma, that is a part of text, and a line number. Critical notes are subdivided in critical footnotes and critical endnotes.

We call “familiar notes” notes which refer to a footnote mark in the main text.

\reledmac manages many series of notes of each category. A series of notes is identified by an uppercase letter. When the series letter is at the beginning of a command name, it refers to a critical footnote. When the series letter is at the end of a command name, it refers to a familiar footnote.

So:

- \Afootnote is a critical footnote of the series A.
- \Bendnote is a critical endnote of the series B.
- \footnoteC is a familiar footnote of the series C.
6.2 Critical notes

6.2.1 The lemma

Within numbered paragraphs, all footnotes and endnotes are generated by the \text macro:

\text{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨commands⟩}

The ⟨lemma⟩ argument is the lemma in the main text: \text both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the ⟨commands⟩ you specify to generate notes.

For example:

```
I am happy:
I saw my friend Smith{\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}}
on Tuesday.
```

The lemma Smith is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, Jones C, D. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The ⟨lemma⟩ may contain further \text commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

```
I am happy: \text{I saw my friend Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}} on Tuesday.
\Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.}
```

However, \text cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; an \text that starts in the ⟨lemma⟩ argument of another \text must end there, too. (The \lemma and \linenum commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

6.2.2 Footnotes

The second argument of the \text macro, ⟨commands⟩, may contain a series of subsidiary commands that generate various kinds of notes.

\Afootnote \Bfootnote \Cfootnote \Dfootnote \Efootnote

\Afootnote{⟨text⟩}. When all of the five are used, the A notes appear in a layer just below the main text, followed by the rest in turn, down to the E notes at the bottom. These are the main macros that you will use to construct the critical apparatus of your text.

If you need more series of critical notes, please look at 6.7.1 p. 42.

An optional argument can be added before the text of the footnote. Its value is a comma-separated list of options. The available options are:
6.2 Critical notes

- *fulllines* to disable \xtwolines and \xmorethantwolines features for this note (cf. 7.4.5 p. 46).

- *nonum* disables line numbering for this note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use \xinplaceofnumber to set it (7.4.15 p. 49).

- *nosep* to disable the lemma separator for this note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use \xinplaceoflemmaseparator to set it (7.5.1 p. 51).

- *linerangesep*=⟨c⟩ to change to ⟨c⟩ the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

Example: \Afootnote[nonum]{⟨text⟩}.

6.2.3 Endnotes

The package also maintains five separate series of endnotes.

If you do not need the endnotes facility, you should use noend option when loading reledmac.

The mechanism is similar to the one for footnotes: each macro takes one or more optional arguments and one single argument, like:

\Aendnote[(option)]{⟨text⟩}.

*(option)* can contain a comma-separated list of values. Allowed values are:

- *fulllines* to disable \xendtwolines and \xendmorethantwolines features for this particular note (cf. 7.4.5 p. 46).

- *nonum* to disable line number for this particular note.

- *nosep* to disable the lemma separator for this particular note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use \xendinplaceoflemmaseparator to set it (7.5.2 p. 51).

- *linerangesep*=⟨c⟩ to change to ⟨c⟩ the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

Normally, endnotes are not printed: you must use the \doendnotes{⟨s⟩}, where (⟨s⟩) is the letter of the series to be printed. Put this command where you want the corresponding set of endnotes printed. In this case, all the endnotes of the (⟨s⟩) series are printed, for all numbered sections.

However, you may want to print the endnotes of one given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of another given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of the first given series covering the second numbered section, then the endnotes of the second given series covering the second numbered section, and so forth. In this case, use \doendnotesbysection{⟨s⟩}. For each value of ⟨s⟩, the first call of the command will print the notes for the first series, the second call will print the notes for the second series etc. For example, do:

\section{Endnotes}
Note that by default inside endnotes no separator is used between the lemma and the
content. However you can use the \Xendlemmaseparator macro to define one (7.5.2
p.51).
As endnotes may be printed at any point in the document they always start with the
page number where they are called.

\toendnotes \Xtoendnotes

\toendnotes Code between endnotes Sometimes, it is useful to insert content between endnotes
of the same series: for example to separate endnotes of different sections of the same
text. In this case, you could use inside numbered text the command:
\toendnotes\{\langle series\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\} where \langle series\rangle is a comma-separated list of the se-
ries of endnotes where \langle content\rangle must be inserted. If \langle series\rangle is empty, then \langle content\rangle is
inserted to all the series.
For example:
\toendnotes\{\section{Section's title}\}

Alternatively, you can use \Xtoendnotes\{\langle content\rangle\}, where “X” must be replaced
by a series letter.
Remember that the endnotes are temporarily stored in an auxiliary file. That means
in general you want to write the \langle content\rangle in the auxiliary file without expanding it, that
is without interpreting \TeX content.
However, in some cases, you may want to write a once-expanded\footnote{The expansion mechanism of \TeX is a quite complex problem, but fundamental. We have no place to explain it fully here. Read introduction to \TeX to understand well.} version of the
\langle content\rangle, that is the version where the commands are expanded on the first level. This
can be, for example, to get a counter value. Use the starred version in this case. For
example:
\Atoendnotes*\{\string\section{Letter 1 (chap. \thechapter)}\}

6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus
By default, no paragraph can be made in the notes of the critical apparatus. You can
allow it by adding the options parapparatus when loading the package:
\usepackage[parapparatus]{eledmac}

Note that you cannot use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or \par) inside of notes, when
they are set to paragraph arrangement!
6.2 Critical notes

6.2.5 Change lemma and line number

If you want to change the lemma that gets passed to the notes, you can do this by using the command \lemma{⟨alternative⟩} within the second argument to \edtext and before the note commands. The most common use of this command is to abbreviate the lemma that’s printed in the notes. For example:

```latex
\edtext{I am happy:}
\lemma{I \dots\ Tuesday.}
\Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.}
```

You can use the \linenum{⟨arg⟩} command to change the line numbers passed to the notes. The argument ⟨arg⟩ actually consists of seven parameters: the page, line, and sub-line number for the start of the lemma; the same three numbers for the end of the lemma; and the font specifier for the lemma. As the argument to \linenum, you specify those seven parameters in that order, separated by vertical bars (the | character). I.e.

```latex
\linenum{⟨start page⟩|⟨s. line⟩|⟨s. sub-l.⟩|⟨end p.⟩|⟨e. l.⟩|⟨e. sub-l.⟩|⟨font⟩}
```

However, you can retain the value computed by reledmac for any number by simply omitting it; and you can omit a sequence of vertical bars at the end of the argument. For example, \linenum{|||23} changes only the ending page number of the current lemma.

This command does not change the marginal line numbers in any way; it just changes the numbers passed to the notes. Its use comes in situations that \edtext has trouble dealing with for whatever reason. If you need notes for overlapping passages that aren’t nested, for instance, you can use \lemma and \linenum to generate such notes despite the limitations of \edtext. If the ⟨lemma⟩ argument to \edtext is extremely long, you may run out of memory; here again you can specify a note with an abbreviated lemma using \lemma and \linenum. The numbers used in \linenum need not be entered manually; you can use the “x-” symbolic cross-referencing commands below to compute them automatically.

Similarly, being able to manually change the lemma’s font specifier in the notes might be important if you were using multiple scripts or languages. The form of the font specifier is three separate codes separated by / characters, giving the family, series, and shape codes as defined within NFSS.

6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus

The commands for generating the apparatus have been given rather bland names, because editors in different fields have widely divergent notions of what sort of notes are required, where they should be printed, and what they should be called. But this does not mean you have to type \Afootnote when you would rather type something you find more meaningful, like \variant.

We recommend that you create a series of such aliases and use them instead of the names chosen here; all you have to do is put commands of this form at the start of your
6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus

Sometimes, the same word occurs twice (or more) in the same line. \reledmac provides tools to disambiguate references in the critical notes. The lemma will be followed by a reference number if a given word occurs more than once in the same line.

6.3.1 Basic use

To use this tool, you have to mark every occurrence of the potentially ambiguous term with the \sameword command:

Lupus \sameword{aut} canis \edtext{\sameword{aut}}{\Afootnote{et}} felix

In this example, aut will be followed, in the critical note, by the exponent 2 if it is printed in the same line as the first aut, but it will not if it is printed in a different line. The number is printed only after the second run.

6.3.2 Case setting

By default, \sameword is sensitive to the case. E.g. “foo” is considered as a different word to “Foo”.

You can use the swcaseinsensitive when loading the package to make \sameword insensitive to the case, i.e. to consider “foo” as identical “Foo”.

6.3.3 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor

If you use UTF-8 processor, like \Xe\LaTeX or \Lua\LaTeX, there should not be any glitches. However, pay attention to how characters are encoded. Similar-looking characters may be represented differently in unicode numbering.

For instance, in French, “é” has two possible Unicode codepoints:

- LATIN SMALL LETTER E (U+0065) + COMBINING ACUTE ACCENT (U+0301)
- LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH ACUTE (U+00E9)

\footnote{We use \newcommand and \newcommandx instead of classical \let command because the edtabular environments have to modify the notes definition, and we need to use the newest definition of notes. Read the handbook of xargs to know more about \newcommandx.}
6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus

Which unicode number you use depends, many times, on your keyboard configuration (the computer-input system).

Inside `reledmac`, the `\sameword` command considers these two unicodes (code positions) as different characters. If you use only one unicode number consistently, the distinction will probably make no difference to how your text looks, but `\sameword` will process the text inaccurately, based on the unicode numbers. To prevent this, do the following:

- If you use Xe\TeX{}, add this line in your preamble: `\XeTeXinputnormalization 1`.
- If you use Lua\TeX{}, use the `uninormalize` package of Michal Hoftich\footnote{https://github.com/michal-h21/uninormalize} with the `buffer` option set to true.

With these tools, Xe\TeX{} / Lua\TeX{} will dynamically normalize unicode input when reading the file. Consequently, you will have no problems with the `\sameword` command.

6.3.4 Notes about right-to-left texts

Due to some internal limits of Xe\TeX{}, `\sameword` does not work with right-to-left text with this engine.

If you need to use `\sameword` with right-to-left text, you must use Lua\TeX{}.

6.3.5 Use with `\lemma` command

If you use the `\lemma` command, `reledmac` cannot know to which occurrence of `\sameword` in the first argument of `\edtext` a word marked with `\sameword` in `\lemma` should refer.

For example, in the following example:

some thing
\edtext{\sameword{sw}}
  and other `\sameword{sw}`
  and again `\sameword{sw}`
  it is all%\footnote{critical note}.

`reledmac` cannot know if the "sw" in `\lemma` refers to the word after "thing", after "other", or after "again".

Consequently, you must tell `reledmac` to which instance of `\sameword` you are referring in the first argument of `\edtext`:

- In the content of `\lemma`, use `\sameword` with no optional argument.
- In the first argument of `\edtext`, use `\sameword` with the optional argument `\langle X \rangle`. `\langle X \rangle` is the depth of the `\edtext` where the `\lemma` is used. So if the `\lemma` is called in a `\edtext` inside another `\edtext`, `\langle X \rangle` is equal to 2. If the
\lemma is called in a \edtext "of first level", \(X\) is equal to 1. If the lemma is called in both 1 and 2 \edtext depth, \(X\) is 1,2. If that word is referenced in the lemma of every \edtext depth, \(X\) can also be set to inlemma.

Note that only words that are actually referenced in a \lemma need the optional argument. Therefore, the first \sameword in the example above should have "1" as its optional argument, to be referenced correctly in the lemma.

Note also that the \(X\) does not refer to the level where the \sameword occurs, but to the level of the \lemma that refers to that \sameword. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
\edtext{some \edtext{\sameword[1]{word}}{\Afootnote{om. M}}
and other \sameword{word}
and again a \sameword{word}
it is all} \%
\}\{\lemma{some \sameword{word} \ldots all}\Afootnote{critical note}}. \%
\end{verbatim}

Here the \sameword occurs in an \edtext of level 2, but since it is referenced by \lemma on level 1, it has "1" in the optional argument.

In the following example figure, each framed box represents an \edtext level. Each number is an occurrence of \sameword. After a framed box, the text in superscript represents the content of \lemma for that \edtext level. The text in subscript at the right of a number represents the content of the optional argument of \sameword.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
1 & 2 & 3 \\
\hline 4 & 5 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

The \sameword number 3 is called in a \lemma related to an \edtext of level 2. It must be marked by "2".

The \sameword number 5 is called in a \lemma related to \edtext of level 1. It must be marked by "1".

The \sameword number 1 is called in two \lemmas: one related to a \edtext of level 1, the other related to \edtext of level 2. It must be marked by "1,2". However, as \lemma is called only in level 1 and 2, "1,2" could replaced by "inlemma".

The \sameword number 2 is in the first argument of a \edtext of level 3, but it has no \lemma-command, so there is no need to mark it.

Here, the corresponding code:
6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus

6.3.6 Sameword for a group of words

Sometimes a group of words and not only a single word, occurs multiple times. In this case, you have two possibilities.

First, you can consider only the individual words, and not groups of word. For example:

\sameword{per} \sameword{causam} tamen scire
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}\{\Bfootnote{fnote}}
est
\edtext{\sameword{per} \sameword{causam}}\{\Bfootnote{causam rei B}}
cognoscere
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}\{\Bfootnote{fnote}}

per causam tamen scire causam est per causam cognoscere causam

In this case it is clear which “per causam” is meant.
However, in the case that “per causam” is the lemma of the second note, there should be only one number for that whole lemma. In this case we can mark all “per causam” groups. But as “causam” is also called as lemma in note 1 and 3, we need to use nested \sameword commands. Consequently, we need to use \lemma for the \edtext linked to “per causam”, as we don’t want to number each individual word.

\sameword{per \sameword{causam}} tamen scire
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}} est
\edtext{\sameword[1]{per \sameword{causam}}}{\lemma{\sameword{per causam}}}\Bfootnote{causam rei B}
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}}

1 per causam tamen scire causam est per causam cognoscere causam

\begin{verbatim}
1 causam² ] fnote
1 per causam² ] causam rei B
1 causam² ] fnote
\end{verbatim}

6.3.7 Customizing
\showwordrank You can redefine the \showwordrank macro to change the way the number is printed. The default value is
\newcommand{\showwordrank}[2][]{%
  #1\textsuperscript{#2}%
}\

6.3.8 Problems with some macros
\swnoexpands Macros inside \sameword that are not fully expandable, mainly macros which manipulate font features, write on full or have optional argument, may cause problems during compilation. Custom commands inside \sameword may therefore result in errors saying that “Use of \sameword doesn’t match its definition.” To solve this, include a redefinition of your custom commands in the \swnoexpands macro. In order to not include any content of a macro during comparison, identify the command with \@gobble For example:

\makeatletter
\appto{\swnoexpands}{%\let\somemacro\@gobble
\makeatother

This will drop the content of \somemacro during comparison.

To include the content of the first and only one argument of a custom command in \sameword comparison, use the [@firstofone command. For example, this is how \emph is handled:
6.4 Apparatus of manuscripts

\makeatletter
\appto{\svnoexpands}{%
  \let\emph@@firstofone%
}%
\makeatother

To include command which can take optional argument, use \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand of \xparse. For example, this is how \edindex is handled:

\makeatletter
\appto{\svnoexpands}{% \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\edindex}{om}{}%}
\makeatother

6.3.9 Automatic sameword annotation

All potentially ambiguous apparatus entries must be annotated manually. That annotation process is laborious and includes a risk of errors. Samewords is a Python script that can automate this step of the process. It can be installed via the Python Package Index, but see https://github.com/stenskjaer/samewords for more info and documentation. The script is still at a beta stage, so comments and questions as well as error reports are very welcome at https://github.com/stenskjaer/samewords/issues.

Please note that the maintainer of this script is not identical with the maintainer of reledmac.

6.4 Apparatus of manuscripts

The critical notes mostly refer to textual variants between manuscripts which contain the text to be edited. It may so happen that the manuscripts only contain parts of the text. Depending on one’s wishes, reledmac can generate lists of relevant manuscripts for any delimited portion of text. Such lists are referred to as “apparatuses of manuscripts”.

To produce an apparatus of manuscripts with reledmac, you have to insert specific commands that are used to mark the sections for which only part of the manuscripts are relevant. These commands will be processed, and after the second \TeX run, corresponding apparatuses of manuscripts will be inserted in the first (viz. ‘A’ series) level of footnotes.

As the insertion of this apparatus can change the page breaks, you may have to run \TeX two or more times. We strongly recommend to use tools like latexmk to do that.

6.4.1 Marking sections of text

\msdata{⟨text⟩} must be inserted at the point where a section for which only part of the manuscripts are relevant starts. ⟨text⟩ can be any arbitrary text, viz. a list of the manuscripts that are used for the section that starts. The command must be attached right at the point where the section starts, with no space, like so:
Lorem ipsum

Which means that the section of text starting by “Lorem ipsum” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C.

\stopmsdata

\stopmsdata must be inserted at the point where the section of text previously marked by \msdata ends. The command must be attached right to the end of the section, with no space. As \stopmsdata is a \TeX argumentless macro, it will gobble the following space. To keep that space, you have to either append a backslash followed by a space or {} to \stopmsdata, like so:

\msdata{ABC}Lorem ipsum dolor
[...]
amet\stopmsdata{} \msdata{ABCD}sic transit [...]

Which means that the part of text containing “Lorem ipsum dolor [...] amet” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C, while the part of text starting “sic transit” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B, C and D.

\stopmsdata is also automatically inserted by \msdata. Note that in most cases, any \stopmsdata is followed by \msdata. However, as these two command are usually separated by a space, it may happen that a line break be automatically inserted between them. This is why it is advised to always insert \stopmsdata, even if \msdata inserts it in case it is forgotten.

6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts

On every page, the apparatus of manuscripts marks the corresponding section with starting and ending line numbers. However, the following rules will be applied:

- If the section does not start on the current page, the starting line number will be the line number of the first line on the page.
- If the section does not stop on the current page, the ending line number will be the line number of the last line on the page.
- If the section neither starts nor ends on the current page, no line number will be printed. The same is true in case both \msdata is called at the very beginning of the page and \endmsdata is called at the very end of the page.

6.4.3 Settings

As the apparatus of manuscripts technically consists of first-level critical notes (’A’ series), any setting available for critical notes can be applied \([7, p. 43]\). However, the following additional commands are available.

\setmsdataseries
The series used by default for the apparatus of manuscripts is series A. However, you can change it with \setmsdataseries{⟨series⟩}.

\setmsdatalabel
As the apparatus of manuscripts consists of regular critical footnotes, a lemma is associated to them. By default, it is “Ms.”. You can change it using \setmsdatalabel{⟨txt⟩}.
6.5 Familiar notes

6.5.1 Basic use

As well as the standard \LaTeX footnotes generated via \footnote, the package also provides five series of additional footnotes called \footnoteA through \footnoteE. These have the familiar marker in the text, and the marked text at the foot of the page can be formatted using any of the styles described for the critical footnotes. Note that the “regular” footnotes have the series letter at the end of the macro name whereas the critical footnotes have the series letter at the start of the name.

The footnote can take a first optional argument to manually define the footnote number or footnote symbol. For example:

\footnoteA[22]{This footnote will be numbered 22}

6.5.2 Customizing mark

Each series uses a set of macros for styling the marks. The mark numbering scheme of series A is defined by the \thefootnoteA macro; the default is:

\renewcommand*{\thefootnoteA}{\arabic{footnoteA}}

The appearance of the mark in the text is controlled by \bodyfootmarkA which is defined as:

\newcommand*{\bodyfootmarkA}{% 
  \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}}

The command \footfootmarkA controls the appearance of the mark at the start of the footnote text. It is defined as:

\newcommand*{\footfootmarkA}{\textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}

There are similar command triples for the other series.

6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes

The footmisc package [Fai03] by Robin Fairbairns has an option whereby sequential footnote marks in the text can be separated by commas like so. As a convenience reledmac provides this automatically.

\multfootsep is used as the separator between footnote markers. Its default definition is:

\providecommand*{\multfootsep}{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}

and can be changed if necessary.
6.6 Printing the footnote mark without printing the footnote text

In certain cases, you can’t directly use \footnotemark; for example, when using \uline command of the ulem package. You need to print the footnote mark first, then call the footnote text to be inserted.

For all \langle X \rangle command, reledmac provides a \footnotemark mark command and a \footnotetext command, equivalent to standard \LaTeXX’s command \footnotemark and \footnotetext. For example, to use with \uline, do:

This is \uline{a test containing \mbox{\footnotemark}} \footnotetext{A simple footnote.} \uline{a simple footnote.}

If you use reledpar, you can’t use these two commands to print the footnote mark on one side and the footnote text on the other side. You must use \footnotemark{X}nomk and \footnotetext{X}mk, defined in reledpar (?? p. ??)

6.7 Changing series

6.7.1 Create a new series

If you need more than five series of critical footnotes, you can create extra series, using \newseries command. For example, to create F and G series \newseries{G,H}.

6.7.2 Delete series

As the number of series which are defined increases, reledmac gets slower. If you do not need all of the six standard series (A–E), you can load the package with the series option. For example, if you need only series A and B, use:

\usepackage[series={A,B}]{eledmac}

6.7.3 Series order

The default series order is the one called with the series option of the package, or, if this option is not used, A, B, C, D, E. Series order determines footnotes order. However in some specific cases, you need to change the series order at some point inside the document. You can use \seriesatbegin{⟨s⟩} to pull up a given series ⟨s⟩ to the beginning, or \seriesatend{⟨s⟩} to push it down to the end.

6.8 Position of critical and familiar footnotes

There is a historical incoherence in (r)(e)ledmac. The familiar footnotes are before the critical footnotes in a normal page, but after in a minipage or in a ledgroup. However, it is possible to change the relative position of both types of footnotes. If you want to have familiar footnotes after critical footnotes in a normal page, use:
Or, if you want a minipage or ledgroup to have critical footnotes after familiar footnotes, use:

\mpfnpos{familiar-critical}

You can also decide to alternate familiar and critical footnotes with your own order. In this case, the second argument of \fnpos or \mpfnpos is a comma-separated list of values. Each value has the following form:

(series)\{type\}

(series) is a series letter (A,B,C etc.), while (type) must be either “critical” or “familiar”.

For example, suppose you want to first print the familiar footnotes of the “A” series, then all the series of critical footnotes, and finally all the series of familiar footnotes, except the “A” series. In this case, use the following command:

\fnpos{%
\{A\}{familiar},
\{A\}{critical},%
\{B\}{critical},%
\{C\}{critical},%
\{D\}{critical},%
\{E\}{critical},%
\{B\}{familiar},%
\{C\}{familiar},%
\{D\}{familiar},%
\{E\}{familiar}%
}

Note that you must define the position of all the series of footnotes you use. If you don’t, you will have infinite runs of \LaTeX.

7 Apparatus customization

7.1 Introduction

Some commands can be used to change the way the footnotes are displayed. All can have an optional argument \([s]\), which is the letter of the series — or a list of letters separated by comma — depending on which option is applied. If the optional argument is omitted or empty, the setting will apply to the entire series.

When a length, noted \([l]\), is used, it can be stretchable: \(a \plus b \minus c\). The final length \(m\) is calculated by \LaTeX\ to have: \(a \minus c \leq m \leq a + b\). If you use some relative

\textsuperscript{20}In the code of \texttt{reledmac}, these commands are called “hooks”.

\end{document}
unit it will be relative to font size of the footnote, except for commands concerning the place kept by the notes — including blank space.

Some commands are boolean, indicating when an option is enabled. If you want to disable the option after enabling it, you must use \texttt{[false]} as the second optional argument. For example:

- \texttt{\textbackslash XX[A][false]} to disable the “XX” option for the series A.
- \texttt{\textbackslash XX[][false]} to disable it for all series.

There is also name convention:

- Names prefixed by \texttt{X} are for setting of critical footnotes.
- Names prefixed by \texttt{Xend} are for setting of critical endnotes.
- Names suffixed by \texttt{X} are for setting of familiar footnotes.

### 7.2 Notes arrangement in a series

By default, all footnotes are formatted as a series of separate paragraphs in one column. Three other formats are also available for notes.

Use \texttt{\textbackslash arrangement[⟨s⟩]{⟨a⟩}} to change the arrangement of the ⟨s⟩ series of critical footnotes and \texttt{\textbackslash arrangementX[⟨s⟩]{⟨a⟩}} to change the arrangement of the ⟨s⟩ series of familiar footnotes.

The value of ⟨a⟩ can be one of the following:

- \texttt{paragraph} formats all of the footnotes of a series as a single paragraph; if you use this arrangement, you are strongly encouraged to read \texttt{[19.1.6 p. 81]}
- \texttt{twocol} formats them as separate paragraphs, but in two columns;
- \texttt{threecol}, in three columns.
- \texttt{normal}, restore normal arrangement.

You should set up the page layout parameters, and in particular the \texttt{\baselineskip} of the footnotes, before you call this macro because its action depends on these; too much or too little space will be allotted for the notes on the page if these macros use the wrong values.

Note that you \textit{cannot} use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or \texttt{\par}) or line breaks (\texttt{\break} or \texttt{\linebreak} or \texttt{\newline} etc.) inside of notes, when they are set to \texttt{paragraph} arrangement!

The notes arrangement must be called after having defined the document geometry setting. If you must change geometry setting inside your document, do not forget to call note arrangement again.

\texttt{\hsize} has been set for the pages that use this series of notes; otherwise \texttt{\LaTeX} will try to put too many or too few of these notes on each page. If you need to change the \texttt{\hsize} within the document, call the arrangement macro again afterwards to take account of the new value.

\footnote{Like \texttt{em} which is the width of an “m” in a given font.}
7.3 Disabling footnote

Some time, you may want to export your edition without notes, but don’t want to modify globally your code. \nonoteX[⟨s⟩] allow to disable critical notes for the series ⟨s⟩. \nonoteX[⟨s⟩] is the same for familiar notes.

7.4 Control number printing

7.4.1 Print line number only at first time

By default, the line number is printed inside every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a given line number (i.e., once for line 1, once for line 2, etc.), you can use \numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩].

Suppose you have a lemma on line 2 and a lemma between line 2 and line 3. With \numberonlyfirstinline, the second lemma is considered to be on the same line as the first lemma. But if you use both \numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩] and \numberonlyfirstintwolines[⟨s⟩], a distinction is made.

For setting a particular symbol in place of the line number, you can use \symlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨symbol⟩} in combination with \numberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]. From the second lemma of the same line, the symbol will be used instead of the line number. Note that any command called in ⟨symbol⟩ must be robust. Use \robustify to robustify a non-robust command.

\numberonlyfirstinline, \numberonlyfirstintwolines and \symlinenum are the equivalents of \endnumberonlyfirstinline, \endnumberonlyfirstintwolines and \endsymlinenum.

7.4.2 Print page number only at first time

For endnotes, reledmac provides a mechanism for printing the page number only the first time it is seen. However, when a lemma spans over two pages, the line numbers are normally printed in the following pattern: starting page number - starting line number - ending page number - ending line number. It follows that what corresponds to the actual "page number" may not be self-evident. So: \endpagenumberonlyfirst[⟨s⟩] can be called to ensure that the starting page number of a lemma be not printed if it is the same as the ending page number of the preceding lemma. You can use additionally one (and only one) of the following commands:

- \endpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle[⟨s⟩]: the first page number of the lemma will not be printed only if the following conditions are true:
  1. The starting page number of the lemma is the same as the ending page number of the preceding lemma.
  2. The ending page number of the lemma is the same as the starting page number of the lemma.

In this case the ending page number will always be printed if it is different from the starting page number.
46

7 Apparatus customization

• \Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwon{⟨s⟩}: both the starting page number and the ending page number of a lemma are not printed if they are both the same as the starting page number and the ending page number of the preceding lemma respectively.

In any case, you can use:

\Xendsympagenum • \Xendsympagenum[{⟨series⟩}]{{⟨c⟩}} to print ⟨c⟩ when the page number is not printed.

\Xandinplaceofpagenumber • \Xandinplaceofpagenumber[{⟨series⟩}]{{⟨l⟩}} to print a ⟨l⟩ length horizontal space in case no symbol is printed instead of the page number.

7.4.3 Arbitrary text before line number

\Xtxtbeforenumber For critical notes \Xtxtbeforenumber[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨txt⟩}} allows the insertion of ⟨txt⟩ before the line number only when the line number is printed, so taking into account \Xnumberonlyfirstinline and the like. \Xbeforepagenumber[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨txt⟩}} allows the insertion of ⟨txt⟩ before the page number only when the page number is printed, so when a note spans across two or more pages and the lineation is by page.

\Xbeforepagenumber For endnotes \Xbeforepagenumber[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨txt⟩}} defines the text before the page number in endnotes. Default value is p. (“p” followed by a dot).

\Xendafterpagenumber \Xendafterpagenumber[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨text⟩}} defines the text after the page number in endnotes. Default value is ) (open parenthesis followed by a single space). \Xendlineprefixsingle defines the text before the line number in endnotes when there is only one line. Default value is empty. \Xendlineprefixmore defines the text before the line number in endnotes when there is more than one line. Default value is empty. If you don’t define it, it will use the value defined by \Xendlineprefixsingle.

7.4.4 Separator for line range

\Xlinerangeseparator By default, the separator between the begin line and the end line in a lines’ range is an en-dash in a normal font (\textnormal{--}). You can change it for critical footnotes with \Xlinerangeseparator[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨text⟩}}, and with \Xendlinerangeseparator[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨text⟩}} for critical endnotes.

7.4.5 Abbreviate line range

\Xtwolines If a lemma is printed on two subsequent lines, reledmac will print the first and the last line numbers. Instead of this, it is also possible to print an abbreviation which stands for “line 1 and subsequent line(s)”. To achieve this, use \Xtwolines[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨text⟩}} and \Xmorethantwolines[{⟨s⟩}]{{⟨text⟩}}. The ⟨text⟩ argument of \Xtwolines will be printed if the lemma is on two lines, and the ⟨text⟩ argument of \Xmorethantwolines will be printed if the lemma is on three or more lines. For example:

\Xtwolines{sq.}
7.4 Control number printing

\morethantwolines{sqq.}

will print “1sq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–2 and “1sqq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–4.

If you use \twolines without setting \morethantwolines, the \text{argument of \twolines will be used for lemmas which fall on three or more lines.}

However, if you want to use a short form (when the lemma overlaps two lines, but not more than two), use \twolinesbutnotmore[\text{⟨series⟩}].

When you use lineation by page, the final page number, if different from the initial page number, will not be printed, because the final page number is included in the \endtwolines symbol.

\twolinesonlyinsamepage However, you can force print the final page number with \twolinesonlyinsamepage[\text{⟨series⟩}].
\morethantwolines \endmorethantwolines
\twolinesbutnotmore
\twolinesonlyinsamepage

For endnotes, use these macros: \endtwolines; \endmorethantwolines; \twolinesbutnotmore; \twolinesonlyinsamepage.

7.4.6 Disabling line number printing

\nonumber You can use \nonumber[\text{⟨s⟩}] if you do not want to have no line/page/pstart number in the footnotes, nor line number annotation.

\endnonumber \text{\nonumber[⟨s⟩] is the same for endnotes.}

7.4.7 Disabling page number printing

\nopagenumberifcurrent When we use a lineation by page, reledmac checks if a lemma spans across two page. In this case, it prints the starting end ending page number. Many times, one of these two page numbers is also the current page number. In this case, it is possible to disable page number printing, using \nopagenumberifcurrent[\text{⟨s⟩}].

7.4.8 Printing pstart number

\pstart You can use \pstart[\text{⟨s⟩}] if you want to print the pstart number in the footnote, before the line and subline number. Note that when you change the lineation system, the option is automatically switched:

- If you use lineation by pstart, the option is enabled.
- If you use lineation by section or by page, the option is disabled.

\pstarteverytime By default, the pstart number is printed only in the part of text where you have called \numberpstarttrue. We don’t know why you would like to print the pstart number in the notes and not in the main text. However, if you want to do it, you can call
Apparatus customization

\xstarteverytime[\{s\}]. In this case, the pstart number will be printed every time in footnote.

\xonlypstart. In combination with \xstart, you can use \xonlypstart[\{s\}] if you want to print only the pstart number in the footnote, and not the line and subline number.

\xpstartonlyfirst. You can use \xpstartonlyfirst[\{s\}] to print the pstart number only the first time it appears in the apparatus. When using \xpstart, you can use \xpstartseparator[\{s\}]{\{text\}} to print \{text\} after the pstart number. Default value is empty.

7.4.9 Printing stanza number

\xstanza. You can use \xstanza[\{s\}] if you want to print the stanza number in the footnote, before the line and subline number.

\xstanzaseparator. When using \xstanza, you can use \xstanzaseparator[\{s\}]{\{text\}} to print \{text\} after the stanza number. Default value is empty.

\xstanzaonlyfirst. You can use \xstanzaonlyfirst[\{s\}] to print the stanza number only the first time it appears in the apparatus.

7.4.10 Options for line number annotations

\xlinenumannotationonlyfirst. By default, the line number annotation (5.5 p. 25) is printed in every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a given annotation you can use \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[\{s\}].

Note the two following points:

- If you use the noresetlinenumannotation option of reledmac, the \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst won't take account of the official line number.

- The \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst works for consecutive lemmas with the same annotation. That is, if you have for example a lemma with an A annotation, then a lemma with a B annotation, then a lemma with an A annotation, each lemma will have its own annotation in the apparatus.

\xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo. Suppose you have a lemma on annotation 1 and a lemma between annotation 1 and annotation 3. With \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst, the second lemma is considered to have the same annotation as the first lemma. But if you use both \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[\{s\}] and \xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo[\{s\}], a distinction is made.

\xsymlinenumannotation. To use a particular symbol in place of the line number annotation, you can use \xsymlinenumannotation[\{s\}]{\{symbol\}} in combination with \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[\{s\}]. From the second lemma with the same line number annotation, the symbol will be used instead of the annotation. Note that any command called in \{symbol\} must be robust. Use \robustify to robustify a non-robust command.

\xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst and \xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo are the equivalents of \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst and \xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo.

\xendlinenumannotation. For endnotes, \xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst; \xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo and \xsymlinenumannotation are the equivalents of \xlinenumannotationonlyfirst; \xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo and \xsymlinenumannotation.

\xnolinenumberifannotation. The \xnolinenumberifannotation disable line number printing only for critical notes when there are some annotations to the line number.

\xendnolinenumberifannotation. The \xendnolinenumberifannotation is the same for endnotes.
7.4 Control number printing

7.4.11 Separator between line and subline numbers
\Xsublinesep \Xsublinesep[(s)]{(txt)} changes the separator between line and subline in footnotes.

Employed without optional argument, it also changes the separator in side numbering.

\Xendsublinesep \Xendsublinesep[(s)]{(txt)} does the same thing for endnotes.

However, it does not change anything for the separator in side numbering. Use \Xsublinesep without optional argument or \Xsublinesepside{(txt)} to do it.

The default value is \textnormal{.}.

7.4.12 Separator between page and line numbers
\Xpagelinesep \Xpagelinesep[(s)]{(txt)} changes the separator between the page and line number in footnotes.

By default, the value defined for \Xsublinesep is used.

7.4.13 Space around number
\Xbeforenumber With \Xbeforenumber[(s)]{(l)}, you can add some space before the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0 pt.

\Xafternumber With \Xafternumber[(s)]{(l)} you can add some space after the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, neither is the space. The default value is 0.5 em.

\Xendbeforenumber \Xendbeforenumber and \Xendafternumber are the equivalents of \Xbeforenumber and \Xafternumber for endnotes.

\Xnonbreakableafternumber By default, the space defined by \Xafternumber is breakable. With \Xnonbreakableafternumber[(s)] it becomes nonbreakable.

7.4.14 Space around line symbol
\Xbeforesymlinenum With \Xbeforesymlinenum[(s)]{(l)} you can add some space before the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by \Xbeforenumber.

\Xaftersymlinenum With \Xaftersymlinenum[(s)]{(l)} you can add some space after the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by \Xafternumber.

\Xendbeforesymlinenum \Xendbeforesymlinenum and \Xendaftersymlinenum are the equivalents of \Xbeforesymlinenum and \Xaftersymlinenum for the endnotes.

7.4.15 Space in place of number
\Xinplaceofnumber If no number or symbolic line number is printed, you can add a space, with \Xinplaceofnumber[(s)]{(l)}. The default value is 1 em.

\Xendinplaceofnumber \Xendinplaceofnumber[(s)]{(l)} is the same, for critical endnotes.
7.4.16 Boxing line number and line symbol

It could be useful to put the line numbers inside a fixed box: the content of the note will be printed after this box. You can use \Xboxlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} to do that. To subsequently disable this feature, use \Xboxlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} with length equal to 0 pt. One use of this feature is to print line numbers in a column, and the note in another column:

\Xhangindent{1em}
\Xafternumber{0em}
\Xboxlinenum{1em}

\Xboxsymlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} is the same as \Xboxlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} but for the line number symbol.

\Xendboxsymlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} is the same as \Xboxsymlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} but for end-notes.

If you put line number in box, it will be aligned left inside the box. However, you can change it using \Xboxlinenumalign\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle text\rangle}\} where \langle text\rangle can be the following:

- **L** to align left (default value);
- **R** to align right;
- **C** to center.

When using \Xboxlinenum, reledmac put all the line number description in the same box. That is, the same box will contain: the start line number, the dash, and either the end line number or the range symbol (like ff.). However, it is possible to box them in two different boxes.

- \Xboxstartlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} will box the start line number in a box of length \langle l\rangle. The content will be put at the right of the box.
- \Xboxendlinenum\{\langle s\rangle\}{\langle l\rangle} will box the dash plus the end line number or the range symbol in a box of length \langle l\rangle. The content will be put at the left of the box.

With these two commands, it is possible to horizontally align the dash of line number when using critical notes, to obtain something like:

```
1
12-23
24ff.
```

By default, for the start line number, these things are boxed:

- (start) line number annotation, if before line number;
- (start) page and (start) line number;
- (start) line flag;
- (start) line number annotation, if after line number;
7.5 Separator between the lemma and the note

7.5.1 For footnotes

By default, in a footnote, the separator between the lemma and the note is a right bracket (\rbracket). You can use \lemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xlemmaseparator\lemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} to change it. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a breakable space between the separator and the following text.

Using \beforelemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xbeforelemmaseparator\beforelemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add some space between lemma and separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won’t be printed. The default value is 0 em.

Using \afterlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xafterlemmaseparator\afterlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add some space between separator and note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space will not be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.

You can suppress the lemma separator, using \nolemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}\Xnolemmaseparator\nolemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}, which is simply a alias of \lemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xlemmaseparator\lemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}.

With \inplaceoflemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator\inplaceoflemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add a space if no lemma separator is printed. The default value is 1 em.

7.5.2 For endnotes

By default, there is no separator inside endnotes between the lemma and the content of the note. You can use \endlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}\Xendlemmaseparator\endlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩} to change this. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. A common value of \endlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}\Xendlemmaseparator\endlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩} is \rbracket.

Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a breakable space between the separator and the following text.

Using \endbeforelemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xendbeforelemmaseparator\endbeforelemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add some space between the lemma and the separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won’t be printed. The default value is 0 em.

Using \endafterlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xendafterlemmaseparator\endafterlemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add some space between the separator and the content of the note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won’t be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.

With \andinplaceoflemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩}\Xandinplaceoflemmaseparator\andinplaceoflemmaseparator{⟨s⟩}{⟨l⟩} you can add some space if you choose to remove the lemma separator. The default value is 0.5 em.

\footnote{For polyglossia, when the lemma is RTL, the bracket automatically switches to a left bracket.}
7.6 Font style

7.6.1 For line number

\Xnotenumfont \Xnotenumfont\{⟨command⟩\} is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes; ⟨command⟩ must be one (or more) switching command, like \bfseries.

\Xendnotenumfont \Xendnotenumfont\{⟨command⟩\} is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes. ⟨command⟩ must be one (or more) switching command, like \bfseries.

\notenumfontX \notenumfontX\{⟨command⟩\} is used to change the font style for note numbers in familiar footnotes. ⟨command⟩ must be one (or more) switching command, like \bfseries.

7.6.2 For the lemma

\Xlemmadisablefontselection By default, font of the lemma in footnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The \Xlemmadisablefontselection\{⟨s⟩\} command allows to disable it for a specific series.

\Xendlemmadisablefontselection By default, font of the lemma in endnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The command allows \Xendlemmadisablefontselection\{⟨s⟩\} to disable it for a specific series.

\Xlemmafont \Xlemmafont\{⟨cmd⟩\} to apply a \TeX{} font command to the lemma. For example, to have boldface lemma:

\Xlemmafont\{\bfseries\} \Xendlemmafont\{⟨s⟩\} is the same for endnotes.

7.6.3 For all notes

\Xnotefontsize \Xnotefontsize\{⟨command⟩\} is used to define the font size of critical footnotes of the series. The default value is \footnotesize. The ⟨command⟩ must not be a size in pt, but a \TeX{} macro, like \small.

\notefontsizeX \notefontsizeX\{⟨command⟩\} is used to define the font size of familiar footnotes of the series. The default value is \footnotesize. The ⟨command⟩ must not be a size in pt, but a \TeX{} macro, like \small.

\Xendnotefontsize \Xendnotefontsize\{⟨command⟩\} is used to define the font size of end critical footnotes of the series. The default value is \footnotesize. The ⟨command⟩ must not be a size in pt, but a \TeX{} macro, like \small.

7.7 Wrapping notes

7.7.1 Wrapping lemmas

\Xwraplemma \Xwraplemma\{⟨s⟩\}\{⟨cmd⟩\} is used to wrap, in the footnote, the lemma in a \TeX{} com-
7.8 Indent of notes content

mand. For example, with the bidi package, to ensure having a lemma written right to left, use \Xwraplemma\RL.

\Xendwraplemma \Xendwraplemma\{\langle cmd\rangle\} is the same for endnotes.

7.7.2 Wrapping contents

\Xwrapcontent \Xwrapcontent\{\langle cmd\rangle\} is used to wrap the footnote contents — excluding the lemma — in a \LaTeX{} command.

For example, if the language of your note is not the same as the language of the lemma, use \Xwrapcontent\foreignlanguage\{\langle language\rangle\} (with babel) or \Xwrapcontent\text\{\langle language\rangle\} (for babel).

\Xendwrapcontent \Xendwrapcontent\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle cmd\rangle\} is the same for endnotes.

\wrapcontentX \wrapcontentX\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle cmd\rangle\} is the same for familiar footnotes.

7.8 Indent of notes content

\Xparindent By default, reledmac does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside critical footnotes. Use \Xparindent\{\langle s\rangle\} to enable indentation.

\parindentX By default, reledmac does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside familiar footnotes. Use \parindentX\{\langle s\rangle\} to enable indentation.

\Xhangindent For critical notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indent with \Xhangindent\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle l\rangle\}, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make distinction between a new note and a break in a note. The default value is 0 pt.

\hangindentX For familiar notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with \hangindentX\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle l\rangle\}, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

\Xendhangindent For critical endnotes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with \Xendhangindent\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle l\rangle\}, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

7.9 Arbitrary code

7.9.1 Arbitrary code around line number

\Xendbhooklinenumber \Xendbhooklinenumber\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle code\rangle\} is used to execute code before line numbers in endnotes. The code is executed before the \Xendbeforelinenumber space and before the \Xendnotenumfont font setting.

\Xendahooklinenumber \Xendahooklinenumber\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle code\rangle\} is used to execute code after line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the \Xendafternumber space.

\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber \Xendbhookinplaceofnumber\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle code\rangle\} is used to execute code before a space or symbol which replaces line number in endnotes. The code is executed before the \Xendbeforesymlinenum space and before the \Xendnotenumfont font setting.

\Xendahookinplaceofnumber \Xendahookinplaceofnumber\{\langle s\rangle\}\{\langle code\rangle\} is used to execute code after a space or symbol which replaces line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the \Xendaftersymlinenum space.
7.9.2 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes

The three next commands add arbitrary code at the beginning of notes. As the name's space is local to the notes, you can use it to redefine some style inside the notes. For example, if you don’t want the pstart number to be in bold, use:

\Xbhooknote{\renewcommand{\thepstart}{\arabic{pstart}.}}

\bhooknote\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} is to be used at the beginning of each critical footnote.
\bhooknoteX\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} is to be used at the beginning of each familiar footnote.
\endbhooknote\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} is to be used at the beginning of each endnote.

7.9.3 Arbitrary code before inserting note

\Xbeforeinserting\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} and \beforeinsertingX\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} are very technical commands. They allow one to add any arbitrary code just before the footnotes are added in the list of footnotes. The main use is to insert text direction code. For example, if you edit right-to-left text with bidi, but want your critical footnote be left-to-right, use \Xbeforeinserting\LTR. You should also use \Xwraplemma to ensure your lemmas are right-to-left in a left-to-right paragraph (7.7.1 p. 52).

Note that the changes are local to the footnote.

7.10 Options for footnotes in columns

7.10.1 Alignment

\Xcolalign \colalignX By default, text in footnotes of two or three columns are flush left and without hyphenation. However, you can change this with \Xcolalign\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} for critical footnotes, and \colalignX\[⟨s⟩\]{⟨code⟩} for familiar footnotes. 

⟨code⟩ must be one of the following command:

\justifying to have text justified, as usual with \LaTEX. You can also let ⟨code⟩ empty.
\raggedright to have text left aligned, but without hyphenation. That is the default \reledmac setting.
\RaggedRight to have text left aligned with hyphenation (requires \ragged2e).
\raggedleft to have text right aligned, but without hyphenation.
\RaggedLeft to have text right aligned with hyphenation (requires \ragged2e).
\centering to have text centered, but without hyphenation.
\Centering to have text centered with hyphenation (requires \ragged2e).
7.11 Options for paragraphed footnotes and notes grouped by line

7.11.2 Size of the columns

For the following four macros, be careful that the columns are made from right to left.

\Xhsizetwocol \hsizetwocol[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is .45 \hsize.
\Xhsizethreecol \hsizethreecol[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is .3 \hsize.
\hsizetwocolX \hsizetwocolX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is .45 \hsize.
\hsizethreecolX \hsizethreecolX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is .3 \hsize.

7.11 Options for paragraphed footnotes and notes grouped by line

7.11.1 Mark separation of notes

\Xafternote \afternote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} (for critical footnotes) or \afternoteX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩} (for familiar footnotes). The default value is 1em plus .4em minus .4em.

\Xparafootsep \parafootsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩} for critical notes and \parafootsepX for familiar notes. A common separator is the double pipe (||), which you can set by using \parafootsep{$\parallel$}.

Note that if the symbol defined by \symlinenum must be used at the beginning of a note, the \parafootsep / \parafootsepX is not used before this note.

7.11.2 Ragged text

\Xragged \ragged[⟨s⟩]{⟨L⟩} if you want it to be ragged left (i.e., right justified), or \Xragged[⟨s⟩]{⟨R⟩} if you want it to be ragged right (i.e., left justified).
\raggedX \raggedX[⟨s⟩]{⟨L⟩} if you want it to be ragged left, or \raggedX[⟨s⟩]{⟨R⟩} if you want it to be ragged right.

7.12 Options for block of notes

7.12.1 Grouping notes by line

\Xgroupbyline \groupbyline[⟨series⟩] If you do not use \arrangement[paragraph], you may want to group all the critical footnotes related to the same line in the same paragraph. In this case, use \groupbyline[⟨series⟩].

In many cases, you might like to use it in combination with \numberonlyfirstinline[7.4.1 p. 45].

Note that the \afternote and \parafootsep settings are used to determine space and content between footnotes [7.11 p. 55]. Suppose you have two notes on line 1 which overlap lines 1 and 2. This last note will be printed, if you use \groupbyline.
Apparatus customization in the same group as the previous one. In the case you want that note to be distinct, you must use both \Xgroupbyline and \Xgroupbylinesепartwolines\[7.4.1 p. 45\].

In many cases, you might like to use it in combination with \Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines

7.12.2 Text before notes

\Xtxtbeforenotes        You can add text before critical footnotes with \Xtxtbeforenotes\[text\].
\xtxtbeforenotesX        You can add text before familiar footnotes with \xtxtbeforenotesX\[text\].
\Xendtxtbeforenotes     You can add text before endnotes with \Xendtxtbeforenotes\[text\]. The text will be typeset only if there are endnotes.
\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce By default, such texts are inserted at the beginning of the groups of notes on each page. You can add \Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce (for critical footnotes) and \xtxtbeforenotesonlyonceX (for familiar footnotes) to insert them only the first time notes are typeset.

7.12.3 Code before notes

\Xbhookgroup            While \Xtxtbeforenotes is for typesetting text before notes, \Xbhookgroup\[code\] and \xbhookgroupX\[code\] (for critical and familiar respectively) are for executing code before a group of notes, between the rules and the printing of the notes.

7.12.4 Spacing

\Xbeforenotes            You can change the vertical space before the rule of the critical notes with \Xbeforenotes\[l\]. The default value is 1.2em plus .6em minus .6em.
\beforenotesX            Be careful, the standard \LaTeX{} footnote rule used by reledmac decreases by 3pt. This 3pt decrease is not changed by this command.
\Xprenotes               You can change the vertical space before the first series of critical notes printed on each page and set a different amount of space for each subsequent series on the page. You can do it with \Xprenotes\[l\]. The default value is 0pt. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.
\prenotesX               You can set the space before the first printed (in a page) series of familiar notes to be different from the space before other series. The default value is 0pt. You can do this with \prenotesX\[l\]. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.

7.12.5 Rule

\Xafterrule             You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the critical notes with \Xafterrule\[l\]. The default value is 0pt.
\afterruleX             Be careful, the standard \LaTeX{} footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.
\XafterruleX            You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the familiar notes with
7.13 Footnotes and the `reledpar` columns

\afterruleX\{s\}\{l\}. The default value is 0pt.

Be careful, the standard `\LaTeX` footnote rule, which is used by `reledmac`, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.

7.12.6 Maximum height

\Xmaxnotes By default, one series of critical notes can take up to 80% of \vsize, before being broken to the next page. If you want to change the size use \Xmaxnotes\{s\}\{l\}. Be careful: the length must be fixed (no stretch), and is relative to the current font. For example, if you want the note to take, at most, 33% of the text height, do \Xmaxnotes{0.33\textheight}.

\maxhnotesX \maxhnotesX\{s\}\{l\} is the same as previous, but for familiar footnotes.

Note that in many cases, you should call these commands in the begin of the document, because the \vsize in the preamble is not the same as \vsize after the preamble. That why we recommend to you to add in your preamble

\AtBeginDocument{
  \maxhnotesX{0.8\textheight}
  \Xmaxnotes{0.8\textheight}
}

Be careful with the two previous commands. Actually, for technical purposes, one paragraphed note is considered as one block. Consequently, it cannot be broken between two pages, even if you used these commands. The debug is in the todolist.

7.12.7 Width

\Xwidth \Xwidth\{s\}\{l\} sets the total width of critical footnotes. \widthX\{s\}\{l\} does the same for familiar footnotes.

\widthX can be a length expression, parsable with \dimexpr. For example:

\Xwidth{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrnotewidth}
\widthX{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrnotewidth}

Note that changes the with of the block of notes. If you want to change the width of each column when typesetting notes in columns, use \Xhstwocol, \Xhstthreecol, \hsizetwocolX, \hsizethreecolX, see \ref{section:columns} p. \pageref{section:columns}.

7.13 Footnotes and the `reledpar` columns

If you use `reledpar` `\columns` macro, you can call:

- \noteswidthliketwocolss\{s\} to create critical notes with a two-column size width.
- \noteswidthliketwocolsX\{s\} to create familiar notes with a two-column size width.
7.14 Endnotes in one paragraph

\Endparagraph By default, any new endnote starts a new paragraph. Use \Endparagraph to have all end notes of one given series set in one paragraph.

\Endafternote You can add some space after a endnote series by using \Endafternote. The default value is \em plus .4em minus .4em.

\Endsep You can choose the separator between each note by \Endsep. A common separator is the double pipe (||), which you can set by using \Endsep{\parallel}.

8 Fonts

One of the most important features of the appearance of the notes, and indeed of your whole document, will be the fonts used. We will first describe the commands that give you control over the use of fonts in the different structural elements of the document, especially within the notes, and then in subsequent sections specify how these commands are used.

\Numlabfont Line numbers for the main text are usually printed in a smaller font in the margin. The \Numlabfont macro is provided as a standard name for that font: it is initially defined as \newcommand{\Numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}

You might wish to use a different font if, for example, you preferred to have these line numbers printed using old-style numerals.

\Select@lemmapfont We will briefly discuss \Select@lemmapfont here because it is important to know about it now, although it is not one of the macros you would expect to change in the course of a simple job. Hence it is "protected" by having the @-sign in its name.

When you use the \Edtext macro to mark a word in your text as a lemma, that word will normally be printed again in your apparatus. If the word in the text happens to be in a font such as italic or bold you would probably expect it to appear in the apparatus in the same font. This becomes an absolute necessity if the font is actually a different script, such as Arabic or Cyrillic. \Select@lemmapfont does the work of decoding reledmac’s data about the fonts used to print the lemma in the main text and calling up those fonts for printing the lemma in the note.

\Select@lemmapfont is a macro that takes one long argument—the cluster of line numbers passed to the note commands. This cluster ends with a code indicating what fonts were in use at the start of the lemma. \Select@lemmapfont selects the appropriate font for the note using that font specifier.

reledmac uses \Select@lemmapfont in a standard footnote format macro called \normalfootfmt. The footnote formats for each of the layers A to E are \let equal to \normalfootfmt. So all the layers of the footnotes are formatted in the same way.

9 Verse

9.1 Basic

\Stanza Use \Stanza at the start of a stanza. Each line in a stanza is ended by an ampersand (&),
9.2 Define stanza indents

\stanzaindentbase
Lines within a stanza may be indented. The indents are integer multiples of the length \stanzaindentbase, whose default value is 20pt.

\setstanzaindents
In order to use the stanza macros, one must set the indentation values. First the value of \stanzaindentbase should be set, unless the default value 20pt is desired. Every stanza line indentation is a multiple of this.

To specify these multiples one invokes, for example \setstanzaindents{3,1,2,1,2}.

The numerical entries must be whole numbers, 0 or greater, separated by commas without embedded spaces. The first entry gives the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

If it is known that each stanza line will fit in one print line, then this first entry should be 0; \TeX does less work in this case, but no harm ensues if the hanging indentation is not 0 but is never used.

If you want the hanging verse to be flush right, you can use \sethanginsymbol: see p. 9.7.

Enumeration is by stanza lines, not by print lines. In the above example the lines are indented one unit, two units, one unit, two units, with 3 units of hanging indentation in case a stanza line is too long to fit on one print line.

9.3 Repeating stanza indents

Since version 0.13, if the indentation is repeated every \textit{n} verses of the stanza, you can define only the \textit{n} first indentations, and indicate that they are repeated, defining the value of the \texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition} counter at \textit{n}. For example:

\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}

is like

\setstanzaindents{5,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,0}

Be careful: the feature is changed in eledmac 1.5.1. See A.3 p. 410

If you don’t use the \texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition} counter, make sure you have at least one more numerical entry in \setstanzavalues than the number of lines in the stanza.

If you want to disable this feature again, just put the counter to 0:
The macro makes no restriction on the number of lines in a stanza.

Sometime, it is useful to repeat the indents only after some lines of verse. You can set the counter \texttt{startstanzaindentsrepetition} to do that. Its default value is 1, that means the repetition starts with line of verse number 1.

For example, you may want to have no indent for the first line, and all other lines been indented by 1. So do

\setstanzaindents{1,0,1} \setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{1} \setcounter{startstanzaindentsrepetition}{2}

\section*{9.4 Notes about the scope of the indent settings}

Stanza indentation values (and penalty values) obey \TeX's grouping conventions, so if one stanza among several has a different structure, its indentations (penalties) may be set within a group; the prior values will be restored when the group ends.

\section*{9.5 Manual stanza indent}

You can set the indent of some specific verse by calling \texttt{\stanzaindent\{\langle value\rangle\}} at the beginning of the verse, before any other character. In this case, the indent defined by \texttt{\setstanzaindents} for this verse is skipped, and \{\langle value\rangle\} is used instead.

If you use the mechanism of indent repetition, the next verse will be printed as it should be even if the current verse would have its normal indent value. In other words, using \texttt{\stanzaindent} in a verse does not shift the indent repetition.

However, if you want to shift the indent repetition, so the next verse has the indent normally used for the current verse, use \texttt{\stanzaindent*} instead of \texttt{\stanzaindent}.

\section*{9.6 Stanza breaking}

When the stanzas run over several pages, it is often desirable that page breaks should arise between certain lines in the stanza, so a facility for including penalties after stanza lines is provided. If you are satisfied with the page breaks, you need not set the penalty values.

The command

\setstanzapenalties{1,5000,10100,5000,0}

results in a penalty of 5000 being placed after the first and third lines of the stanza, and a penalty of $-100$ after the second.

The first entry "1" is a control value. If it is zero, then no penalties are passed on to \TeX, which is the default. Values between 0 and 10000 are penalty values; values between 10001 and 20000 have 10000 subtracted and the result is given as a negative penalty. The mechanism used for indentations and penalties requires unsigned values less than 32768. No penalty is placed after the last line, so the final \texttt{,0} in the example
above could be omitted. A penalty of 10000 will prevent a page break; such a penalty is included automatically where there is stanza hanging indentation. A penalty of $-10000$ (corresponding to the entry value 20000 in this context) forces a page break. Values in between act as suggestions as to the desirability of a page break at a given line. There is a subtle interaction between penalties and glue, so it may take some adjustment of skips and penalties to achieve the best results.

9.7 Hanging symbol

It is possible to insert a symbol in each line of hanging verse, as in French typography; for example, the opening bracket "[". To insert it in \texttt{relatmac}, use macro \texttt{\sethangingsymbol}{⟨h⟩} with this code. In the example of French typography, do

\begin{verbatim}
\sethangingsymbol{[,
\end{verbatim}

You can also use it to force hanging verse to be flush right:

\begin{verbatim}
\sethangingsymbol{\protect\hfill}
\end{verbatim}

9.8 Long verse and page break

If you want to prevent page breaks inside long verses, use the option \texttt{nopbinverse} when loading package, or use \texttt{\lednopbinversetrue}. Read \texttt{18.2} p. 79 for further details.

9.9 Content before/after verses

It is possible to add content, like a subtitle or a spacing, before or after verse:

- The \texttt{\stanza} command can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed before the stanza. A \texttt{\noindent} is inserted before the content of first optional argument. If you don’t want this \texttt{\noindent}, you can use the second optional argument (also in brackets):

\begin{verbatim}
\stanza[foo] % \noindent is inserted before foo.
\stanza[][foo] % There is no \noindent inserted before foo.
\end{verbatim}

- Use \texttt{\AtEveryStanza{⟨arg⟩}} to automatically add content before stanzas (not in the same paragraph).

Note that a \texttt{\noindent} will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently, a \texttt{\parskip}. You can use the starred version of \texttt{\AtEveryStanza} to avoid this \texttt{\noindent}.

- Use \texttt{\AtStartEveryStanza} to automatically add content at the beginning of stanzas (in the same paragraph).
• \& can be replaced by \newverse with two optional arguments (in brackets). The
first will be printed after the current verse, the second before the next verse.

A \noindent is automatically inserted before the contents of these optional ar-

guments.

Use a third and fourth optional argument to not add these \noindent (to add
content respectively after the current verse / before the next verse).

• Use \AtEveryPend{⟨arg⟩} to automatically add content after verses (including
the final one) and \AtEveryPstart{⟨arg⟩} to automatically add content before
verses (including the first one).

• \& can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed after
the stanza.

\AtEveryStopStanza

• Use \AtEveryStopStanza to automatically add content after the end of stanzas
(not in the same paragraph).

Note that a \noindent will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently,
a \parskip. You can use the starred version of \AtEveryStopStanza to avoid
this \noindent.

\BeforeEveryStopStanza

• Use \BeforeEveryStopStanza to automatically add content at the end of stan-

zas (in the same paragraph).

9.10 Numbering stanza

\numberstanzatrue If you want to automatically number stanzas, use \numberstanzatrue. In this case,
the line number will restart at each \stanza.
\numberstanzafalse If you want to disable this feature again, use \numberstanzafalse.
You can use this feature in combination with \Xstanza (7.4.9 p. 48).
\thestanza You can redefine \thestanza to change the aspect of stanza number. Default value is:
\renewcommand{\thestanza}{%
\textbf{\arabic{stanza}}}%
}
\stanzanumwrapper You can change the value of the stanza counter with the usual commands of \LaTeX.
You can redefine \stanzanumwrapper in order to modify the way the stanza num-
ber is inserted in the flow of text. Default value is:
\newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{%
\flagstanza{#1}%
}
\antilabe
9.11 Antilabe

In dramatic text, it may happen that a line of verse is split between two speakers. That's called "antilabe". In this case, the typesetting of the second half must start at the horizontal position where the typesetting of the first half stops.

Reledmac provides tools to cope with this problem, but you must enable them with the \antilabe option when loading package, as these tools are quite resource consuming.

The \antilabe⟨name⟩ must be called at the beginning of the second half of the line of verse.

Its ⟨name⟩ argument is the name of the speaker. Because of the way \TeX expand argument, you can use one of the following syntax:

- \antilabe{name}, if you typeset the character name;
- \antilabe\command, if the character name is defined in a command, like with the thalie package;
- \antilabe{}, if you do not type the character name.

See the file examples/2-antilabe.tex for an example of use.

You can execute any arbitrary code before or after \antilabe macro just with a re-definition of \beforeantilabe or \afterantilabe. For example, to add more space, just do:

\renewcommand{\afterantilabe}{\hspace{1em}}

9.12 Various tools

\ampersand If you need to print an & symbol in a stanza, use the \ampersand macro, not \& as this will end the stanza.

\flagstanza Putting \flagstanza⟨len⟩⟨text⟩ at the start of a line in a stanza (or elsewhere) will typeset ⟨text⟩ at a distance ⟨len⟩ before the line. The default ⟨len⟩ is \stanzaindentbase.

9.13 Notes on empty lines

Since v2.3.0 of reledmac, empty lines when typesetting verses no longer produce new paragraphs, and consequently, do not insert vertical spaces. Use optional argument of \stanza or \newverse to insert vertical space.

10 Grouping

In a \minipage environment \LaTeX changes \footnote numbering from arabic to alphabetical and puts the footnotes at the end of the minipage.

\minipage You can put numbered text with critical footnotes in a minipage and the footnotes are set at the end of the minipage.
You can also put familiar footnotes (see section 6.5) in a minipage but unlike with \footnote the numbering scheme is unaltered.

Minipages, of course, are not broken across pages. Footnotes in a \textit{ledgroup} environment are typeset at the end of the environment, as with minipages, but the environment includes normal page breaks. The environment makes no change to the textwidth so it appears as normal text; it just might be that footnotes appear in the middle of a page, with text above and below.

The \textit{ledgroupsized} environment is similar to \textit{ledgroup} except that you must specify a width for the environment, as with a minipage.

\begin{ledgroupsized}{⟨width⟩}
\end{ledgroupsized}

The required ⟨width⟩ argument is the text width for the environment. The optional ⟨pos⟩ argument is for positioning numbered text within the normal textwidth. It may be one of the characters:

l (left) numbered text is flush left with respect to the normal textwidth. This is the default.

c (center) numbered text is in the center of the textwidth.

r (right) numbered text is flush right with respect to the normal textwidth.

Note that normal text, footnotes, and so forth are all flush left.

\begin{ledgroupsized}{\textwidth}
\end{ledgroupsized}
is effectively the same as \begin{ledgroup}

\end{ledgroup}

11 Cross referencing

The package provides a simple cross-referencing facility that allows you to mark places in the text with labels, and generate page and line number references to those places elsewhere using those labels.

11.1 Basic use

First you place a label in the text using the command \edlabel{⟨lab⟩}. ⟨lab⟩ can be almost anything you like, including letters, numbers, punctuation, or a combination—anything but spaces; you might type \edlabel{toves-3}, for example.

Elsewhere in the text, either before or after the \edlabel, you can refer to its location with \edpageref{⟨lab⟩}, \edlineref{⟨lab⟩}, \edsublineref{⟨lab⟩}, \pstartref{⟨lab⟩} or \annotationref{⟨lab⟩}, that will produce, respectively, the page, line, sub-line, pstart, the annotation, on which the \edlabel{⟨lab⟩} command occurred.

Note that the \edlineref command insert the side flag after the line number.

An \edlabel command may appear in the main text, or in the first argument of \edtext, but not in the apparatus itself. But \edpageref, \edlineref, \edsublineref, \pstartref commands can also be used in the apparatus to refer to \edlabels in the text.

\begin{footnote}{More precisely, you should stick to characters in the \LaTeX categories of "letter" and "other".}

\end{footnote}
11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note

The \texttt{\label} command works by writing macros to \LaTeX\ aux file. You will need to process your document through \LaTeX\ twice in order for the references to be resolved.

You will be warned if you use \texttt{\label{foo}} and \texttt{foo} has been used as a label before. The \texttt{ref} commands will return references to the last place in the file marked with this label. You will also be warned if a reference is made to an undefined label. (This will also happen the first time you process a document after adding a new \texttt{\label} command: the auxiliary file will not have been updated yet.)

11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note

If you want to refer to a word which is a lemma word, the \texttt{\label} command should be in the first argument of \texttt{\text} command.

If you want to refer to the content of a \texttt{\footnote}, the line and subline number printed will be the start line.

If you want to refer to starting and ending lines, you should use \texttt{\appref} and related tools \cite{6.6.2 p. 67}.

11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case

However, there are situations in which you will want \texttt{reledmac} to return a number without displaying any warning messages about undefined labels or the like: if you want to use the reference in a context where \LaTeX\ is looking for a number, such a warning will lead to a complaint that the number is missing. This is the case for references used within the argument to \texttt{\linenum}, for example (see \cite{6.2.5 p. 33}.

For this situation, \texttt{reledmac} supplies variants of the reference commands, with the \texttt{x} prefix: \texttt{\xpageref}, \texttt{\xlineref}, \texttt{\xsublineref}, \texttt{\xpstartref} and \texttt{\xannotationref}.

They have the following limitations:

- They will not tell you if the label is undefined.
- They must be preceded in the file by at least one of the four other cross-reference commands—e.g., a \texttt{\label{foo}} command, even if you never refer to that label—since those commands can all do the necessary processing of the aux file, and the \texttt{x...} ones cannot.
- When \texttt{hyperref} is loaded, the \texttt{hyperref} link will not be added. (Indeed, it is not a limitation, but a feature.)
- With \texttt{reledpar}, the \texttt{\lineref} does not insert the right side flag, in order to obtain a line number. Use \texttt{\xflagref} to obtain the side flag, depending on your flag.

11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note

\texttt{\xxref}
The \texttt{\textbackslash xxref{⟨lab1⟩}{⟨lab2⟩}} command generates a reference to a sequence of lines, for use in the second argument of \texttt{\textbackslash edtext}. It takes two arguments, both of which are labels: e.g., \texttt{\textbackslash xxref{mouse}{elephant}}.

It automatically calls \texttt{\textbackslash linenum {6.25} p. 33} and \texttt{\textbackslash lineannot {5.5.2} p. 27} and sets the beginning page, line, subline numbers and line annotations to those of the place where \texttt{\textbackslash edlabel{mouse}} was placed, and the ending ones to those where \texttt{\textbackslash edlabel{elephant}} occurs.

For example, one might use the following:

\begin{verbatim}
\beginnumbering
\pstart
\edlabel{Queritur}Queritur utrum metaphysica sit scientia una.
\pend

\pstart
\edtext{Et videtur quod non\edlabel{non}.}{\texttt{\textbackslash xxref{Queritur}{non}\texttt{\textbackslash lemma{queritur \dots{} non}}}\Afootnote{om. \texttt{\textbackslash emph{A}}}}
\pend

\endnumbering
\end{verbatim}

11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing

Sometimes the \texttt{\textbackslash edlabel} command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired—for example, if you want to refer to a page and line number in another volume of your edition. In such cases, you can use the \texttt{\textbackslash edmakelabel{⟨lab⟩}{⟨numbers⟩}} macro so that you can “roll your own” label.

For example, if you type \texttt{\textbackslash edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}} you will create a new label, and a later call to \texttt{\textbackslash edpageref{elephant}} would print “10” and \texttt{\textbackslash lineref{elephant}} would print “25”. The sub-line number here is zero. It is usually best to collect your \texttt{\textbackslash edmakelabel} statements near the top of your document, so that you can see them at a glance.

11.5 Normal \LaTeX cross-referencing

The normal \texttt{\textbackslash label}, \texttt{\textbackslash ref} and \texttt{\textbackslash pageref} macros may be used within numbered text, and operate in the familiar fashion.

11.6 References to start and end lines

11.6.1 Reference to main text lines

Many times, you may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is defined by a start line and an end line. \texttt{reledmac} provides specific tools for this scenario.

\texttt{\textbackslash edlabelS{⟨label⟩}} Use \texttt{\textbackslash edlabelS{⟨label⟩}} to mark the start line of the passage.

\texttt{\textbackslash edlabelE{⟨label⟩}} Use \texttt{\textbackslash edlabelE{⟨label⟩}} to mark the end the end line of the passage. These two commands just create two labels which are named \texttt{⟨label⟩:start} and \texttt{⟨label⟩:end}. 

11.6 References to start and end lines

\edlabel\SE\{
Use \edlabel\SE\{(label)\} to mark just one location in the text. Contrary to a classical \edlabel, the (label) could be use with \SEref and \SErefwithpage.

\SEref
The main utility is to use them with three other commands. \SEref\{(label)\} will make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical footnotes.

\SErefwithpage
\SErefwithpage will make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical endnotes.

\SErefonlypage
\SErefonlypage will make a cross-reference printed only with page number.

11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus

You may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is referred to by \edtext. reledmac provides specific tools for this scenario.

\applabel
If you use \applabel\{(label)\} inside the second argument of a \edtext, reledmac will add a \edlabel at the beginning and end of the marked passage. The label at the beginning of the passage will have the title \{(label):start\}, while the label at the end will have the title \{(label):end\}.

If you use \linenum\{(6.2.5 p. 33)\} to refer to these labels, reledmac will use your line settings to refer to the passage.

\appref
You can also use \appref\{(label)\} and \apprefwithpage\{(label)\} to refer to these lines. The first one will print the lines as they are printed in the critical footnotes, while the second will print the lines as they are printed in endnotes.

11.6.3 Settings

Specific to these tools
If you use \apprefprefixsingle\{(prefix)\}, \{(prefix)\} will be printed before the line numbers of a \appref-reference. If you use \apprefprefixmore\{(prefix)\}, \{(prefix)\} will be printed before the line numbers, if you refer to more than one line.

For example, you may use:

\apprefprefixsingle{line~}
\apprefprefixmore{lines~}

Note that if you do not use \apprefprefixmore, the argument of \apprefprefixsingle will be used in any case.

\setSErefprefixsingle and \setSErefprefixmore are similar for \SEref command.

Use \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle\{(prefix)\} to set the page prefix for \SErefonlypage when there is only one page. Use \setSErefonlypageprefixmore\{(prefix)\} to set it when there is more than one page. For example:

\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle{p.~}
\setSErefonlypageprefixmore{pp.~}

Note that if you do not use \setSErefonlypageprefixmore, the value of \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle is used instead.
Also note that \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle is only a shortcut for \Xendbeforepagenumber (see \[11.6.3\] p. 68). So if you use \Xendbeforepagenumber without any optional argument, it will override this setting.

Linked to setting of critical footnotes and endnotes Some commands which set the appearance of line numbers in critical footnotes also set the appearance of line numbers in \appref and \SEref if called without the optional series argument.

These commands are the following:

- \Xlineflag (for reledpar), enabled by default.
- \Xlinerangeseparator
- \Xmorethantwolines
- \Xsublinesep
- \Xtwolines
- \Xtwolinesbutnotmore
- \Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage
- \Xlinenumannotationposition
- \Xwraplinenumannotation
- \Xnoidenticallinenumannotation

If you want to make settings specific to \appref or \SEref, just call them with an optional argument containing a comma-separated list of command names (for example appref,SEref) or with a suffix equal to the command name (for example appref).

The same principle is available for \apprefwithpage, \SErefwithpage and \SErefonlypage with the following commands:

- \Xendafterpagenumber (not for \SErefonlypage)
- \Xendbeforepagenumber
- \Xendlineflag (for reledpar), enabled by default.
- \Xendlineprefixmore
- \Xendlineprefixsingle
- \Xendlinerangeseparator
- \Xendmorethantwolines
- \Xendsublinesep
- \Xendtwolines
For one specific command  When calling \appref and \SEref, you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (\(\square\)), any optional argument which can be used for critical footnotes \(6.2.2\) p. \(30\).

When calling \appref\(\text{withpage}\), \SEref\(\text{withpage}\) or \SEref\(\text{onlypage}\) you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (\(\square\)), any optional argument which can be used for critical endnotes \(6.2.3\) p. \(31\).

11.6.4 Combining multiple references

When combining multiple cross references into a list, it is possible to prevent prefixes reappearing by adding an optional argument to \appref and \SEref. The available options are:

- \texttt{noprefix} to remove any prefix set by \texttt{\setapprefprefixsingle} or the equivalent for a single reference;
- \texttt{prefixmore} to force the plural version of a prefix.

For example, a reference to “lines 65–66, 72, and 75” might use \SEref\{prefixmore\}\{ref1\}, \SEref\{noprefix\}\{ref2\}, and \SEref\{noprefix\}\{ref3\} to achieve this result.

11.7 Compatibility with xr package

The \texttt{\externaldocument} command of the \texttt{xr} package allows making cross-references from an external document, with the standard \LaTeX\ commands \texttt{\label} and \texttt{\ref} (and related).

To use it with the \texttt{reledmac} cross-reference commands (i.e. \texttt{\edlabel} and related), you must do the following:

1. Load the \texttt{xr} package.
2. Load the \texttt{reledmac} package.
3. Use the \texttt{\externaldocument} document command.
12 Sidenotes

12.1 Basics

The \marginpar command does not work in numbered text. Instead, the package provides for non-floating sidenotes in either margin.

\ledinnernote\{⟨text⟩\} will put ⟨text⟩ into the inner margin level with where the command was issued. Similarly, \ledouternote\{⟨text⟩\} puts ⟨text⟩ in the outer margin.

\ledsidenote\{⟨text⟩\} will put ⟨text⟩ into the margin specified by the current setting of \sidenotemargin\{⟨location⟩\}. The permissible value for ⟨location⟩ is one out of the list left, right, inner, or outer, for example \sidenotemargin\{outer\}.

The package’s default setting is \sidenotemargin\{right\} to typeset \ledsidenote in the right hand margin. This is the opposite of the default margin for line numbers. The style for a \ledsidenote follows that for a \ledleftnote or a \ledrightnote depending on the margin it is put in.

If two note commands for the same side are called in the same line, they will be appended and separated by a comma.

The notes will appear only after the second \Bf\TeX run. If the note positions change in your .tex file, you need two runs to get the correction position in the output file. You are strongly encouraged to use tools like \textit{latexmk}, to be sure to get the correct number of runs.

12.2 Setting

12.2.1 Width

\ledlnote\width, \ledwnote\width

The left sidenote text is put into a box of width \ledlnote\width and the right text into a box of width \ledwnote\width. These are initially set to the value of \marginparwidth.

12.2.2 Vertical position

\rightnoteupfalse, \leftnoteupfalse

By default, sidenotes are placed to align with the last line of the note to which it refers. If you want them to be placed to align with the first line of the note to which it refers, use \rightnoteupfalse (for right note) and/or \leftnoteupfalse (for left note).

12.2.3 Distance to the main text

\ledlnotesep, \ledwnotesep

The texts are put a distance \ledlnotesep (or \ledwnotesep) into the left (or right) margin. These lengths are initially set to the value of \linenumsep.

12.2.4 Font

\ledlnotefontsetup, \ledwnotefontsetup

These macros specify how the sidenote texts are to be typeset. The initial definitions are:
These can of course be changed to suit.

\newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}% left
\newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}% right

12.2.5 Separator between notes

\setsidenotesep If you have two or more sidenotes for the same line, they are separated by a comma. But if you want to change this separator, you can use \setsidenotesep{⟨sep⟩}.

13 Indexing

13.1 Basics

\index{⟨item⟩} \LaTeX{} provides the \index{⟨item⟩} command for specifying that ⟨item⟩ and the current page number should be added to the raw index (idx) file. The \edindex{⟨item⟩} macro can be used in numbered text to specify that ⟨item⟩ and the current page number should be added to the raw index file.

Note that the file .idx will contain the right reference only after the third run, because of the internal indexing mechanism of reledmac. That means you must first run (Xe/Lua)\LaTeX{} three times, then run \makeindex{}, and then finally run (Xe/Lua)\LaTeX{} again, in order to get an index with the right page numbers.

Also note that using \edtext{} in familiar footnotes refers to the line where the footnotes are called.

13.2 Use with imakeidx or indextools

If the imakeidx or indextools package is used then the macro takes an optional argument, which is the name of a raw index file. For example \edindex[line]{⟨item⟩} will use line.idx as the raw file instead of \jobname{}.idx.

The minimal version of imakeidx package to be used is the version 1.3a uploaded on CTAN on 2013/07/11.

Be careful with the order of package loading and index declaration. You must use this order:

1. Load imakeidx or indextools.
2. Load reledmac.
3. Declare the index with the macro \makeindex{} of imakeidx and indextools.

13.3 Referring to critical notes

If you want to refer to a word inside an \edtext{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨app⟩} command, \edindex{} should be defined inside the first argument, e.g.,

The \edtext{creature}{\edindex{elephant} was quite
If you add \index inside some \footnote command, it will refer to that note, and a suffix \n will be appended to the reference.

You can redefine the way the reference is made using:

- \innemark\[⟨series⟩\]{⟨definition⟩} for critical notes;
- \innemarkX\[⟨series⟩\]{⟨definition⟩} for familiar notes;

In the ⟨definition⟩ argument, you can use the following codes:

- #1, which stands for footnote series;
- ##1, which stands for reference (ie. page+line)

For example:

\innemark##1{textsuperscript{#1}}

13.4 Separator between page and line numbers

The page & linenumber combination is written as \pagelinesep line, where the default definition is \newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-} so that an item on page 3, line 5 will be noted as being at 3-5. You can renew \pagelinesep to get a different separator.

- is the default separator used by the \makeindex program.

You can reconfigure it, this example defines a colon as separator:

\renewcommand{\pagelinesep}{:}

However, you also have to configure your \ist index style file. For example, if you use : as separator:

page_compositor "::"

Read the \makeindex program’s handbook about the \ist file.

13.5 Using xindy

Should you decide to use xindy instead of makeindex to transform your .idx files into .ind files, you must use some specific configuration file (.xdy) so that xindy can understand \eledmac reference syntax of which the scheme is: pagonenumber-linenumber

\footnote{Of the mouse, that is.}

\footnotemark[Of the mouse, that is.]}
13.6 Advanced setting

An example of such a file is provided in the "examples" folder. Read the xindy handbook to learn how to use it.

This file also provides, with an explanation, the settings that are needed to put \reledmac lines numbers in parenthesis, in order to make a better distinction between line numbers and page ranges.

In any case, you must load \reledmac with the xindy option, in order to generate a .xdy file which is specific to your document. This file is needed by the .xdy example file which is in the "examples" folder. Its default name is \reledmac-markup-attr.xdy, but you can change it by using your own as an argument of the xindy+hyperref option.

If you choose to use both xindy and the hyperref package, you must do three more things:

1. Use xindy+hyperref option when loading the reledmac package. When you run (Xe/Lua)TeX with this option, a .xdy configuration file will be generated with all the settings needed to allow internal hyperlinking in each index entry which is created by \index.

2. Use hyperindex=false option when loading hyperref.

3. Uncomment — by removing the semicolons at the beginning of the relevant lines — some lines in the <code>.xdy</code> file provided in the "examples" folder in order to restore internal links in the index to be used by the standard index command.

13.6 Advanced setting

\index The \index process uses a \label and \ref mechanism to get the correct line number. It automatically generates labels of the form \label{\indexlab N}, where N is a number, and the default definition of \indexlab is:

\newcommand*{\indexlab}{$&$

in the hopes that this will not be used by any other labels (\index’s labels are like \label{$&$}). You can change \indexlab to something else if you need to.

14 Glossary

\reledmac provides mechanism to make glossaries with the glossaries package, referring not to the page, but to the page and line.

14.1 Preamble setting

When using \reledmac with glossaries, you must also glossaries-extra.

The standard compositor between page and line number in \reledmac is a dash, while glossaries uses, by default, a dot. Consequently, you must:

---

25Or, for people who read French, read [http://geekographie.maieul.net/174](http://geekographie.maieul.net/174)

26These are the recommended lines to provide the best possible compatibility between hyperref and xindy, even without using \reledmac.
Tabular material

L\TeX's normal \texttt{tabular} and \texttt{array} environments cannot be used where line numbering is being done; more precisely, they can be used but with odd results, so don't use them. However, \texttt{reledmac} provides some simple tabulation environments that can be line numbered. The environments can also be used in normal unnumbered text.

There are six environments: the \texttt{edarray*} environments are for math and \texttt{edtabular*} for text entries. The final \texttt{l}, \texttt{c}, or \texttt{r} in the environment names indicate that the entries will be flushleft (\texttt{l}), centered (\texttt{c}) or flushright (\texttt{r}). There is no means of specifying different formats for each column, nor for specifying a fixed width for a column. The environments are centered with respect to the surrounding text.

\begin{edtabularc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
\texttt{AAA} & \texttt{BB} & \texttt{C}
\end{edtabularc}

Entries in the environments are the same as for the normal \texttt{array} and \texttt{tabular} environments but there must be no ending \texttt{\textbackslash} at the end of the last row. \textit{There must be the same number of column designators (the \texttt{&}) in each row.} There is no equivalent to any line drawing commands (such as \texttt{\textbackslash hline}). However, unlike the normal environments, the \texttt{ed...} environments can cross page breaks.

Macros like \texttt{\textbackslash edtext} can be used as part of an entry.

For example:

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{numbering}
\begin{pstart}
\textbf{\Large I} \ wish I was a little bug\textit{\textbackslash edindex{bug}} & \textbf{\Large I} \ eat my peas with honey\textit{\textbackslash edindex{honey}} \textbackslash \\
& With whiskers \textit{\textbackslash edtext{round}\{\texttt{\textbf{\textbackslash Afootnote{around}}}\}} my tummy & \texttt{\textbackslash Afootnote{around}} \textbackslash \\
& I’ve done it all my life. \textbackslash \\
& I’d climb into a honey\textit{\textbackslash edindex{honey}} pot &
\end{pstart}
\end{numbering}
\end{verbatim}
& It makes the peas taste funny \\
& And get my tummy gummy. \index{gummy} & \\
& But it keeps them on the knife.
\end{edtabularr}
\pend
\endnumbering

produces the following parallel pair of verses.

\begin{edarrayl}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
Q & & fd & h & qwertziohg \\
v & & wptz & x & y & vb \\
g & nnn & \edrowfill{3}{5}{\upbracefill} & & \\
\edrowfill{1}{3}{\downbracefill} & & & pq & dgh \\
k & & l & co & ghweropjklmnbcxys \\
1 & 2 & 3 & \edrowfill{4}{5}{\hrulefill} & \\
\end{tabularr}

The distance between the columns is controlled by the length \texttt{\edtabcolsep}.

\begin{spreadmath}{\langle math \rangle}
\begin{array}{@{}l@{}l@{}l@{}l@{}l@{}}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
& \times \{F+G+C\} & & & \\
a & bb & \times \{ccc & dddd\}
\end{array}
\end{spreadmath}

The macro \texttt{\edrowfill{\langle start\rangle}{\langle end\rangle}{\langle fill\rangle}} fills columns number \langle start \rangle to \langle end \rangle inclusive with \langle fill \rangle. The \langle fill \rangle argument can be any horizontal “fill”. For example, \texttt{\hrulefill} or \texttt{\upbracefill}.

Note that every row must have the same number of columns, even if some would not appear to be necessary.

The \texttt{\edrowfill} macro can be used in both tabular and array environments. The typeset appearance of the following code is shown below.

\begin{edarrayl}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
Q & & fd & h & qwertziohg \\
v & & wptz & x & y & vb \\
g & nnn & \edrowfill{3}{5}{\upbracefill} & & \\
\edrowfill{1}{3}{\downbracefill} & & & pq & dgh \\
k & & l & co & ghweropjklmnbcxys \\
1 & 2 & 3 & \edrowfill{4}{5}{\hrulefill} & \\
\end{tabularr}
You can also define your own “fill”. For example:
\newcommand*{\upbracketfill}{\vrule height 4pt depth 0pt \hrulefill \vrule height 4pt depth 0pt}
is a fill like \upbracefill except it has the appearance of a (horizontal) bracket instead of a brace. It can be used like this:
\begin{edarrayc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
\text{a} & \text{\edrowfill{2}{3}{\upbracketfill}} & \text{\&} & \text{d} \\
A & B & C & D
\end{edarrayc}
\edatleft\{\left =\right\}{\{}{1.5\baselineskip}
\edatright[= right]\{\}\{1.5\baselineskip}
\begin{edarrayl}
A & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
\text{Before} & 1 & 3 & 6 \\
C & 1 & 4 & \text{After} \\
D & 1 & 5 & 0
\end{edarrayl}

\edatleft\{\math}{\langle\symbol\rangle{\langle\mathhalf\rangle}}\text{typesets the math }\langle\symbol\rangle\text{ as }\left\{\langle\symbol\rangle\right\}\text{ with the optional }\langle\math\rangle\text{ centered before it. The }\langle\symbol\rangle\text{ is twice }\langle\mathhalf\rangle\text{ tall.}
The \edatright\text{ macro is similar and it typesets }\right\{\langle\symbol\rangle\}\text{ with }\langle\math\rangle\text{ centered after it.
\begin{edarrayc}
& 1 & 2 & 3 & \\
\& 4 & 5 & 6 & \\
\& 7 & 8 & 9 & \\
\text{left} = \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
\end{bmatrix}
= \text{right}
\end{edarrayc}
\edatleft\{\langle\text{\entry}\rangle\}{\langle\text{\text}\rangle}	ext{, where }\langle\entry\rangle\text{ is an entry in the leftmost column, typesets }\langle\text{\entry}\rangle\text{ left justified before the }\langle\entry\rangle.\text{ Similarly }\edatright\{\langle\entry\rangle\}{\langle\text{\text}\rangle},
where }\langle\entry\rangle\text{ is an entry in the rightmost column, typesets }\langle\text{\text}\rangle\text{ right justified after the }\langle\entry\rangle.
\text{For example:}
\begin{edarrayl}
A & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
\text{Before}\{\B}\ & 1 & 3 & 6 \\
C & 1 & 4 & \text{After}\{\B}\ & 1 & 5 & 0
\end{edarrayl}
\begin{array}{cccc}
  a & b & C & d \\
  v & w & x & y \\
  m & n & o & p \\
  k & & L & cvb
\end{array}
\edvertline{4pc}

The \verb|\edvertdots| macro is similar to \verb|\edvertline| except that it produces a vertical dotted instead of a solid line.

16 Sectioning commands

16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes

The standard sectioning commands (\verb|\chapter|, \verb|\section| etc.) can be used inside numbered text. In this case, you must call them as an optional argument of \verb|\pstart| (5.2.3 p. 19):

\pstart[\verb|\section{|section|}] Pstart content. \pend

The line which contains them will not be numbered, and you cannot add critical notes inside.

16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes

You have to use the following commands:

- \verb|\eledchapter[(text)]{(critical text)}|
- \verb|\eledchapter*|
• \eledsection[(critical text)],
• \eledsection*,
• \eledsubsection[(critical text)],
• \eledsubsection*,
• \eledsubsubsection[(critical text)],
• \eledsubsubsection*.

These are equivalent to the \LaTeX{} commands. Each individual command must be called alone in a \pstart...\pend:

\pstart
\eledsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{section}}
\pend
\pstart
\eledsubsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{sub}}
\pend
\pstart
\eledsubsection{xxxx\ledsidenote{sub}}
\pend
\pstart
normal text
\pend

After the first run, you will see only the text. This is normal. After the second run, you will see the formatting. Finally, with the third run, you will see the table of contents.

For technical reasons, the page break before \elechapter cannot be added automatically. You have to insert it manually via \beforeeledchapter, which must be called outside of a numbered section.

16.3 Optimization

If you are not going to have any \eledxxx commands, then load reledmac with noeledsec option. That will suppress the generation of unneeded .eledsec files, save memory, and make reledmac run faster.

17 Quotation environments

The quotation and quote environments can be used so that the same definition/note appears both inside and outside a numbered section. The typographical consequences will resemble the outside numbered sections, based on the styles of the book class. However, if you use a package that redefines these environments, these redefinitions won’t be available inside the numbered section. You must open any quotation environments inside a \pstart...\pend block, not outside. A quotation environment MUST NOT be opened immediately after a \pstart and MUST NOT be closed immediately before a \pend.

In some cases, you do not want these environments to be redefined in numbered sections. You can load the package with the option noquotation to prevent this redefinition.
18 Page breaks

18.1 Control page breaking

re\texttt{ledmac} and \texttt{reledpar} break pages automatically. However, you may sometimes want to either force page breaks, or prevent them. The packages provide two macros:

- \texttt{\textbackslash ledpb} adds a page break.
- \texttt{\textbackslash lednopb} prevents a page break, by adding one line to the current page if needed.

These commands have effect only at the second run.

These two commands take effect at the beginning of line in which they are called. For example, if you call \texttt{\textbackslash ledpb} at l. 444, then l. 443 will be at p. \( n \), and l. 444 at p. \( n + 1 \).

However, you can change the behavior and decide they will have effect after the end of the line, adding \texttt{\textbackslash ledpbsetting\{after\}} at the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble). With the previous example, l. 444 will be on p. \( n \) and l. 445 will be on p. \( n + 1 \).

If you are using \texttt{reledpar} to typeset parallel pages, you must use \texttt{\textbackslash lednopb} on both sides in the two corresponding lines. This is especially important when you are using stanzas; otherwise, the pages will be out of sync.

18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses

You can also decide to prevent page breaks between two lines of a long verse. To do this, use \texttt{nopbinverse} when loading package, or add \texttt{\textbackslash lednopbinversetrue} in the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble).

This feature works only with verse of 2 lines and no more. It works on the third run, or on the fourth run if using \texttt{reledpar}. By default, when a long verse runs between two pages, a page break will be placed at the beginning of the verse. However, if you have added \texttt{\textbackslash ledpbsetting\{after\}}, the page break will be placed at the end of the long verse and the page containing the long verse will have one extra line.

19 Miscellaneous

When the package assembles the name of the auxiliary file for a section, it prefixes \texttt{\textbackslash extensionchars} to the section number. This is initially defined to be empty, but you can add some characters to help distinguish these files if you like; what you use is likely to be system-dependent. If, for example, you said \texttt{\textbackslash renewcommand\{\textbackslash extensionchars\}\{!\}}, then you would get temporary files called \texttt{jobname.\!1}, \texttt{jobname.\!2}, etc.

The package can take options. The \texttt{final} option, which is the default is for final typesetting; this sets \texttt{\ifledfinal} to TRUE. The other option, \texttt{draft}, may be useful during earlier stages and sets \texttt{\ifledfinal} to FALSE.

The lemma within the text is printed via \texttt{\textbackslash showlemma\{}lemma\}. Normally, or with the \texttt{final} option, the definition of \texttt{\textbackslash showlemma} is:

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\textbackslash showlemma}[1]\{#1\}
\end{verbatim}

so it just produces its argument. With the \texttt{draft} option it is defined as

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\textbackslash showlemma}[1]\{\textbf{#1}\}
\end{verbatim}
so that its argument is bold, which may make it easier to check that all lemmas have
been treated.
If you would prefer some other style, you could put something like this in the pream-
ble:
\ifdeffinal\else
  \renewcommand{\showlemma}[1]{\textbf{#1}}% or simply \showlemma[1]{#1}
\fi

19.1 Known and suspected limitations

19.1.1 Non-standard geometry
If you use classes other than article or book, or if you use the geometry package, you
should use maxhnotesX and/or \maxhnotes as explained in 7.12.6 p. 57 in order to
prevent footnotes from overlapping the bottom margin.

19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility
The floatrow package must be loaded before the reledmac.

19.1.3 "No room for a new"
Sometimes, especially when using reledmac with other packages, you could obtain
warning messages such 'no room for a new count' or 'no room for a new write'.
In order to prevent such problems, the first thing is to use the options to optimize
reledmac. For example, if you need only two series of notes, use the series=\{A,B\}
option. Read 16.3 p. 78 in order to know which are the available options.
However, if with these options you still have such messages, here are some tricks.

'no room for a new count' is often caused by \biblatex being used at the same time.
Load reledmac (and \reledpar) before \biblatex.

'no room for a new write' can be caused by multiple indexes. In this case, use
\indextools of \imakeidx with the splitindex option, in order to obtain only
one .idx file. If that does not solve your problem, you can use \maketitle package.
That should solve the problem, but \miktex will be slower.

If after reading and applying these advices you have still problem, contact us with a
minimal working example.

19.1.4 Marginal notes
In general, reledmac's system for adding marginal line numbers breaks anything that
makes direct use of the \miktex insert system, which includes marginpars, footnotes and
floats.
However, you can use both \footnote and the familiar footnote series notes in
numbered text. A \marginpar in numbered text will throw away its contents and send
a warning message to the terminal and log file, but will do no harm.
19.1.5 Paragraph shape

\parshape cannot be used within numbered text, except in a very restricted way.

`\LaTeX` is a three-pass system, but even after a document has been processed three times, there are some tricky situations in which the page breaks decided by `\LaTeX` never settle down. At each successive run, `reledmac` may oscillate between two different sets of page decisions. To stop this happening, should it arise, Wayne Sullivan suggested the inclusion of the quantity `\ballast`. The amount of `\ballast` will be subtracted from the penalties which apply to the page breaks calculated on the previous run through `\LaTeX`, thus reinforcing these breaks. So if you find your page breaks oscillating, insert `\setcounter{ballast}{100}` or some such figure, and with any luck the page breaks will settle down. Luckily, this problem does not crop up at all often.

19.1.6 Paragraphed footnotes

The restriction on explicit line-breaking in paragraphed footnotes, mentioned on 7.2 p. 44, and described in more detail on XIII.6.3 p. 201, really is a nuisance if that is something you need to do. There are some possible solutions, described by Michael Downes, but this area remains unsatisfactory.

If you use more than one series of paragraphed notes, it may happen, in some particular cases, that only the footnote rule, with no accompanying footnotes, be printed. In this case use `reledmac` package option `nopenalties` which should solve the problem, but also may produce widow or orphan lines. For the time being, we have no solution of this problem.

For paragraphed footnotes `\LaTeX` has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 68) to increase the estimate. You have to use `\renewcommand` for this, like:

`\renewcommand{\footfudgefiddle}{68}`

Note that you must call it before `\Xarrangement{paragraph}` or `\arrangementX{paragraph}`.

Any settings to "geometry" must be made before `\Xarrangement` or `\arrangementX`.

Finally, in many cases you should use `\maxhnotes` and / or `\maxhnotesX` (7.12.6 p. 57), in order to define the maximum height relative to `\textheight` and not to `\vsize`, because the `\vsize` value is not the same inside and outside of the preamble.

19.1.7 Use with other packages

Because of `reledmac`'s complexity, it may not play well with other packages. In particular `reledmac` is sensitive to commands in the arguments to the `\edtext` and `\*footnote` macros (this is discussed in more detail in section VI and in particular the discussion about `\no@expands` and `\morenoexpands`). You will have to see what works or doesn't work in your particular case.

You can define the macro `\morenoexpands` to modify macros that you call within `\edtext`. Because of the way `reledmac` numbers the lines the arguments to `\edtext` can be processed more than once and in some cases a macro should only be processed
once. One example is the \texttt{\colorbox} macro from the \texttt{color} package, which you might use like this:

\[
\ldots \texttt{edtext}\{\colorbox{mycolor}\{\texttt{lemma}\}\{Afootnote{\ldots}\colorbox{...}\}}
\]

If you actually try this\footnote{Reported by Dirk-Jan Dekker in the CTT thread “Incompatibility of ‘color’ package” on 2003/08/28.} you will find \LaTeX{} whinging “Missing { inserted”, and then things start to fall apart. The trick in this case is to specify either:

\[
\texttt{newcommand}{\morenoexpands}{let\colorbox=0}
\]

or

\[
\texttt{makeatletter}\texttt{newcommand}{\morenoexpands}{let\colorbox\@secondoftwo}\texttt{makeatother}
\]

\(@\texttt{secondoftwo}\) is an internal \LaTeX{} macro that takes two arguments and throws away the first one.) The first incantation lets color show in both the main text and footnotes whereas the second one shows color in the main text but kills it in the lemma and footnotes. On the other hand if you use \texttt{textcolor} instead, like

\[
\ldots \texttt{edtext}\{\textcolor{mycolor}\{\texttt{lemma}\}\{Afootnote{\ldots}\textcolor{...}\}}
\]

there is no need to fiddle with \texttt{morenoexpands} as the color will naturally be displayed in both the text and footnotes. To kill the color in the lemma and footnotes, though, you can do:

\[
\texttt{makeatletter}\texttt{newcommand}{\morenoexpands}{let\textcolor\@secondoftwo}\texttt{makeatother}
\]

It took Peter Wilson a little while to discover all this. If you run into this sort of problem you may have to spend some time experimenting before hitting on a solution.

If you want to use the option \texttt{bottom} of the \texttt{footmisc} package, you must load this package \textit{before} the \texttt{relledmac} package.

### 19.2 Parallel typesetting

Peter Wilson has developed the \texttt{ledpar} package as an extension to \texttt{ledmac} specifically for parallel typesetting of critical texts. This also cooperates with the babel / polyglossia packages for typesetting in multiple languages. \texttt{reledpar} is the successor of the primitive \texttt{ledpar} package.

Peter Wilson also developed the \texttt{ledarab} package for handling parallel Arabic text in critical editions. However, this package is not maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. You should use the capabilities of a modern TeX processor, like Xe(La)TeX.
I Implementation overview

We present the \texttt{reledmac} code in roughly the order in which it is used during a run of \TeX. The order is \textit{exactly} that in which it is read when you load the \texttt{reledmac} package, because the same file is used to generate this manual and to generate the \LaTeX{} package file.

Most of what follows consists of macro definitions, but there are some commands that are executed immediately—especially at the start of the code. The documentation generally describes the code from the point of view of what happens when the macros are executed, though. As each macro is introduced, its name is printed in the margin.

After package options, we begin with the commands you use to start and stop line numbering in a section of text (Section II). Next comes the machinery for writing and reading the auxiliary file for each section that helps us count lines, and for creating list macros encoding the information from that file (Section V); this auxiliary file will be read at the start of each section, to create those list macros, and a new version of the file will be started to collect information from the body of the section.

Next are commands for marking sections of the text for footnotes (Section VI), followed by the macros that take each paragraph apart, attach the line numbers and insertions, and send the result to the vertical list (Section VII). The footnote commands (Section XIII) and output routine (Section XXIII) finish the main part of the processing; cross-referencing (Section XXV) and endnotes (Section XX) complete the story.

In what follows, macros with an @ in their name are more internal to the workings of \texttt{reledmac} than those made up just of ordinary letters, just as in Plain \TeX{} (see \textit{The \TeX{}book}, p. 344). You are meant to be able to make free with ordinary macros, but the “@” ones should be treated with more respect, and changed only if you are pretty sure of what you are doing.

II Preliminaries

II.1 Links with original EDMAC

Generally, these are the modifications to the original EDMAC code:

- Replace as many \texttt{\def}’s by \texttt{\newcommand}’s as possible to avoid overwriting \LaTeX{} macros.
- Replace user-level \TeX{} counts by \LaTeX{} counters.
- Use the \LaTeX{} font handling mechanisms.
- Use \LaTeX{} messaging and file facilities.

II.2 Package declaration

Announce the name and version of the package, which is targetted for \LaTeX{}2e.
II Preliminaries

II.3 Package options

Use this to remember which option is used, set and execute the options with final as the default. We use xkeyval in order to manage options with argument.

\RequirePackage{xkeyval}

II.3.1 Options of reledpar

Here, we define some booleans specific to reledpar options, but which have consequences on reledmac internal commands.

\newif\ifparledgroup
\ifsameparallelpagenumber
\ifprevpgnotnumbered
\ifledfinal
\ifnocritical@
\if@noeled@sec
\ifnofamiliar@
\ifnoledgroup@
\ifparapparatus@
\ifnoquotation@
\iflednopbinverse
\ifwidthliketwocolumns
\ifxindy@
\ifxindyhyperref@
\ifeledmaccompat@
\ifnoresetlinenumannotation@
\ifantilabe@

\DeclareOptionX{series}[A,B,C,D,E]{\xdef\default@series{#1}}
\ExecuteOptionsX{series}

\newif\if@noeled@sec
\DeclareOptionX{noeledsec}{\@noeled@sectrue}

\newif\ifnocritical@
\DeclareOptionX{nocritical}{\nocritical@true}

\newif\ifnofamiliar@
\DeclareOptionX{nofamiliar}{\nofamiliar@true}

\newif\ifnoledgroup@
\DeclareOptionX{noledgroup}{\noledgroup@true}

\newif\ifnoend@
\DeclareOptionX{noend}{\let\l@dend@open\@gobble\let\l@dend@close\relax\global\let\l@dend@stuff=\relax\noend@true}

II.3.2 Options of reledmac

\DeclareOptionX{series}{\xdef\default@series{#1}}
\ExecuteOptionsX{series}

\newif\if@noeled@sec
\DeclareOptionX{noeledsec}{\@noeled@sectrue}

\newif\ifnocritical@
\DeclareOptionX{nocritical}{\nocritical@true}

\newif\ifnofamiliar@
\DeclareOptionX{nofamiliar}{\nofamiliar@true}

\newif\ifnoledgroup@
\DeclareOptionX{noledgroup}{\noledgroup@true}

\newif\ifnoend@
\DeclareOptionX{noend}{\let\l@dend@open\@gobble\let\l@dend@close\relax\global\let\l@dend@stuff=\relax\noend@true}
II.3 Package options

```latex
\newif\ifnoquotation@
\DeclareOptionX{noquotation}{\noquotation@true}
\newif\ifledfinal
\DeclareOptionX{final}{\ledfinaltrue}
\DeclareOptionX{draft}{\ledfinalfalse}
\ExecuteOptionsX{final}
\newif\ifparapparatus@
\DeclareOptionX{parapparatus}{\parapparatus@true}
\newif\iflednopbinverse
\DeclareOptionX{nopbinverse}{\lednopbinversetrue}
\newif\ifwidthliketwocolumns%
\DeclareOptionX{widthliketwocolumns}{\widthliketwocolumnstrue}%
\newif\ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns
\DeclareOptionX{continuousnumberingwithcolumns}{\continuousnumberingwithcolumnstrue}%
\newif\ifxindy@
\DeclareOptionX{xindy}[eledmac-markup-attr.xdy]{%
\AtBeginDocument{\immediate\openout\eledmac@xindy@out=#1}%
\newwrite\eledmac@xindy@out%
\xindy@true%
\gdef\eledmacmarkuplocrefdepth{:depth 1}%
\AtEndDocument{\immediate\closeout\eledmac@xindy@out}%
}%
\newif\ifxindyhyperref@
\DeclareOptionX{xindy+hyperref}{%
\xindyhyperref@true%
}%
\newif\ifeledmaccompat@
\DeclareOptionX{eledmac-compat}{%
\eledmaccompat@true%
}%
\DeclareOptionX{nopenalties}{%
\AtBeginDocument{\let\add@penalties\relax}%
}%
\def\l@auxdir{}
\DeclareOptionX{auxdir}{%
\xdef\l@auxdir{#1/}%
}%
\newif\ifsw@caseinsensitive
\DeclareOptionX{swcaseinsensitive}{%
\AtBeginDocument{\let\add@penalties\relax}%
}%
```

We use the starred form of \ProcessOptionsX which executes options in the order listed in the source file: class options, then listed package options, so a package option can override a class option with the same name. This was suggested by Dan Luecking in the ctt thread \textit{Class/package option processing}, on 27 February 2004.

\ProcessOptionsX*\relax

\textbf{II.4 Loading packages}

Loading package \texttt{xargs} to declare commands with optional arguments. Loading package \texttt{xparse} to declare fully expandable commands with optional argument. Ideally, we should use only \texttt{xparse} and not \texttt{xargs}. For historical reasons, we use both. Etoolbox is also used to make code clearer - for example, in dynamic command names (which can replace \texttt{\csname etc.\csname)}, Use suffix to declare commands with a starred version, \texttt{xstring} to work with strings, ifluatex and \texttt{ifxetex} to test if Lua\TeX\ or X\TeX\ is running, and \texttt{ragged2e} to manage ragged justification for paragraphed notes.

\RequirePackage{xargs}
\RequirePackage{xparse}[2017/03/07]
\RequirePackage{etoolbox}
\@ifl@t@r\fmtversion{2015/10/01}
{\ifboolexpr{not test\@ifl@t@r\fmtversion{2016/03/31} or (test\ifdefstring{\fmtversion}{2016/03/31} and test\ifnumless{\patch@level}{3})}\%
{\PackageWarning{reledmac}{You are using a \LaTeX\ version older than 2016/03/31 patch 3.\MessageBreak You are strongly encouraged to use a newer version.}}\%
{\_require{etex}\%
\csname reserveinserts\endcsname{32}\%
}\require{suffix}\require{xstring}\require{ifluatex}\require{ragged2e}
II.5 Compatibility with \LaTeX X

Here, we enable some primitives for \LaTeX X.

\if\directlua\undefined\else%
\directlua{tex.enableprimitives("","textdir","pardir","bodydir")}
\fi

\ifluatex%
\ifnum\luatexversion<110%
\PackageWarning{reledmac}{You need to use LuaTeX 1.1.0 or higher}{\@ehc}
\fi%
\fi%
\fi%
\fi%

II.6 Boolean flags

\if@dmemoir Define a flag for if the \texttt{memoir} class has been used.
\newif\if@dmemoir
\@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@dmemoirtrue}{\@dmemoirfalse}
\fi%

\if@ledgroup Flag set to true inside a \texttt{ledgroup} environment.
\newif\if@ledgroup%
\fi%

\if@imakeidx Define a flag for if the \texttt{imakeidx} package has been used.
\newif\if@imakeidx
\@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\@imakeidxtrue}\{}%False is the default value
\fi%

\if@indextools Define a flag for if the \texttt{indextools} package has been used.
\newif\if@indextools%
\@ifpackageloaded{indextools}\{}%False is the default value
\fi%
False is the default value. We consider indextools as a variant of imakeidx. That is why we set \if@imakeidx to true. We also let \imki@wrindexentry to \indtl@wrindexentry.

\ifl@footmisc
Define a flag if the footmisc package has been loaded.
\newif\ifl@footmisc
\@ifpackageloaded{footmisc}{\l@footmisctrue}{%false is the default value
\if@RTL
The \if@RTL is defined by the bidi package, which is sometimes loaded by polyglossia. But we define it as well if the bidi package is not loaded.
\ifdef{\if@RTL}{\newif\if@RTL}{%
\if@firstlineofpage
\if@firstlineofpage is set to true at the first line of every page. \if@firstlineofpageR is for the right side.
\newif\if@firstlineofpage%
\newif\if@firstlineofpageR%
%
\section{Messages}
All the messages are grouped here as macros. This saves \TeX's memory when the same message is repeated and also lets them be edited easily.
\reledmac@warning
Write a warning message.
\newcommand{\reledmac@warning}[1]{\PackageWarning{reledmac}{#1}}%
\reledmac@error
Write an error message.
\newcommand{\reledmac@error}[2]{\PackageError{reledmac}{#1}{#2}}%
\led@err@NumberingStarted
\led@err@NumberingNotStarted
\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted
\newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingStarted}{%}
\newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingNotStarted}{%}
\newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted}{%}
II.7 Messages

\newcommand*{\led@err@samewordRTL}{%
\reledmac@error{You can’t use \string\sameword \MessageBreak when typesetting RTL text. \MessageBreak Please use LuaTeX instead.}{\@ehc}%
}%

\newcommand*{\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart}{%
\reledmac@error{\string\edtext \space outside numbered paragraph (\pstart \space ... \space \pend)}{\@ehc}%
}%
\newcommand{\led@err@PstartInEdtext}{%
\reledmac@error{\string\pstart \space in \string\edtext \space #1 argument}{\@ehc}%
}%
\newcommand{\led@err@PendInEdtext}{%
\reledmac@error{\string\pend \space in \string\edtext \space #1 argument}{\@ehc}%
}%

\newcommand*{\led@mess@NotesChanged}{%
\typeout{reledmac reminder: }%
\typeout{ The number of the footnotes in this section }
\typeout{ has changed since the last run.}%
\typeout{ You will need to run LaTeX two more times }
\typeout{ before the footnote placement}%
\typeout{ and line numbering in this section are }
\typeout{ correct.}}%

\newcommand*{\led@mess@SectionContinued}{%
\message{Section #1 (continuing the previous section)}}%

\newcommand*{\led@err@LineationInNumbered}{%
\reledmac@error{You can’t use \string\lineation \space within a numbered section}{\@ehc}%
}%

\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLineation}{%
\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lineation argument}}%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLinenummargin}{%
\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lineation \space argument}}%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLockdisp}{%
\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lockdisp argument}}%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSublockdisp}{%
\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\linenummargin\space argument} \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLockdisp}{\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lockdisp\space argument}} \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSublockdisp}{\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sublockdisp\space argument}} 
\%
\led@warn@NoFile
\newcommand*{\led@warn@NoFile}{\reledmac@warning{File `#1' not found}} \%
\led@warn@LineFileObsolete
\newcommand*{\led@warn@Obsolete}{\reledmac@warning{Line-list file #1 was obsolete. We have not read it. Please run LaTeX again.}} 
\%
\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline}{\reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a sub-line number less than zero.}} \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine}{\reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a line number less than zero.}} 
\%
\led@warn@BadSetline
\led@warn@BadSetlinenum
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetline}{\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setline\space argument}} \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetlinenum}{\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setlinenum\space argument}} 
\%
\led@err@PstartNotNumbered
\led@err@PstartInPstart
\led@err@PendNotNumbered
\led@err@PendNoPstart
\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart
\newcommand*{\led@err@PstartNotNumbered}{\reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space must be used within a numbered section % \string\beginnumbering\space \string\endnumbering}}{\@ehc} \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartInPstart}{\reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space encountered while another \string\pstart\space was in effect}}{\@ehc} \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNotNumbered}{\reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must be used within a numbered section}}{\@ehc} \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNoPstart}{\reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must follow a \string\pstart}}{\@ehc} \newcommand*{\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered}{\reledmac@error{\string\autopar\space not numbered}}{\@ehc} \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart}{\reledmac@error{\string\autopar\space not numbered}}{\@ehc}
II.7 Messages

\reledmac@error{\string\autopar\space must be used within a numbered section}{\@ehc}\%
\newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart}{\reledmac@error{\string\beginnumbering...\string\endnumbering\space without \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}\%

\%\led@warn@BadAction\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAction}{\reledmac@warning{Bad action code, value \next@action.}}\%

\%\led@warn@DuplicateLabel\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@DuplicateLabel}{\reledmac@warning{Duplicate definition of label `#1'@gobble}}\%
\@latex@warning@no@line{Label `#1' multiply defined}\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext}{\reledmac@warning{applabel\space outside of the second argument of an \string\edtext\space `#1' on page \thepage.}}\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@RefUndefined}{\G@refundefinedtrue\reledmac@warning{Reference `#1' on page \thepage\space undefined.\space Using `000'.}}\%
\@latex@warning{Reference `#1' undefined\on@line}\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@pairRefUndefined}{\G@refundefinedtrue\reledmac@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' on page \thepage\space undefined.\space Using `??'.}}\%
\@latex@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' undefined\on@line}\%

\%\led@warn@NoMarginpars\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@NoMarginpars}{\reledmac@warning{You can't use \string\marginpar\space in numbered text}}\%

\%\led@warn@BadHookSeries\%
\newcommand{\led@warn@BadHookSeries}[2]{\reledmac@warning{Bad series #1 for #2 hook. Skipped.}}\%

\%\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin\%
\newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin}{\reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sidenotemargin\space argument}}
II Preliminaries

\newcommand*{\led@warn@NoIndexFile}[1]{% 
  \reledmac@warning{Undefined index file #1}}

\newcommand{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist}[1]{% 
  \reledmac@warning{Series #1 is still existing !}}

\newcommand*{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist}{% 
  \reledmac@warning{Series #1 is still existing !}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@StanzaIndentNotDefined}{% 
  \reledmac@error{You have not defined the indentation for the line \number
    \stanza@count}{@ehc}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{% 
  \ifledRcol@ 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ sidenotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR} 
  \else 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ sidenotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num} 
  \fi 
}

\newcommand*{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{% 
  \ifledRcol@ 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ leftnotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR} 
  \else 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ leftnotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num} 
  \fi 
}

\newcommand*{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{% 
  \ifledRcol@ 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ rightnotes on line \the\line@numR\space p. \the\page@numR} 
  \else 
    \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@ rightnotes on line \the\line@num\space p. \the\page@num} 
  \fi 
}

\newcommand*{\led@err@TooManyColumns}{% 
  \reledmac@error{Too many columns}{@ehc}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@UnequalColumns}{% 
  \reledmac@error{Unequal columns}{@ehc}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@LowStartColumn}{% 
  \reledmac@error{Low start column}{@ehc}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@HighEndColumn}{% 
  \reledmac@error{High end column}{@ehc}}

\newcommand*{\led@err@ReverseColumns}{% 
  \reledmac@error{Reverse columns}{@ehc}}
II.7 Messages

\newcommand*{\led@err@UnequalColumns}{%\reledmac@error{Number of columns is not equal to the number in the previous row (or \protect\\space forgotten?)}{\@ehc}}
\newcommand*{\led@err@LowStartColumn}{%\reledmac@error{Start column is too low}{\@ehc}}
\newcommand*{\led@err@HighEndColumn}{%\reledmac@error{End column is too high}{\@ehc}}
\newcommand*{\led@err@ReverseColumns}{%\reledmac@error{Start column is greater than end column}{\@ehc}}
\newcommand{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}{%\reledmac@error{\string\toendnotes\space and related commands must be called inside a numbered texte \string\beginnumbering\space ...\space\string\endnumbering)}{\@ehc}%
\newcommand{\led@err@EdtextWithoutNote}{%\reledmac@error{edtext \unexpanded{#1} without Xfootnote or Xendnote. Check syntax.}{\@ehc}%
\newcommand{\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext}{%\reledmac@error{#1footnote outside of the second argument of an edtext. Check syntax.}{\@ehc}%
\newcommand{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac}{%\reledmac@error{#1 must be loaded before reledmac}{\@ehc}%
\newcommand{\led@error@require@glossariesextra}{%\reledmac@error{When using both reledmac and glossaries, you must also use glossaries-extra}{\@ehc}%
II.8 Gobbling

Here, we define some commands which gobble their arguments.

\providecommand*{\@gobblethree}[3]{}
\providecommand*{\@gobblefour}[4]{}
\providecommand*{\@gobbleseven}[7]{}
II.9 Wrapping content

The \l@wrap@ifnotemptybox macro wraps its second argument in the command passed as the first argument, but only if the second argument does not produce an empty box. That is useful for example when we need to wrap something on a \textsuperscript.

Indeed a\textsuperscript{b} does not produce the same typographical result as ab\textsuperscript{2}. The l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox does the same, but take as argument a control sequence name, so without backslash.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox}{\%\setbox0=\hbox{#2}\%
    \ifdim\wd0=\z@\else\%
        \fi\%
\}\
\newcommand{\l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox}{\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\csname #1\endcsname}{#2}\%
\}
\%
\end{verbatim}

II.10 Miscellaneous commands

\showlemma \showlemma{(lemma)} typesets the lemma text in the body. It depends on the option.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifledfinal \global\notbool{parapparatus}\{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\showlemma}{[1]{#1}}\%
\else \global\notbool{parapparatus}\{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\showlemma}{[1]{\textbf{#1}}}\%
\fi \%
\%
\end{verbatim}

\linenumberlist The code for the \linenumberlist mechanism was given to Peter Wilson by Wayne Sullivan on 2004/02/11.

Initialize it as \empty.

\begin{verbatim}
\let\linenumberlist=\empty \%
\%
\end{verbatim}

\@l@dtempcnta \@l@dtempcntb In imitation of \LaTeX, we create a couple of scratch counters.

\LaTeX already defines \@tempcnta and \@tempcntb but Peter Wilson found in the past that it can be dangerous to use these (for example one of the AMS packages did something nasty to the \texttt{caption} package’s use of one of these).

\footnote{Compare the distance between letters in the first case (ab) and in the second one (ab).}
II.11 Prepare \reledpar

\newcount\@l@dtempcnta \newcount\@l@dtempcntb

II.11 Prepare \reledpar

In preparation for the \reledpar package, these are related to the “right” text of parallel texts (when \ifl@dpairing is TRUE). They are explained in the \reledpar manual.

\ifl@dpairing \ifl@dpaging
\ifl@dprintingpages \ifl@dprintingcolumns
\ifpst@rtedL \l@dnumpstartsL
\ifnumberingR \ifafterendnumberingR
\ifXnote@

\ifledRcol \ifledRcol@ \ifnumberingR \ifafterendnumberingR \ifXnote@

\ifledRcol is set to true in the Rightside environment. It must be not confused with \ifledRcol@ which is set to true when a right line is processed, in \Pages or \Columns.

\ifnumberingR The \ifnumberingR flag is set to true if we’re within a right text numbered section.

\ifafterendnumberingR The \ifafterendnumberingR boolean is set to TRUE at \endnumberingR and to FALSE at next \beginnumberingR or real \beginnumbering (not \resumenumbering). It is mainly used for the continuousnumberingwithcolumns, to avoid incrementing right column line counters after a \endnumberingR.

\ifXnote@ The \ifXnote@ macro is set to true when we are typesetting a critical footnote.

II.12 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case

\ifindtl@innote \ifindtl@notenumber\ifindtl@innote and \ifindtl@notenumber are required even if indextools is not used.
### III Sectioning commands

#### \section@num
You use \begin{numbering} and \end{numbering} to begin and end a line-numbered section of the text; the pair of commands may be used as many times as you like within one document to start and end multiple, separately line-numbered sections. \LaTeX{} will maintain and display a "section number" as a count named \section@num that counts how many \begin{numbering} and \resumenumbering commands have appeared; it need not be related to the logical divisions of your text.

#### \extensionchars
Each section will read and write an associated "line-list file", containing information used to do the numbering; the file will be called \jobname{}.nn, where nn is the section number. However, you may direct that an extra string be added before the nn in that filename, in order to distinguish these temporary files from others: that string is called \extensionchars. Initially it’s empty, since different operating systems have greatly varying ideas about what characters are permitted in file names. So \renewcommand{\extensionchars}{-} gives temporary files called \jobname{-1}, \jobname{-2}, etc.

#### \ifnumbering
The \ifnumbering flag is set to true if we are within a numbered section (that is, between \begin{numbering} and \end{numbering}). You can use \ifnumbering in your own code to check whether you are in a numbered section, but do not change the flag’s value.
The tools for section's title commands are called:

- Define an empty list of pstart number where sectioning commands are called.
- Input auxiliary file with the description of section titles.
• Open the same auxiliary file to write in.

```latex
\else
  \begingroup
  \global\@afterindenttrue%In order to retablish normal feature if the \begingroup was not here
  \initnumbering@quote
  \ifwidthliketwocolumns%
    \setwidethliketwocolumns%
    \csuse{setpositionliketwocolumns@columns@position}%
  \fi%
  \fi
  \gdef\eled@sections@@{}
  \if@noeled@sec\else%
    \makeatletter%
    \InputIfFileExists%
      {\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num}%
    \{%
      \ledd@warn@NoFile{\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num}%
    \makeatother%
    \immediate\openout\eled@sectioning@out=\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num\relax%
  \fi%
  \newcommand*{\initnumbering@reg}{%
    \global\pst@rtedfalse
    \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@%
    \global\absline@num \z@
    \gdef\normal@page@break{}%
    \gdef\l@prev@nopb{}
    \gdef\l@prev@pb{}
    \global\line@num \z@
    \global\subline@num \z@
    \global\@lock \z@
    \global\sub@lock \z@
    \global\sublines@false
    \global\let\next@page@num=\relax
    \global\let\this@section@next@page@num=\relax
    \global\let\sub@change=\relax
    \global\last@page@num=-10000%
    \ifdefined\line@numR%
      \line@numR=\z@%
    \fi%
    \resetprevline%
    \resetprevpage@num
    \global\stopmsdata@inserted@true%
    \global\let@msdata@list\relax%
    \global\csundef{@msdata@add@msd@c @data}%
  }
```

\endnumbering must follow the last text for a numbered section. It takes care of notifying you when changes have been noted in the input that require running the file through again to move everything to the right place. We define it using \def and not \newcommand because \TeX{} does not allow defining command whose name starts by “end” except if we are currently creating an environment, which is not the case here.

\def\endnumbering{%
  \ifnumbering
    \global\numberingfalse
    \normal@pars
    \ifnum\l@dnumpstartsL=0%
      \led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart%
    \fi%
    \fi%
%
For the continuousnumberingwithcolumn options, we need to store a global value for the next \endnumbering. We don’t modify this counter globally, because that creates problem for nested \edtext.

\global\page@num=\this@section@page@num%
\global\last@page@num=\this@section@last@page@num%
\global\let\next@page@num\this@section@next@page@num%
\ifl@dpairing
  \global\p@rteLfalse
\else
  \ifs\insertlines@list\empty\else
    \global\noteschanged@true
  \fi
  \ifs\line@list\empty\else
    \global\noteschanged@true
  \fi
  \fi
  \ifnoteschanged@
    \led@mess@NotesChanged
  \fi
\else
  \led@err@NumberingNotStarted
\fi
\autoparfalse
\if@noeled@sec\else%
  \immediate\closeout\eled@sectioning@out%
\fi%
The \pausenumbering macro is just the same as \endnumbering, but with the \ifnumbering flag set to true, to show that numbering continues across the gap. The \pausenumbering@page@num counter stores the \this@section@next@page@num when the \pause@numbering is called.

\newcount\pausenumbering@page@num
\newcommand{\pausenumbering}{%
  \ifx\this@section@next@page@num\relax%
    \global\pausenumbering@page@num=0%
  \else%
    \global\pausenumbering@page@num=\this@section@next@page@num%
  \fi%
  \ifautopar\global\autopar@pausetrue\fi%
  \endnumbering\global\numberingtrue}

The \resumenumbering macro is a bit more involved, but not much. It does most of the same things as \beginnumbering, but without resetting the various counters. Note that no check is made by \resumenumbering to ensure that \pausenumbering was actually invoked. The boolean \ifresumenumbering@start is set to true. That allows us to avoid resetting the line number at the first line of \resumenumbering if the lineation is by page. This boolean is set to false after the first action.

\newif\ifresumenumbering@start%
\newcommand*{\resumenumbering}{%
  \ifnumbering
    \ifautopar\pause\autopar\fi%
    \global\pst@rtedLtrue
    \global\advance\section@num \@ne
    \global\resumenumbering@starttrue%
    \led@mess@SectionContinued{\the\section@num}%
    \set@continuousnumberingforL%
    \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
    \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
      \unless\ifafterendnumberingR%
        \unless\ifl@dpairing%
          \ledRcoltrue%
          \global\advance\section@numR \@ne%
          \message{Section \the\section@num R (continuousnumbering)}%
          \line@list@stuffR{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num R}%
          \ledRcolfalse%
        \fi%
      \fi%
      \l@dend@stuff
    \fi%
  \fi%
  \l@dend@stuff
\ifl@dpairing\else%
  \begingroup
    \initnumbering@quote%
    \ifwidthliketwocolumns%

\footnote{Peter Wilson's thanks to Wayne Sullivan, who suggested the idea behind these macros.}
IV List macros

We will make heavy use of lists of information, which will be built up and taken apart by the following macros; they are adapted from *The TeXbook*, pp. 378–379, which discusses their use in more detail.

These macros consume a large amount of the run-time of this code. We intend to replace them in a future version, and in anticipation of doing so have defined their interface in such a way that it is not sensitive to details of the underlying code.

The historical list tools of ledmac are kept, because in many case there are more useful than etoolbox’s lists. They allows to get and delete the first element of a list in one operation. They also expands the items add to the list.

However, etoolbox’s lists are more useful to loop on them. Consequently, depending on what we need, we use one or other.

It could be nice to unify them to the \LaTeX3 list, however such migration would take quite time with some risk of error, for a gain which will be minor.

\list@create The \list@create macro creates a new list. This macro does not do anything beyond initializing an empty list macro.
The `\list@clear` macro just initializes a list to the empty list; it is no different from `\list@create` in its effect, but it is in its semantic.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\list@clear}{% \global\let#1=\empty% }
\end{verbatim}

`\xright@appenditem` expands an item and appends it to the right end of a list macro. We want the expansion because we will often be using this to store the current value of a counter. `\xright@appenditem` creates global control sequences, like `\xdef`, and uses two temporary token-list registers, `@toksa` and `@toksb`.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtoks@toksa \newtoks@toksb
\global@toksa={\}
\long\def\xright@appenditem#1\to#2{% \global@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%= \xdef#2{\the@toksb\the@toksa\expandafter{#1}}%= \global@toksb={}%
\end{verbatim}

`\xleft@appenditem` expands an item and appends it to the left end of a list macro; it is otherwise identical to `\xright@appenditem`.

\begin{verbatim}
\long\def\xleft@appenditem#1\to#2{% \global@toksa=\expandafter{#2}%= \xdef#2{\the@toksa\expandafter{#1}\the@toksb}%= \global@toksa={}%
\end{verbatim}

`\gl@p` macro removes the leftmost item from a list and places it in a control sequence. You type `\gl@p\l\to\z` (where `\l` is the list macro, and `\z` receives the left item). `\l` is assumed nonempty; use `\ifx\l\empty` to test for an empty `\l`. The control sequences created by `\gl@p` are all global.

\begin{verbatim}
\def\gl@p#1\to#2{\expandafter\gl@poff\gl@p#1\gl@poff#2}
\end{verbatim}

V Line counting

V.1 Choosing the system of lineation

Line number can be reset at each section (default); at each page; at each pstart. Here we define internal codes for these systems and the macros.
V.1 Choosing the system of lineation

The \ifbypage and \ifbypstart flag specify the current lineation system:

- line-of-page: \bypstart = \false and \bypage = \true.
- line-of-pstart: \bypstart = \true and \bypage = \false.

reledmac will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

\newif\ifbypage
\newif\ifbypstart

The \ifbypageR and \ifbypstartR flag specify the current lineation for right side in case of using reledpar. They are now defined because they are used in some specific code. reledpar will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

\lineation\lineation\{\langle word\rangle\}\{1\}\{\}

\newcommand*{\lineation}[1]{
\ifnumbering
\led@err@LineationInNumbered
\else
%

We can’t change the lineation system inside numbering section.

\ifnumbering
\led@err@LineationInNumbered
\else
%

If the argument is page.

\def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{page}\%
\ifx\@tempa\@tempb
 \global\bypage\true
 \global\bypstart\false
 \unless\ifnocritical\%
 \Xpstart{}[false]%
 \fi%
%

If the argument is pstart.

\else
 \def\@tempb{pstart}\%
 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
 \global\bypage\false
 \global\bypstart\true
 \unless\ifnocritical\%
 \Xpstart%
 \fi%
%
And finally, if the argument is `section` (default).

\begin{verbatim}
\def\@tempb{section}
\ifx\@tempa\@tempb
  \global\bypage=false
  \global\bypstart=false
  \unless\ifnocritical%
    \Xpstart{}[false]%
  \fi
  \fi
%
\else
  \def\@tempb{section}
  \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
    \global\bypage=false
    \global\bypstart=false
    \unless\ifnocritical%
      \Xpstart{}[false]%
    \fi
    \fi%
  \else
    \led@warn@BadLineation
    \fi
  \fi
\fi
\end{verbatim}

In other case, it is an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\else
  \led@warn@BadLineation
  \fi
  \fi
\fi}
\end{verbatim}

\section{Line number margin}

\verb|\linenummargin| \verb|\line@margin| \verb|\l@dgetline@margin| \verb|\linenummargin{|word\} specify which margin line numbers are in; it takes one argument, a string, which value can be left; right; inner or outer.

The selection is recorded in the count \verb|\line@margin|: 0 for left, 1 for right, 2 for outer, and 3 for inner.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcount\line@margin%
\newcount\line@margin@columns% Only for parallel typesetting
\line@margin@columns=\m@ne%
\newcommand*{\linenummargin}{1}{% \l@dgetline@margin{\#1}% \ifnum\@l@dtempcntb>\m@ne
  \ifledRcol
    \global\line@marginR=\@l@dtempcntb
  \else
    \global\line@marginI=\@l@dtempcntb
  \fi
  \fi
\newcommand*{\l@dgetline@margin}{1}{% \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}% \if\@tempa@\@tempb\left%
  \@l@dtempcntb \z@% \else
  \def\@tempb{right}%
  \fi\@tempb\tempb
\end{verbatim}
V.3 Line number initialization and increment

The following counters tell \reledmac which lines should be printed with line numbers. \c@firstlinenum is the number of the first line in each section that gets a number; \c@linenumincrement is the difference between successive numbered lines. The initial values of these counters produce labels on lines 5, 10, 15, etc. \c@linenumincrement must be at least 1.

\newcounter{firstlinenum}
\setcounter{firstlinenum}{5}
\newcounter{linenumincrement}
\setcounter{linenumincrement}{5}

The following parameters are just like \c@firstlinenum and \c@linenumincrement, but for sub-line numbers. \c@firstsublinenum must be at least 1.

\newcounter{firstsublinenum}
\setcounter{firstsublinenum}{5}
\newcounter{sublinenumincrement}
\setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{5}

These macros can be used to set the corresponding counters.

\newcommand*{\firstlinenum}{\ifledRcol\setcounter{firstlinenumR}{#1}\fi}
\newcommand*{\linenumincrement}{\ifledRcol\setcounter{firstlinenumR}{#1}\fi}
V.4 Line number locking

When line locking is being used, the \lockdisp{⟨word⟩} macro specifies whether a line number—if one is due to appear—should be printed on the first printed line or on the last, or by all of them. Its argument is a word, either first, last, or all. Initially, it is set to first.

\lockdisp encodes the selection: 0 for first, 1 for last, 2 for all.
The same questions about where to print the line number apply to sub-lines, and these are the analogous macros for dealing with the problem.

\newcount\sublock@disp
\newcommand{\sublockdisp}[1]{{% 
\l@dgetlock@disp{#1} \ifnum\@l@dtempcntb>\m@ne \global\sublock@disp=\@l@dtempcntb \else \led@warn@BadSublockdisp \fi}}
%
%
\V.5 Line number style

We provide a mechanism for using different representations of the line numbers, not just the normal arabic.

\newcommand*{\linenumberstyle}[1]{{% 
\def\linenumrep##1{\@nameuse{@#1}{##1}}} 
\newcommand*{\sublinenumberstyle}[1]{{% 
\def\sublinenumrep##1{\@nameuse{@#1}{##1}}} 

Initialise the number styles to arabic.
V.6 Line number printing

\leftlinenum \text{ and } \rightlinenum \text{ are the macros that are called to print marginal line numbers on a page, for left- and right-hand margins respectively. They are made easy to access and change, since you may want to change the styling in some way. These standard versions illustrate the general sort of thing that will be needed; they are based on the } \leftheadline \text{ macro in } \textit{The Te\TeXebook}, p. 416. 

Whatever these macros output gets printed in a box that will be put into the appropriate margin without any space between it and the line of text. You will generally want a kern between a line number and the text, and \linenumsep is provided as a standard way of storing its size. Line numbers are usually printed in a smaller font, and \numlabfont is provided as a standard name for that font. When called, these macros will be executed within a group, so font changes and the like will remain local.

\ledlinenum typesets the line (and subline) number. The original \numlabfont specification is equivalent to the \TeX \scriptsize for a 10pt document.

\newlength{\linenumsep}
\setlength{\linenumsep}{1pc}
\newcommand*{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
\newcommand*{\ledlinenum}{\bgroup\ifluatex\textdir TLT\fi\numlabfont\unless\iflinenumannotationotherside\ifdefstring{\Xlinenumannotationposition@side}{before}{\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\Xwraplinenumannotation@side}{\csuse{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}%}\%\%}\fi\linenumrep{\line@num}\fi\ifsublines@\ifnum\subline@num>0\relax\unskip\Xsublinesep@side\sublinenumrep{\subline@num}\fi\fi\f@endgroup}
The `\leftlinenumannotation` and `\rightlinenumannotation` prints the line number annotation; when user-defined it must be printed on the side opposite the main line number.

Footnote references using line numbers rather than symbols can’t be generated in one pass, because we do not know the line numbers till we ship out the pages. It would be possible if footnotes were never keyed to more than one line; but some footnotes gloss passages that may run for several lines, and they must be tied to the first line of the passage glossed. And even one-line passages require two passes if we want line-per-page numbering rather than line-per-section numbering.

So we run \TeX over the text several times, and each time save information about page and line numbers in a “line-list file” to be used during the next pass. At the start of
each section—whenever \beginnumbering is executed—the line-list file for that section is read, and the information from it is encoded into a few list macros.

We need first to define the different line numbers that are involved in these macros, and the associated counters.

\line@num The count \line@num stores the line number that is used in marginal line numbering and in notes: counting either by section, page or pstart, depending on your choice for this section. This may be qualified by \subline@num.

\newcount\line@num
\%

\subline@num The count \subline@num stores a sub-line number that qualifies \line@num. For example, line 10 might have sub-line numbers 1, 2 and 3, which might be printed as lines 10.1, 10.2, 10.3.

\newcount\subline@num
\%

\ifsoutines@ \ifsoutines@R \sublines@true \sublines@false
We maintain an associated flag, \ifsoutines@, to tell us whether we’re within a sub-line range or not (and the equivalent for right side: \ifsoutines@R)
You may wonder why we do not just use the value of \subline@num to determine this—treating anything greater than 0 as an indication that sub-lineation is on. We need a separate flag because sub-lineation can be used together with line-number locking in odd ways: several pieces of a logical line might be interrupted by pieces of sub-lineated text, and those sub-line numbers should not return to zero until the next change in the major line number. This is common in the typesetting of English Renaissance verse drama, in which stage directions are given sub-line numbers: a single line of verse may be interrupted by several stage directions.

\newif\ifsoutines@
\newif\ifsoutines@R
\%

\absline@num The count \absline@num stores the absolute number of lines since the start of the section: that is, the number we have actually printed, no matter what numbers we attached to them. This value is never printed on an output page, though \line@num will often be equal to it. It is used internally to keep track of where notes are to appear and where new pages start: using this value rather than \line@num is a lot simpler, because it does not depend on the lineation system in use.

\newcount\absline@num
\%

\ifsoutines@ \ifsoutines@R \sublines@true \sublines@false
We will call \absline@num numbers “absolute” numbers, and \line@num and \subline@num numbers “visible” numbers.
V.8 Line number locking counter

The counts \@lock and \sub@lock tell us the state of line-number and sub-line-number locking. 0 means we are not within a locked set of lines; 1 means we are at the first line in the set; 2, at some intermediate line; and 3, at the last line.

\newcount\@lock
\newcount\sub@lock

V.9 Line number associated to lemma

Now we can define the list of macros which will be created from the line-list file. We will maintain the following lists:

- \line@list: the page and line numbers for every lemma marked by \edtext. There are seven pieces of information, separated by vertical bars:
  1. the starting page,
  2. line, and
  3. sub-line numbers, followed by the
  4. ending page,
  5. line, and
  6. sub-line numbers, and then the
  7. font specifier for the lemma.

These line numbers are all visible numbers. The font specifier is a set of four codes for font encoding, family, series, and shape, separated by / characters. Thus a lemma that started on page 23, line 35 and went on until page 24, line 3 (with no sub-line numbering), and was typeset in a normal roman font would have a line list entry like this:

23|35|0|24|3|0|OT1/cmr/m/n.

There is one item in this list for every lemma marked by \edtext, even if there are several notes to that lemma, or no notes at all. \edtext reads the data in this list, making it available for use in the text of notes.

- \insertlines@list: the line numbers of lines that have footnotes or other insertions. These are the absolute numbers where the corresponding lemmas begin. This list contains one entry for every footnote in the section; one lemma may contribute no footnotes or many footnotes. This list is used by \add@inserts within \do@line, to tell it where to insert notes.

- \actionlines@list: a list of absolute line numbers at which we are to perform special actions; these actions are specified by the \actions@list list defined below.

- \actions@list: action codes corresponding to the line numbers in \actionlines@list. These codes tell reledmac what action it is supposed to take at each of these lines. One action, the page-start action, is generated behind the scenes by reledmac
itself; the others, for specifying sub-lineation, line-number locking, and line-
number alteration, are generated only by explicit commands in your input file.
The page-start and line-number-alteration actions require arguments, to specify
the new values for the page or line numbers; instead of storing those arguments in
another list, we have chosen the action-code values so that they can encode both
the action and the argument in these cases. Action codes greater than \(-1000\)
are page-start actions, and the code value is the page number; action codes less than
\(-5000\) specify line numbers, and the code value is a transformed version of the
line number; action codes between these two values specify other actions which
require no argument.

Here is the full list of action codes and their meanings:

Any number greater than \(-1000\) is a page-start action: the line number associated
with it is the first line on a page, and the action number is the page number. (The
cutoff of \(-1000\) is chosen because negative page-number values are used by some
macro packages; we assume that page-number values less than \(-1000\) are not
common.) Page-start action codes are added to the list by the \texttt{\page@action}
macro, which is (indirectly) triggered by the workings of the \texttt{\page@start}
macro; that macro should always be called in the output routine, just before the page
contents are assembled. \Eledmac calls it in \texttt{\pagecontents}.

The action code \(-1001\) specifies the start of sub-lineation: meaning that, starting
with the next line, we should be advancing \texttt{\subline@num} at each start-of-line
command, rather than \texttt{\line@num}.

The action code \(-1002\) specifies the end of sub-lineation. At the next start-of-
line, we should clear the sub-line counter and start advancing the line number.
The action codes for starting and ending sub-lineation are added to the list by
the \texttt{\sub@action} macro, as called to implement the \texttt{\startsub} and \texttt{\endsub}
macros.

The action code \(-1003\) specifies the start of line number locking. After the num-
ber for the current line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next
line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code \(-1004\) specifies the end of line number locking.

The action code \(-1005\) specifies the start of sub-line number locking. After the
number for the current sub-line is computed, it will remain at that value through
the next sub-line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code \(-1006\) specifies the end of sub-line number locking.

The four action codes for line and sub-line number locking are added to the
list by the \texttt{\do@lockon} and \texttt{\do@lockoff} macros, as called to implement the
\texttt{\startlock} and \texttt{\endlock} macros.

An action code of \(-5000\) or less sets the current visible line number (either the
line number or the sub-line number, whichever is currently being advanced) to
a specific positive value. The value of the code is \(-(5000 + n)\), where \(n\) is the
value (always \(\geq 0\)) assigned to the current line number. Action codes of this type
are added to the list by the \texttt{\set@line@action} macro, as called to implement
the \advanceline and \setline macros: this action only occurs when the user has specified some change to the line numbers using those macros. Normally \reledmac computes the visible line numbers from the absolute line numbers with reference to the other action codes and the settings they invoke; it does not require an entry in the action-code list for every line.

- \annot@list stores line number annotations for the start and the end lines of each \edtext, as \line@list does for line numbers. We don’t store that in the same list as line numbers as \Xprintlines already have height arguments, and a \TeX macro can take at most nine arguments.

Here are the commands to create these lists:

\list@create{\line@list}
\list@create{\insertlines@list}
\list@create{\actionlines@list}
\list@create{\actions@list}
\list@create{\annot@list}%

We will need some counts while we read the line-list, for the page number and the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers. Some of these will be used again later on, when we are acting on the data in our list macros.

\newcount\page@num
\newcount\endpage@num
\newcount\endline@num
\newcount\endsubline@num

The \this@section@page@num stores the page number on which a numbering section ends.

\newcount\this@section@page@num%

\ifnoteschanged@
\noteschanged@true
\noteschanged@false

If the number of the footnotes in a section is different from what it was during the last run, or if this is the very first time you’ve run \TeX, on this file, the information from the line-list used to place the notes will be wrong, and some notes will probably be misplaced. When this happens, we prefer to give a single error message for the whole section rather than messages at every point where we notice the problem, because we do not really know where in the section notes were added or removed, and the solution in any case is simply to run \TeX two more times; there is no fix needed to the document. The \ifnoteschanged@ flag is set if such a change in the number of notes is discovered at any point.

\newif\ifnoteschanged@

%
Inside the apparatus, at each note, the line number is stored in a macro called \resetprevlineX, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using \Xnumberonlyfirstinline. This macro must be reset at the same time as the line number. The \resetprevline@ does this resetting for every series.

\resetprevline@ \newcommand*{\resetprevline@}{%  
\def\do##1{%    \global\csundef{prevline##1}  
\dolistloop{@series}%  \}}%  
\%  

Inside the apparatus, at each note, the page number is stored in a macro called \resetprevpageX@num, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using \Xparafootsep or \parafootsepX. This macro must be reset at the beginning of each numbered section. The \resetprevpage@ command resets this macro for every series.

\resetprevpage@ \newcommand*{\resetprevpage@num}{%  \def\do##1{%    \ifcsdef{prevpage##1@num}{%      \global\csname prevpage##1@num\endcsname=z@%      \global\csname prevpage##1@numR\endcsname=z@%    }{%    \ifcsdef{##1prevpage@num}{%      \global\csname ##1prevpage@num\endcsname=z@%      \global\csname ##1prevpage@numR\endcsname=z@%    }{%    \dolistloop{@series}%  \}}%  \%  
\%  

V.10 Reading the line-list file

\read@linelist \read@linelist{⟨file⟩} is the control sequence that is called by \beginnumbering (via \line@list@stuff) to open and process a line-list file; its argument is the name of the file. First, it clears all previous line’s list.

\newread@inputcheck  
\newcommand*{\read@linelist}[1]{%  \ifledRcol%    \list@clearing@regR%  \else%    \list@clearing@reg%  \fi%  \%
When using \reledpar, make sure that the \maxlinesinpar@list is empty (otherwise things will be thrown out of kilter if there is any old stuff still hanging in there).

\list@clear\maxlinesinpar@list

Now get the file and interpret it. When the file is there we start a new group and make some special definitions we will need to process it. It is a sequence of \TeX commands, but they require a few special settings. We make [ and ] become grouping characters: they are used that way in the line-list file, because we need to write them out one at a time rather than in balanced pairs, and it is easier to just use something other than real braces. @ must become a letter, since this is run in the ordinary \TeX context. We ignore carriage returns, since if we are in horizontal mode they can get interpreted as spaces to be printed.

Our line, page, and line-locking counters were already zeroed by \line@list@stuff if this is being called from within \beginnumbering; sub-lineation will be turned off as well in that case. On the other hand, if this is being called from \resumenumbering, those things should still have the values they had when \pausenumbering was executed.

If the file is not there, we print an informative message.

Now, after these preliminaries, we start interpreting the file.

\get@linelistfile{#1}\
\@stopmsd % Security if last \endms{} is forgotten
\unless\ifledRcol % Get the last line of the last page
  \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\absline@num}\
  \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\line@num}\
  \csnumgdef{@lastsubline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\subline@num}\
\else\
  \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}{\the\absline@numR}\
  \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}{\the\line@numR}\
  \csnumgdef{@lastsubline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}{\the\subline@numR}\
\fi\
\endgroup

When the reading is done, we are all through with the line-list file. All the information we needed from it will now be encoded in our list macros.

Finally, we initialize the \next@actionline and \next@action macros, which specify where and what the next action to be taken is.
V Line counting

Clears the lists for \read@linelist

\list@clearing@reg

\get@linelistfile

reledmac can take advantage of the \TeX “safe file input” macros to get the line-list file.

This version of \read@linelist creates list macros containing data for the entire section, so they could get rather large. It would be no more difficult to read the line-list file incrementally rather than all at once: we could read, at the start of each paragraph, only the commands relating to that paragraph. But this would require that we have two line-lists open at once, one for reading, one for writing, and on systems without version numbers we would have to do some file renaming outside of \TeX for that to work. We have retained this slower approach to avoid that sort of hacking about, but have provided the \pausenumbering and \resumenumbering macros to help you if you run into macro memory limitations (see 5.2.7 p. [2] above).
V.11 Commands within the line-list file

This section defines the commands that can appear within a line-list file. They all have very short names because we are likely to be writing very large numbers of them out. One macro, \@nl, is especially short, since it will be written to the line-list file once for every line of text in a numbered section. (Another of these commands, \@lab, will be introduced in a later section, among the cross-referencing commands it is associated with.)

When these commands modify the various page and line counters, they deliberately do not use \global. This is because we want them to affect only the counter values within the current group when nested calls of \@ref occur. (The code assumes throughout that the value of \globaldefs is zero.)

The macros with action in their names contain all the code that modifies the action-code list: again, this is so that they can be turned off easily for nested calls of \@ref.

\line@list@version

The \line@list@version check if the line-list file does not refers to the older commands of reledmac. In this case, we stop reading the line-list file. Consequently, \line@list@version must be the first line of a line-number file.

\@nl

\@nl does everything related to the start of a new line of numbered text.

In order to get the \setlinenum to work Peter Wilson had to slip in some new code at the start of the macro, to get the timing of the actions correct. The problem was that his original naive implementation of \setlinenum had a unfortunate tendency to change the number of the last line of the preceding paragraph. The new code is sort of based on the page number handling and \setline. It seems that a lot of fiddling with the line number internals is required.

In November 2004 in order to accurately determine page numbers Peter Wilson added these to the macro. It is now:
\@nl{\{page counter number\}\{printed page number\}}

We do not (yet) use the printed number (i.e., the \thepage) but it may come in handy later. The macro \@page checks if a new page has started.

Exactly what \@nl does depends on whether right text is being processed. That's why many code is defined in \@nl@reg or \nl@regR.
First increment the absolute line-number, and perform deferred actions relating to
page starts and sub-lines.

```
\reset@current@annot
\advance\absline@num \@ne
\ifx\next@page@num\relax \else
  \page@action
  \let\next@page@num=\relax
\fi
\ifx\sub@change\relax \else
  \ifnum\sub@change>\z@\relax
    \sublines@true
  \else
    \sublines@false
  \fi
  \sub@action
  \let\sub@change=\relax
\fi
```

Fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0;
other values are unchanged.

```
\ifcase\@lock
  \or
  \@lock \tw@
  \or \or
  \@lock \z@
\fi
\ifcase\sub@lock
  \or
  \sub@lock \z@
\or
\```

\newcommand*{\@nl}{%
\@page{#1}%
\ifledRcol
\@nl@regR%
\else
\@nl@reg%
\fi%
}
\newcommand*{\@nl@reg}{%
\ifx\l@dchset@num\relax \else
  \advance\absline@num \@ne
  \csgdef{l@dchset@num@\the\absline@num}{%To remember this line have
been marked by a \setlinenum
  \set@line@action
  \let\l@dchset@num=\relax
  \advance\absline@num \m@ne
  \advance\line@num \m@ne
\fi
  \fi
}
```

```
\sub@lock \tw@
\or \or
\sub@lock \z@
\fi
\

Now advance the visible line number, unless it has been locked.

\ifsublines@
\ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
\advance\subline@num \@ne
\fi
\else
\ifnum\@lock<\tw@
\advance\line@num \@ne \subline@num \z@
\fi
\fi}
\
\last@page@num
\this@section@last@page@num
\@page
\

\page determines whether or not a new page has been started, based on the page values held by \@nl.

\newcount\last@page@num
\last@page@num=-10000
\newcount\this@section@last@page@num%
\this@section@last@page@num=-10000%
\newcommand*{\@page}[1]{{%
\ifledRcol
\ifnum #1=\last@page@numR\else
\csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpageR\@the\page@numR}{\the\absline@numR}\
\csnumgdef{@lastline@forpageR\@the\page@numR}{\the\line@numR}\
\csnumgdef{@lastsubline@forpageR\@the\page@numR}{\the\subline@numR}\
\ifbypage@R
\ifx\l@dchset@num\relax%Not resetting if preceded by a \setlinenum
\ifboolexpr{%
(bool{continuousnumberingwithcolumns} or bool{resumenumberingR@start})%
and test {\ifnumequal{\last@page@numR}{-10000}}%
}%
}%
\%\line@numR \z@%
\subline@numR \z@%
\global\csdef{reset@lineR\the\numexpr\absline@numR+1\relax \@the\section@numR}{}%
}\fi%
V Line counting

And we set a flag that tells \@nl that a new page number is to be set, because other associated actions shouldn’t occur until the next line-start occurs.

\@pend \@pendR \@lopL \@lopR These do not do anything at this point, but will have been added to the auxiliary file(s) if the reledpar package has been used. They are just here to stop reledmac from moaning if the reledpar is used for one run and then not for the following one.

\@sub@on \@sub@off The \@sub@on and \@sub@off macros turn sub-lineation on and off: but not directly, since
such changes do not really take effect until the next line of text. Instead they set a flag that notifies \@nl of the necessary action.

\newcommand*{\sub@on}{
    \ifboolexpr{
        bool{sublines@}
    or
    (bool{sublines@R} and bool{ledRcol})
    }{
        \let\sub@change=\relax
    }{
        \def\sub@change{1}
    }
}

\newcommand*{\sub@off}{
    \ifboolexpr{
        bool{sublines@}
    or
    (bool{sublines@R} and bool{ledRcol})
    }{
        \def\sub@change{-1}
    }{
        \let\sub@change=\relax
    }
}

\@adv
\newcommand*{\@adv}[1]{
    \ifsublines@\ifledRcol
        \advance\subline@numR by #1 \relax
        \ifnum\subline@numR<\z@
            \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
            \subline@numR \z@\fi
        \else
        \advance\line@numR by #1 \relax
        \ifnum\line@numR<\z@
            \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
            \line@numR \z@\fi
        \fi
    \else
        \advance\subline@num by #1 \relax
        \ifnum\subline@num<\z@
            \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
            \subline@num \z@\fi
        \fi
    \else
        \ifledRcol
            \advance\line@numR by #1 \relax
\end{verbatim}
V Line counting

\texttt{\@set{⟨num⟩}} macro sets the current visible line number to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement \texttt{\setline}.

\texttt{\l@d@set{⟨num⟩}} macro sets the line number for the next \texttt{\pstart} to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement \texttt{\setlinenum}.

\texttt{\l@dchset@num} is a flag to the \texttt{\@nl?} macro. If it is not \texttt{\relax} then a linenumber change is to be done.
\texttt{\textbackslash page@action} \texttt{\textbackslash page@action} adds an entry to the action-code list to change the page number.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\page@action}{\%
  \ifledRcol
    \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
    \xright@appenditem{\next@page@numR}\to\actions@listR
  \else
    \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines\list
    \xright@appenditem{\next@page@num}\to\actions@list
  \fi}
\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash set@line@action} \texttt{\textbackslash set@line@action} adds an entry to the action-code list to change the visible line number.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\set@line@action}{\%
  \ifledRcol
    \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
    \ifsuffixes\%#1
      \@oldtempcnta=-\subline@numR
    \else
      \@oldtempcnta=-\line@numR
    \fi
    \advance\@oldtempcnta by -5000\relax
    \xright@appenditem{\the\@oldtempcnta}\to\actions@listR
  \else
    \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
    \ifsuffixes\%#1
      \@oldtempcnta=-\subline@num
    \else
      \@oldtempcnta=-\line@num
    \fi
    \advance\@oldtempcnta by -5000\relax
    \xright@appenditem{\the\@oldtempcnta}\to\actions@list
  \fi}
\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash sub@action} \texttt{\textbackslash sub@action} adds an entry to the action-code list to turn sub-lineation on or off, according to the current value of the \texttt{\ifsuffixes\%#1} flag.
\lock@on \do@lockon \do@lockonL
\lock@on adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking on. The current setting of the sub-lineation flag tells us whether this applies to line numbers or sub-line numbers.

Adding commands to the action list is slow, and it is very often the case that a lock-on command is immediately followed by a lock-off command in the line-list file, and therefore really does nothing. We use a look-ahead scheme here to detect such pairs, and add nothing to the line-list in those cases.

\lock@on \do@lockon \do@lockonL
\lock@on \do@lockon \do@lockonL
\lock@on \do@lockon \do@lockonL
\lock@on \do@lockon \do@lockonL
\sub@lock \@ne
\fi
\fi
\else
\xright@appenditem{-1003}\to\actions@list
\ifnum\@lock=\z@
\@lock \@ne
\else
\ifnum\@lock=\thr@@
\@lock \@ne
\fi
\fi
\fi}
\newcommand*{\do@lockoff}{%\reset@current@annot%
\ifledRcol
\do@lockoffR
\else
\do@lockoffL
\fi}
\newcommand*{\skip@lockoff}{\global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff}

\n@num These macros implement the \skipnumbering command. They use action code 1007.
V Line counting

\newcommand*{\n@num}{\%}
\ifdefRcol
\xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
\xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@listR
\else\%
\xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list\%
\xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@list\%
\fi\%
\}%
\%
\ref \@ref marks the start of a passage, for creation of a footnote reference. It takes two arguments:

- \#1, the number of entries to add to \insertlines@list for this reference. This value, here and within \edtext, which computes it and writes it to the line-list file, will be stored in the count \insert@count.
• #2, a sequence of other line-list-file commands, executed to determine the ending line-number. (This may also include other \@ref commands, corresponding to uses of \edtext within the first argument of another instance of \edtext.)

\dummy@ref  When nesting of \@ref commands does occur, it is necessary to temporarily redefine \@ref within \@ref, so that we are only doing one of these at a time.

\@ref@reg  The first thing \@ref (i.e. \@ref@reg) itself does is to add the specified number of items to the \insertlines@list list.

Next, process the second argument to determine the page and line numbers for the end of this lemma. We temporarily equate \@ref to a different macro that just executes its argument, so that nested \@ref commands are just skipped this time. Some other macros need to be temporarily redefined to suppress their action.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\@ref}[2]{% #2
\ifledRcol% \@ref@regR{#1}{#2}%
\else% \@ref@reg{#1}{#2}%
\fi%
}
\newcommand*{\@ref@reg}[2]{% 
\global\insert@count=#1\relax
\global\advance\@edtext@level by 1%
\loop\ifnum\insert@count>\z@
\xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\insertlines@list
\global\advance\insert@count \m@ne
\repeat%
\newcommand*{\@ref}[2]{% #2
\global\endpage@num=\page@num
\global\endline@num=\line@num
\endgroup
\let\@ref=\dummy@ref
\let\@lopL\gobble
\let\page@action=\relax
\let\sub@action=\relax
\let\set@line@action=\relax
\let\@lab=\relax
\let\@lemma=\relax%
\let\@sw\@gobblethree%
\let\store@annot@to@absline\@gobble%
}\end{verbatim}
Now store all the information about the location of the lemma’s start and end in \line@list.

\xright@appenditem%
{\the\page@num|\the\line@num|%
  \ifselines\ \the\subline@num \else 0\fi|%
  \the\endpage@num|\the\endline@num|%
  \ifselines\ \the\endsubline@num \else 0\fi}{\line@list}
\xright@appenditem%
{\current@annot|\endcurrent@annot}{\annot@list}%

And now, call \@ref@reg@parsearg, which can be also called by \@ref@later
\@ref@reg@parse{#2}%

Decrease edtext level counter.
\global\advance\@edtext@level by -1%
}%

The \@ref@reg@parsearg command parses the second argument of a \@ref or the unique argument of \@ref@later written in the auxiliary fill.

First, create a list which stores every second argument of each \@sw in this lemma, at this level. Also set the boolean about the use of lemma in this edtext level to false.

\newcommand{\@ref@reg@parse}{[1]}%\expandafter\list@create\expandafter{\csname sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@edtext@level\endcsname}%\providebool{lemmacommand@\the\@edtext@level}\boolfalse{lemmacommand@\the\@edtext@level}%

Execute the second argument of \@ref again, to perform for real all the commands within it.
#1%
%
Now, we store the list of \@sw of this current \edtext as an element of the global list of list of \@sw for a \edtext depth.
%
V.12 Writing to the line-list file

We have now defined all the counters, lists, and commands involved in reading the line-list file at the start of a section. Now we will cover the commands that \reledmac uses within the text of a section to write commands out to the line-list.

\linenum@out The file will be opened on output stream \linenum@out.

\iffirst@linenum@out\first@linenum@out\true\fi
\first@linenum@out\false

Once any file is opened on this stream, we keep it open forever, or else switch to another file that we keep open. The reason is that we want the output routine to write the page number for every page to this file; otherwise we would have to write it at the start of every line. But it is not very easy for the output routine to tell whether an output stream is open or not. There is no way to test the status of a particular output stream directly, and the asynchronous nature of output routines makes the status hard to determine by other means.

We can manage pretty well by means of the \iffirst@linenum@out\flag; its inelegant name suggests the nature of the problem that made its creation necessary. It is set to be \true before any \linenum@out file is opened. When such a file is opened for the first time, it is done using \immediate, so that it will at once be safe for the output routine to write to it; we then set this flag to false.
V.12 Writing to the line-list file

The commands allowed in the line-list file and their arguments can change between two version of reledmac. The \this@line@list@version command is upgraded when it happens. It is written in the file list. If we process a line-list file which used a older version, that means the commands used inside are deprecated, and we can’t use them.

\newcommand{\this@line@list@version}{8}\%

The \line@list@stuff{⟨file⟩} macro, which is called by \beginnumbering, performs all the line-list operations needed at the start of a section. Its argument is the name of the line-list file.

\let\next@line@list@stuff\relax\%
\newcommand*{\line@list@stuff}[1]{%  
  First, define a toggle set to true when we are not in the first run.
  \global\newtoggle{notfirstrun@#1}\%
  \iffFileExists{\l@auxdir#1}\%
    {\global\toggletrue{notfirstrun@#1}}\%
    {\global\togglefalse{notfirstrun@#1}}\%
  \%
  A internal hook (not used yet).
  \next@line@list@stuff\%
  \global\let\next@line@list@stuff\relax\%
  \%

Use the commands of the previous section to interpret the line-list file from the last run.

\read@linelist{#1}\%

Now close the current output line-list file, if any, and open a new one. The first time we open a line-list file for output, we do it using \immediate, and clear the \iffirst@linenum@out@ flag. \reledmac and \reledpar can fill the \next@line@list@stuff hook between a \endnumbering (associated with numbered file n) and a \beginnumbering (associated with numbered file n + 1). It allows adding content to the numbered file n + 1 and not n.

\iffirst@linenum@out@\%
  \global\first@linenum@out@false\%
  \immediate\openout\linenum@out=\l@auxdir#1\relax\%
  \immediate\write\linenum@out{\string\line@list@version{\this@line@list@version}{\%}  
    \ifl@dpaging}
The \newline macro sends the \@nl command to the line-list file, to mark the start of a new text line, and its page number. It writes the two forms of the page number:

- Raw form (\the\c@page, which can be used for numeric tests.
- Formatted form (for example, in Roman).

Actually, only the first form is used by \@nl. If we use the \texttt{sameparallelpagenumber} option of reledpar, we must write not the real page number (i.e. page counter, defined in standard \LaTeX) but the printed page number (i.e par@page counter, defined only on reledmac).

- For the raw form, we use \texttt{\the\c@page@page} macro, because the \texttt{par@page} counter is increased for each page.
- For the formatted version, \texttt{\thepage} is patched through \texttt{par@patch@thepage}. So we have nothing to change.
We enclose a lemma marked by \text {edtext} in \flagstart and \flagend; these send the \@ref command to the line-list file. \text {edtext} is responsible for setting the value of \insertcount appropriately; it actually gets done by the various footnote macros.
With \TeX, there is a problem when using RTL: the writing of a command in the numbered auxiliary files (.1, .2 etc) is reversed when the first argument of \texttt{\edtext} is typeset in one line, but it is \textbf{not} reversed when this first argument is typeset in two lines or more.\footnote{This problem is caused by the way \TeX\ manages right-to-left typesetting. David Carlisle explains it on \url{http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/333373/7712} and provides a potential solution, using \texttt{\vadjust}. However in some cases this adds spurious vertical spaces in reledmac. That is why we are using the solution explained below.}

To solve this problem, we use a crossref mechanism. At the first run, we put a label, but we do not write any \texttt{\@ref} command. When the value of the label can be tested, that is after three runs, we’re doing:

- If the first argument of \texttt{\edtext} is typeset on only one line, we first call \texttt{\flag@end}, at the point we normally call \texttt{\flag@start}, at the beginning of the content of the first argument, and we call \texttt{\flag@end} at the point we normally call \texttt{\flag@start}, at the end of the content of the first argument.
- If the first argument of \texttt{\edtext} is typeset on only two lines, we use the normal order.

This system is a workaround for the problem of order when writing in auxiliary files. The \texttt{\flag@start\rtl} and \texttt{\flag@end\rtl} macro put the label, do the test and call the right commands.
V.12 Writing to the line-list file

\newcommand{\flag@end@RTL}{\edlabel{edtext:end:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
\ifStrEq{\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}{000}{}{%
  \ifnumequal{\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}{\xabslineref{edtext:end:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}{\flag@start}{\flag@end}\}
}\flag@start@later\flag@end@later: these send the \@ref@later to the line-list file command to the line-list file

\newcommand*{\flag@start@later}{\ifledRcol\write\linenum@outR{\string\@ref@later[}\else\write\linenum@out{\string\@ref@later[}\fi}%
\newcommand{\flag@end@later}{\ifledRcol\write\linenum@outR{]}\else\write\linenum@out{]}\fi}%
\startsub\endsub: these turn sub-lineation on and off, by writing appropriate instructions to the line-list file. When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it does not take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if that changes in the middle.

We tinker with \lastskip because a command of either sort really needs to be attached to the last word preceding the change, not the first word that follows the change. This is because sub-lineation will often turn on and off in mid-line—stage directions, for
example, often are mixed with dialogue in that way—and when a line is mixed we want to label it using the system that was in effect at its start. But when sub-lineation begins at the very start of a line we have a problem, if we don’t put in this code.

\newcommand*{\startsub}{%
  \dimen0\lastskip%
  \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
    \unskip%
  \fi%
  \ifledRcol%
    \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@on}%
  \else%
    \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@on}%
  \fi%
}
\def\endsub{%
  \dimen0\lastskip%
  \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
    \unskip%
  \fi%
  \ifledRcol%
    \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@off}%
  \else%
    \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@off}%
  \fi%
  \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
    \hskip\dimen0%
  \fi%}
%
\def\endsub{%
  \dimen0\lastskip%
  \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
    \unskip%
  \fi%
  \ifledRcol%
    \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@off}%
  \else%
    \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@off}%
  \fi%
  \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
    \hskip\dimen0%
  \fi%}
%
\newcommand*{\advanceline}{1}{\leavevmode
  \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\@adv[#1]}%
  \else \write\linenum@out{\string\@adv[#1]}%
  \fi%}
%
\setline You can use \setline{⟨num⟩} in running text (i.e., within \pstart...\pend) to set the current visible line-number to a specified positive value.

\advanceline You can use \advanceline{⟨num⟩} in running text to advance the current visible line-number by a specified value, positive or negative.
1678 \newcommand*{\setline}[1]{% 1679 \leavevmode% 1680 \ifnum#1<\z@% 1681 \led@warn@BadSetline% 1682 \else% 1683 \ifledRcol% 1684 \write\linenum@outR{\string\@set[#1]}% 1685 \else% 1686 \write\linenum@out{\string\@set[#1]}% 1687 \fi% 1688 \fi% 1689 }% 1690 % 1691 \setlinenum

You can use \setlinenum{(num)} before a \pstart to set the visible line-number to a specified positive value. It writes a \l@d@set command to the line-list file.

1695 \newcommand*{\setlinenum}[1]{% 1696 \ifnum#1<\z@% 1697 \led@warn@BadSetlinenum% 1698 \else% 1699 \ifledRcol% 1700 \write\linenum@outR{\string\l@d@set[#1]}% 1701 \else% 1702 \write\linenum@out{\string\l@d@set[#1]}% 1703 \fi% 1704 \fi% 1705 }% 1706 %

\startlock \endlock

You can use \startlock or \endlock in running text to start or end line number locking at the current line. They decide whether line numbers or sub-line numbers are affected, depending on the current state of the sub-lineation flags.

1767 \newcommand*{\startlock}{% 1768 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@on}% 1769 \else \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@on}% 1770 \fi}% 1771 \def\endlock{% 1772 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@off}% 1773 \else \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@off}% 1774 \fi}% 1775 %
VI Marking text for notes

The \edtext macro is used to create all footnotes and endnotes, as well as to print the portion of the main text to which a given note or notes is keyed. The idea is to have that lemma appear only once in the .tex file: all instances of it in the main text and in the notes are copied from that one appearance.

The \edtext macro takes two arguments.

\edtext{#1}{#2}

- #1 is the piece of the main text being glossed; it gets added to the main text, and is also used as a lemma for notes to it.
- #2 is a series of subsidiary macros that generate various kinds of notes.

The \edtext macro may be used (somewhat) recursively; that is, \edtext may be used within its own first argument. The code would be much simpler without this feature, but nested notes will commonly be necessary: it is quite likely that we will have an explanatory note for a long passage and notes on variants for individual words within that passage. The situation we can’t handle is overlapping notes that are not nested: for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18. You can handle such cases by using the \lemma and \linenum macros within #2: they alter the copy...
of the lemma and the line numbers that are passed to the notes, and hence allow you to overcome any limitations of this system, albeit with extra effort.

The recursive operation of \texttt{\textbackslash edtext} will fail if you try to use a copy that is called something other than \texttt{\textbackslash edtext}. In order to handle recursion, \texttt{\edtext} needs to redefine its own definition temporarily at one point, and that does not work if the macro you are calling is not actually named \texttt{\edtext}. There is no problem as long as \texttt{\edtext} is not invoked in the first argument. If you want to call \texttt{\edtext} something else, it is best to create instead a macro that expands to an invocation of \texttt{\edtext}, rather than copying \texttt{\edtext} and giving it a new name; otherwise you will need to add an appropriate definition for your new macro to \texttt{\morenoexpands}.

Side-effects of our line-numbering code make it impossible to use the usual footnote macros directly within a paragraph whose lines are numbered (see comments to \texttt{\do@line}, VII.2.1 p. 166). Instead, the appropriate note-generating command is appended to the list macro \texttt{\inserts@list}, and when \texttt{\pend} completes the paragraph it inserts all the notes at the proper places.

Note that we do not provide previous-note information, although it is often wanted; your own macros must handle that. We can not do it correctly without keeping track of what kind of notes have gone past: it is not just a matter of remembering the line numbers associated with the previous invocation of \texttt{\edtext}, because that might have been for a different kind of note. It is preferable for your footnote macros to store and recall this kind of information if they need it.

\section{VI.1 \texttt{\edtext} itself}

The various note-generating macros might want to request that commands be executed not at once, but in close connection with the start or end of the lemma. For example, footnote numbers in the text should be connected to the end of the lemma; or, instead of a single macro to create a note listing variants, you might want to use several macros in series to create individual variants, which would each add information to a private macro or token register, which in turn would be formatted and output when all of \#2 for the lemma has been read.

To accommodate this, we provide a list macro to which macros may add commands that should subsequently be executed at the end of the lemma when that lemma is added to the text of the paragraph. A macro should add its contribution to \texttt{\end@lemmas} by using \texttt{\xleft@appenditem}. (Anything that needs to be done at the \texttt{\start} of the lemma may be handled using \texttt{\aftergroup}, since the commands specified within \texttt{\edtext}'s second argument are executed within a group that ends just before the lemma is added to the main text.)

\texttt{\end@lemmas} is intended for the few things that need to be associated with the end of the lemma, like footnote numbers. Such numbers are not implemented in the current version, and indeed no use is currently made of \texttt{\end@lemmas} or of the \texttt{\aftergroup} trick. The general approach would be to define a macro to be used within the second argument of \texttt{\edtext} that would add the appropriate command to \texttt{\end@lemmas}.

Commands that are added to this list should always take care not to do anything that adds possible line-breaks to the output; otherwise line numbering could be thrown off.
We now need to define a number of macros that allow us to weed out nested instances of \texttt{edtext}, and other problematic macros, from our lemma. This is similar to what we did in reading the line-list file using \texttt{dummy@ref} and various redefinitions—and that is because nested \texttt{edtext}s macros create nested \texttt{@ref} entries in the line-list file.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\dummy@edtext}[2]{#1}
\end{verbatim}

Some time, we want to obtain only the first argument of \texttt{edtext}, while also wrapping it in \texttt{showlemma}. For example, when printing a \texttt{eledsection}.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\dummy@edtext@showlemma}[2]{\showlemma{#1}}
\end{verbatim}

We are going to need another macro that takes one argument and ignores it entirely. This is supplied by the \texttt{L\ A\ T\ E\ X@gobble\{⟨arg⟩\}.}

We need to turn off macro expansion for certain sorts of macros we are likely to see within the lemma and within the notes.

The first class is font-changing macros. We suppress expansion for them by letting them become equal to zero\[31\] This is done because we want to pass into our notes the generic commands to change to roman or whatever, and not their expansions that will ask for a particular style at a specified size. The notes may well be in a smaller font, so the command should be expanded later, when the note's environment is in effect.

A second sort to turn off includes a few of the accent macros. Most are not a problem: an accent that is expanded to an \texttt{accent} command may be harder to read but it works just the same. The ones that cause problems are: those that use alignments—\TeX{} seems to get confused about the difference between alignment parameters and macro parameters; those that use temporary control sequences; and those that look carefully at what the current font is.

(The \texttt{\copyright} macro defined in Plain \TeX{} has this sort of problem as well, but is not used enough to bother with. That macro, and any other that causes trouble, will get by all right if you put a \texttt{protect} in front of it in your file.)

We also need to eliminate all \texttt{reledmac} macros like \texttt{edlabel} and \texttt{setline} that write things to auxiliary files: that writing should be done only once. And we make \texttt{edtext} itself, if it appears within its own argument, do nothing but copy its first argument.

Finally, we execute \texttt{morenoexpands}. The version of \texttt{morenoexpands} defined here does nothing; but you may define a version of your own when you need to add more expansion suppressions as needed with your macros. That makes it possible to make such additions without needing to copy or modify the standard \texttt{reledmac} code. If you define your own \texttt{morenoexpands}, you must be very careful about spaces: if the

\[31\]Since “control sequences equivalent to characters are not expandable”—\textit{The \TeX{}book}, answer to Exercise 20.14.
macro adds any spaces to the text when it runs, extra space will appear in the main text when \textit{edtext} is used.

The \texttt{new@series} command also adds \texttt{\textbackslash let\textbackslash footnote(X)\textbackslash gobble} to the end of the \texttt{\no@expands} macro for the series \langle X \rangle.

(A related problem, not addressed by these two macros, is that of characters whose category code are changed by any of the macros used in the arguments to \textit{edtext}. Since the category codes are set when the arguments are scanned, macros that depend on changing them will not work. We have most often encountered this with characters that are made "active" within text in some, but not all, of the languages used within the document. One way around the problem, if it takes this form, is to ensure that those characters are always active. Within languages that make no special use of them, their associated control sequences should simply return the proper character. A simpler solution is to avoid active characters, using \texttt{Lua\TeX} or \texttt{X\TeX}.)

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\no@expands}{% \\
  \let\select@@lemmafont=0% \\
  \let\startsub=\relax \let\endsub=\relax \\
  \let\startlock=\relax \let\endlock=\relax \\
  \let\edlabel=\@gobble \\
  \let\setline=\@gobble \let\advanceline=\@gobble \\
  \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext \\
  \let\edindex=\dummy@edindex \\
  \l@dtabnoexpands \\
  \l@noexpands@edgl \\
  \let\linenumannotation=\@gobble \\
  \morenoexpands} \\
\let\morenoexpands=\relax \\
\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\@tag} Now, we define an empty \texttt{\@tag} command. It will be redefine by \textit{edtext}; its value is the first argument. It will be used by the \texttt{\Xfootnote} commands.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\@tag}{}
\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\@edtext@level} This counter is increased by 1 at each level of \textit{edtext}.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcount{\@edtext@level} \\
\@edtext@level=0% \\
\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{if@edtext@secondarg} This boolean is set to TRUE before reading the second argument of a \textit{edtext}. It is tested on some macro which must be executed only inside a second argument.

\begin{verbatim}
\newif{if@edtext@secondarg} \\
\%
\end{verbatim}
The \texttt{edtext} counter is increased at each \texttt{edtext} command. It is used to add to insert hyperlinks between a notes and the lemma.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcounter{edtext}
\renewcommand{\theedtext}{edtxt@\the\c@edtext}\
\edtext@notes
\edtext@notes@start
The \texttt{edtext@notes} is increased each time we have a footnote required in the second argument of \texttt{edtext}, that is a \texttt{Xfootnote} or a \texttt{Xendfootnote}.
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{edtext@notes@start} is let to \texttt{edtext@notes} at the beginning of a \texttt{edtext}

\begin{verbatim}
\newcount\edtext@notes
\newcount\edtext@notes@start
\if@noneed@notes
The \texttt{if@noneed@notes} macro is (locally) set to true when we read a critical note for a series with \texttt{set} to true.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newif\if@noneed@notes
\edtext
When executed, \texttt{edtext} first ensures that we are in horizontal mode.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\edtext}[2]{\leavevmode\
\ifnumberedpar\%
\else\%
\check@edtext@args{#1}{#2}\
\global\advance\@edtext@level by 1\
\global\edtext@notes@start=\edtext@notes\%
\fi
\fi
\end{verbatim}

We increment the \texttt{@edtext@level} \LaTeX{} counter to know in which level of \texttt{edtext} we are.

\begin{verbatim}
\global\advance\@edtext@level by 1\%
\global\edtext@notes@start=\edtext@notes\%
\end{verbatim}

We let \texttt{edtext@notes@start} equal to \texttt{edtext@notes} to check later the number of notes associated to the edtext.

We also increase the \texttt{edtext} \LaTeX{} counter to insert a hypertarget if the hyperref package is loaded, and also works with \texttt{edtext} on right-to-left typesetting with Xe\LaTeX{}.

We store the value for the current level in a global macro. So we have one macro by level of \texttt{edtext}. That is required, because \texttt{edtext} can contain \texttt{edtext}. 

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
By default, we do not use \lemma
\global\@lemmacommand\false
\begingroup

We get the next series of samewords data in the list of samewords data for the current edtext level. We push them inside \sw@inthisedtext.

\ifledRcol
  \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtextR\the\@edtext@level}{\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}{\expandafter\gl@p\csname sw@list@edtextR\the\@edtext@level\endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}
\else
  \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtext\the\@edtext@level}{\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}{\expandafter\gl@p\csname sw@list@edtext\the\@edtext@level\endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}
\fi
\@tag Our normal lemma is just argument #1; but that argument could have further invocations of \edtext within it. We get a copy of the lemma without any \edtext macros within it by temporarily redefining \edtext to just copy its first argument and ignore the other, and then expand #1 into \@tag, our lemma.

This is done within a group that starts here, in order to get the original \edtext restored; within this group we have also turned off the expansion of those control sequences commonly found within text that can cause trouble for us.

\global\renewcommand{\@tag}{% 
  \no@expands #1% }
\l@d@nums Prepare more data for the benefit of note-generating macros: the line references and font specifier for this lemma go to \l@d@nums.

\set@line \insert@count will be altered by the note-generating macros: it counts the number of deferred footnotes or other insertions generated by this instance of \edtext. If we are in a right column (reledpar), we use \insert@countR instead of \insert@count.
Now process the note-generating macros in argument \texttt{#2} (i.e., \texttt{\footnote}, \texttt{\lemma}, etc.). \texttt{\ignorespaces} is here to skip over any spaces that might appear at the start of \texttt{#2}; otherwise they wind up in the main text. Footnote and other macros that are used within \texttt{#2} should all end with \texttt{\ignorespaces} as well, to skip any spaces between macros when several are used in series.

Check if we indeed insert footnotes or critical notes.

With \LaTeX, you must track whether the language reads left to right (English) or right to left (Arabic). \texttt{reledmac} defines an \texttt{\if@RTL} boolean test is not already defined.
We write in the numbered file whether the current \textit{edtext} has a \textit{lemma} in the the second argument. Finally, we are ready to admit the first argument into the current paragraph.

It is important that we generate and output all the notes for this chunk of text \textit{before} putting the text into the paragraph: notes that are referenced by line number should generally be tied to the start of the passage they gloss, not the end. That should all be done within the expansion of \texttt{#2} above, or in \texttt{aftergroup} commands within that expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
\endgroup
\ifdef{\hypertarget}
  {%
    \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}:start}{}}%
    \showlemma{#1}
    \Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}:end}{}}%
  }{%
    \showlemma{#1}
  }%

If using \texttt{hyperref} package, we put the final hypertarget for \texttt{applabel}.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifdef{\hypertarget}
  {%
    \def{\do##1{\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{##1:end}{}}}{}
    \ifcsdef{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}{% 
      \dolistcsloop{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}%
        \global\cslet{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}\empty
      }{}%
  }%}

Finally, we add any insertions that are associated with the \textit{end} of the lemma. Footnotes that are identified by symbols rather than by where the lemma begins in the main text need to be done here, and not above.

\ifdef{\end@lemmas}{empty \else% 
  \gl@p\end@lemmas\to\x@lemma%
\end{verbatim}
We switch some flags to false.

- The one that checks having footnotes inside a \edtext.
- The one that says we are inside a \edtext. In fact, it is not a flag, but a counter which is increased to 1 in each level of \edtext.
- The one that says we are inside a \@lemma.

\global\advance\@edtext@level by -1
\global\@lemmacommand@false

We also reset \@beforeinsertofthisedtext

\global\let\@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax

If we are outside of a numbered paragraph, we send an error message and print the first argument.

\else
\showlemma{#1} (\textbf{\textsc{Edtext outside numbered paragraph}})\led@err@PstartInEdtext\nedat\err@PendInEdtext\nedat\err@PstartInEdtext
\fi
\)

\endgroup

A macro which just checks the arguments of the \edtext and let know if there is some problem, like, for example, \pstart inside.
\beforeinsertofthisedtext

\beforeinsertofthisedtext is an internal macro. \reledmac or \reledpar can add in this macro any content required to be executed before doing any \insert related to a \edtext. Its content is \let equal to \relax at the end of every \edtext.

\let@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax

\ifnumberline

\ifnumberline option can be set to FALSE to disable line numbering.

\newif\ifnumberline
\numberlinetrue

\set@line

The \set@line macro is called by \edtext to put the line-reference field and font specifier for the current block of text into \l@d@nums.

One instance of \edtext may generate several notes, or it may generate none — it is legitimate for argument \#2 to \edtext to be empty. But \flag@start and \flag@end induce the generation of a single entry in \line@list during the next run, and it is vital to also remove one and only one \line@list entry here.

If no more lines are listed in \line@list, something is wrong — probably just some change in the input. We set all the numbers to zeros, following an old publishing convention for numerical references that have not yet been resolved.

\newcommand*{\set@line}{%
\ifledRcol
  \ifx\line@listR\empty
    \global\noteschanged@true
    \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
  \else
    \gl@p\line@listR\to\@tempb
    \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
    \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
  \fi
  \ifx\annot@listR\empty%
    \xdef\l@current@annotR{|}%
  \else%
    \gl@p\annot@listR\to\@tempb%
    \xdef\l@current@annotR{\@tempb}%
    \global\let\@tempb=\undefined%
  \fi%
\else
  \ifx\line@list\empty
    \global\noteschanged@true
    \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
  \else
    \gl@p\line@list\to\@tempb
    \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
    \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
  \fi
\fi%
VI Marking text for notes

\edfont@info The macro \edfont@info returns coded information about the current font.

\newcommand*{\edfont@info}{\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\f@shape}

VI.2 Substitute lemma

\lemma The \lemma{⟨text⟩} macro allows you to change the lemma that is passed on to the notes. Read about \@tag in normal \edtext macro for more details about \sw@list@inedtext and \no@expands (VI.1 p. 145).

\newcommand*{\lemma}[1]{\global\@lemmacommand@true\global\renewcommand{\@tag}{\no@expands #1}\ignorespaces}

\@lemma The \@lemma is written in the numbered file to set which \edtext has an \lemma as second argument.

\newcommand{\@lemma}{\booltrue{lemmacommand0\the\@edtext@level}}

\newcommand{\@write@lemma}{\if@lemmacommand0\ifledRcol\write\linenum@outR{\string\@lemma}\else\write\linenum@out{\string\@lemma}\fi\fi\ignorespaces}
This boolean is set to TRUE inside a \edtext (or \critext) when a \lemma command is called. That is useful for some commands which can have a different behavior if the lemma in the note is different from the lemma in the main text.

VI.3 Substitute line numbers

The \linenum macro can change any or all of the page and line numbers that are passed on to the notes.

As argument \linenum takes a set of seven parameters separated by vertical bars, in the format used internally for \l@d@nums (see V.9 p. 113): the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma. However, you can omit any parameters you do not want to change, and you can omit a string of vertical bars at the end of the argument. Hence \linenum{18|4|0|18|7|1|0} is an invocation that changes all the parameters, but \linenum{13} only changes the starting line number, and leaves the rest unaltered.

We use \ as an internal separator for the macro parameters.

\linenum calls \line@set to do the actual work; it looks at the first number in the argument to \linenum, sets the corresponding value in \l@d@nums, and then calls itself to process the next number in the \linenum argument, if there are more numbers in \l@d@nums to process.

\line@set uses \l@d@add to tack numbers or vertical bars onto the right hand end of \l@d@nums.
VI.4 Lemma disambiguation

The mechanism which counts the occurrence of a same word in a same line is quite complex, because, when \LaTeX{} reads a command between a `\pstart{} and a `\pend{}, it does not know yet which are the line numbers.

The general mechanism is the following:

- **At the first run**, each `\sameword{} command increments an `etoolbox{} counter the name of which contains the argument of the `\sameword{} commands.

- Then this counter associated with the argument of `\sameword{} is stored with the `\@sw{} command in the auxiliary file of the current `reledmac{} section (the `.1`, `.2`... file).

- **When this auxiliary file is read at the second run**, different operations are achieved:

  1. Get the rank of each `\sameword{} in a line (relative rank) from the rank of each `\sameword{} in all the numbered section (absolute rank):

     - For each paired `\sameword{} argument and absolute line number, a counter is defined. Its value corresponds to the number of times `\sameword{}{(argument)} is called from the beginning of the lineation to the end of the current line. We also store the same data for the preceding absolute line number, if it does not have `\sameword{}{(argument)}.

     - For each `\sameword{} having the same argument, we subtract from its absolute rank the number stored for the paired `\sameword{} argument and previous absolute line number. Consequently, we obtain the relative rank.
VI.4 Lemma disambiguation

– See the following example which explains how, for same `\sameword`, absolute ranks are transformed to relative ranks.
  At line 1:
  absolute rank 1 becomes relative rank 1-0 = 1
  1 is stored for this `\sameword` and line 1
  At line 2:
  absolute rank 2 becomes relative rank 2-1 = 1
  absolute rank 3 becomes relative rank 3-1 = 2
  3 is stored for this `\sameword` and line 2
  At line 3:
  no `\sameword` for this line.
  3 is stored for this `\sameword` and line 3
  At line 4:
  absolute rank 4 becomes relative rank 4-3 = 1
  4 is stored for this `\sameword` and line 4

2. Create lists of lists of `\sameword` by depth of `\edtext`. That is: create a list for `\edtexts` of level 1, a list for `\edtexts` of level 2, a list for `\edtexts` of level 3 etc. For each `\edtext` in these lists, we store all of the relative ranks of `\sameword` which are called as lemma information. That is: 1) either called in the first argument of `\sameword`, or, 2) called in the `\lemma` macro of the second argument of `\sameword` AND marked by the optional argument of `\sameword` in first argument of `\edtext`.

For example, suppose a line with nested `\edtexts` which contains some word marked by `\sameword` and having the following relative rank:

\[ \text{bar} \quad \boxed{\text{foo}^1 \quad \text{foo}^2 \quad \text{bar}^2 \quad \text{foo}^3} \quad (A)(B) \quad \text{foo}^4 \quad \text{bar}^3 \quad (C) \quad \boxed{(D) \quad \text{foo}^5} \quad \text{bar}^4 \quad (E) \]

In this example, all lemma information for `\edtext` is framed. The text in parenthesis is the content of critical notes associated to the preceding frame. As you can see, we have two levels of `\edtext`.

The list for `\edtexts` of level 1 is \{1, 2, 3, 4, 3\}, \{5, 4\}.

The list for `\edtexts` of level 2 is \{1, 2, 2, 3\}, \{5\}.

As you can see, the mandatory argument of `\sameword` does not matter: we store the rank informations for every word potentially ambiguous.

• At the second run, when a critical notes is called, we associate it to the next item of the list associated to its `\edtext` level. So, in the previous example:
  – Critical notes (A) and (B) are associated with \{1, 2, 2, 3\}.
  – Critical note (C) is associated with \{1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 3\}.
  – Critical note (D) is associated with \{5\}.
  – Critical note (E) is associated with \{5, 4\}.

• At the second run, when a critical note is printed:
  – The `\sameword` command is let `\sameword@inedtext`.
– At each call of this \sameword@inedtext, we step to the next element of the list associated to the note. Let it be \( r \).

– For the word marked by \sameword, we calculate how many time it is called in its line. To do it:

  * We get the absolute line number of the current \sameword. This absolute line number was stored with a list of relative ranks for the current \edtext. That means, in the previous example, that if the absolute line number of \edtext was 1, that critical notes (A) and (B) were not associated with \{1, 2, 2, 3\} but with \{(1, 1), (2, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1)\}. Such a method of knowing the absolute line number associated to a \sameword is required because a \edtext can overlap many lines, but \sameword can’t get it.

  * When reading the auxiliary file, we get the value associated to the pair composed by the current marked word and the current absolute line number. To this value, we subtract the value associated to the pair composed by the current marked word and the previous absolute line number. Let the result be \( n \).

– If \( n > 1 \), that means the current word appears more than once in its line. In this case, we call \showwordrank with the word as the first argument and \( r \) as the second argument. If the word is called only once, we just print it.

After theory, implementation. First, getting a sanitized form of the argument of \sameword

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\get@sw@txt}{\begingroup\swnoexpands\protect\ignorespaces oranges\endgroup}\
\end{verbatim}

Using case sensibility option.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifsow\caseinsensitive\def\@tmpa##1{\lowercase{##1}}\else\def\@tmpa##1{##1}\fi\
\end{verbatim}

And now, define \sw@txt.

\begin{verbatim}
@tmpa{\protectedxdef\sw@txt{#1}}\endgroup\end{verbatim}

Allow some macros inside \sameword. We use \texttt{\textbackslash RenewExpandableDocumentCommand} to get expandable command with optional argument. Cf. \url{https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/384783/7712}. 

\texttt{\newcommand{\sw@noexpands}{%}
\begin{verbatim}
  \let\sameword\@secondmandarg
  \let\emph\@firstofone
  \let\textit\@firstofone
  \let\textbf\@firstofone
  \let\textsc\@firstofone
  \let\framebox\@firstofone
  \def\edtext{\dummy@edtext}
  \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\edindex}{om}{}
  \ifdefined\index
    \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\index}{om}{}
  \fi
  \let\selectlanguage\@gobble
  \let\foreignlanguage\@secondoftwo
  \ifdefined\xpg@loaded
    \do\csname text##1\endcsname{#2}
  \fi
\end{verbatim}
\}
\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\expandafter}{\csname text##1\endcsname}{om}{####2}
\expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{\xpg@loaded}
\fi%
\end{verbatim}
\}
\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\expandafter}{\csname text##1\endcsname}{om}{####2}
\expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{\xpg@loaded}
\fi%
\}
\%

The high level macro \sameword, used by the editor.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommandx{\sameword}{[2][1,usedefault]{%}
  \ifxetex
    \if@RTL
      \led@err@samewordRTL
    \fi
  \fi
  \leavevmode
  \get@sw@txt{#2}%%
%
Now, the real code. First, increment the counter corresponding to the argument.

\begin{verbatim}
\unless\ifledRcol
  \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@ne}
\%
\end{verbatim}

Then, write its value to the numbered file.

\begin{verbatim}
\protected@write\linenum@out{}{\string\@sw{\sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@one}}%
\%
\end{verbatim}

Do the same thing if we are in the right column.

\begin{verbatim}
\else%
  \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@one}
\%
\end{verbatim}
And print the word.

A flag set to true if a \@sw relative rank must be added to the list of ranks for a specific edtext.

\if@addsw
\newif\if@addsw
\else
\fi
\@sw The command printed in the auxiliary files.

\newcommand{\@sw}[3]{%
\get@sw@txt{#1}%
\unless\ifledRcol%
First, define a counter which store the second argument as value for a each paired absolute line number/first argument
\csxdef{sw@\sw@txt @\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}{#2}%

If such argument was not defined for the preceding line, define it.
\numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@num-1}%
\ifcsundef{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{%}
\csnumgdef{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{#2-1}%
\}%

Then, calculate the position of the word in the line.
\numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}}%

And do the same thing for the right side.
\else%
\csxdef{sw@\sw@txt @\the\absline@numR @\the\section@numR @R}{#2}%
\numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@numR-1}%
\ifcsundef{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR}{%}
\csnumgdef{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR}{#2-1}%
\}%
\numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}}%
\fi%
\fi%
And now, add it to the list of \@sw for the current edtext, in all depth.

\@tempcnta=\@edtext@level
\@whilenum{\@tempcnta>0}\do{\%
    \@addswfalse
    \notbool{lemmacommand@the@\@tempcnta}%
        \{\@addswtrue\%
        \{%\def\do##1{%
            \ifnumequal{##1}{\the\@tempcnta}{\@addswtrue\listbreak}{}
        }\docsvlist{#3}{}
    \if@addsw}\letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}\
    \ifledRcol\xright@appenditem{{\the@sw}{\the\absline@numR}}\to\@tmp\else\xright@appenditem{{\the@sw}{\the\absline@num}}\to\@tmp\fi\cslet{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}\{\@tmp\}\fi\%
    \if\@addsw%
        \letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}\
        \ifledRcol\xright@appenditem{{\the@sw}{\the\absline@numR}}\to\@tmp\else\xright@appenditem{{\the@sw}{\the\absline@num}}\to\@tmp\fi\cslet{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}\{\@tmp\}\fi\%
    \advance\@tempcnta by -1%
}\%
%
\sameword@inedtext The command called when \sameword is called in a \edtext.

\newcommandx{\sameword@inedtext}[2][1, usedefault]{%\
    \get\sw@txt[#2]%
    \unless\ifledRcol%
    \ifix\sw@list@inedtext\empty%
        \def\the@sw{999}%
        \def\this@absline{-99}%
    \else%
    %
    %
    %
    %
    %
    %
But in many cases, at this step, we should have some content in the list `\sw@list@inedtext`, which contains the reference for `\edtext`.

First, calculate the number of occurrences of the word in the current line

Finally, print the rank, but only if there is more than one occurrence of the word in the current line.

And the same for right side.

Finally, the way the rank will be printed.
VII  Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

In order to be able to count the lines of text and affix line numbers, we add an extra stage of processing for each paragraph. We send the paragraph into a box register, rather than straight onto the vertical list, and when the paragraph ends we slice the paragraph into its component lines; to each line we add any notes or line numbers, add a command to write to the line-list, and then at last send the line to the vertical list. This section contains all the code for this process.

VII.1  Boxes, counters, \pstart and \pend

Here are numbers and flags that are used internally in the course of the paragraph decomposition.

When we first form the paragraph, it goes into a box register, \raw@text, instead of onto the current vertical list. The \ifnumberedpar@ flag will be true while a paragraph is being processed in that way. \num@lines will store the number of lines in the paragraph when it is complete. When we chop it up into lines, each line in turn goes into the \one@line register, and \par@line will be the number of that line within the paragraph.

The \pstarts@typeset@L counts the number of LEFT \pstart typeset. A left \pstart can be a \pstart typeset in normal mode, or \pstart typeset in left column or page in parallel mode (with\reledpar). In the first case, its value is increased at every \pstart command. In the second case, its value is increased in \Columns or \Pages when we prepare to typeset a left \pstart. The \pstarts@read@L counts the number of LEFT \pstart read. A left \pstart can be a \pstart typeset in normal mode, or \pstart typeset in left column or page in parallel mode (with\reledpar). In the first case, its value is increased at every \pstart command. In the second case, its value is increased at every \pstart.
\pstart starts the paragraph by clearing the \inserts@list list and other relevant variables, and then arranges for the subsequent text to go into the \raw@text box. \pstart needs to appear at the start of every paragraph that is to be numbered; the \autopar command below may be used to insert these commands automatically.

Beware: everything that occurs between \pstart and \pend is happening within a group; definitions must be global if you want them to survive past the end of the paragraph.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand\AtEveryPstart[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}{% 
    \gdef\at@every@pstart{}% 
    \gdef\at@every@pstart{#1}{}% 
  }% 
  \gdef\at@every@pstart{}% 
}\newcommand\AtEveryPstart*[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}{% 
    \gdef\at@every@pstart{}% 
    \gdef\at@every@pstart{#1}{}% 
  }% 
  \global\at@every@pstart@star@true% 
  \gdef\at@every@pstart{}% 
}\newcommand\pstart[1,2,usedefault]{% 
  \normal@pars% 
  \ifboolexpr{\test {\ifstrempty{#1}} \and \test {\ifstrempty{#2}}}{% 
    \at@every@pstart% 
  }{% 
    \ifstrempty{#1}{% 
      \at@every@pstart% 
    }{% 
      \at@every@pstart{#1}% 
    }% 
    \ifstrempty{#2}{% 
      \at@every@pstart{}% 
    }{% 
      \at@every@pstart{#2}% 
    }% 
  }% 
}\renewcommand\thepstart{{\bfseries\@arabic\c@pstart}. }% 
\end{verbatim}
VII.1 Boxes, counters, \pstart and \pend
is used (classical TeX behavior for space after commands)

\pend

\pend must be used to end a numbered paragraph.

\newcommandx{\pend}[2][1,2,usedefault]{\ifnumbering \else%
\let\err@PendNotNumbered%
\fi%
\global\l@dskipversenumberfalse%
\ifnumberedpar@ \else%
\let\err@PendNoPstart%
\fi%
}%

We set all the usual interline penalties to zero and then immediately call \endgraf to end the paragraph; this ensures that there will be no large interline penalties to prevent us from slicing the paragraph into pieces. These penalties revert to the values that you set when the group for the \vbox ends. Then we call \do@line to slice a line off the top of the paragraph, add a line number and footnotes, and restore it to the page; we keep doing this until there are not any more lines left.

Output the lines.

\loop\ifvbox\raw@text%
\do@line%
\repeat%

Deal with any leftover notes, and then end the group that was begun in the \pstart.

\flush@notes%
\endgroup%
\ignorespaces%

Increase pstart counter.

\ifnumberpstart%
\global\pstartnumtrue%
\fi%
\addtocounter{pstart}{1}%
\ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
\addtocounter{pstartL}{1}%
\addtocounter{pstartR}{1}%
\fi%

Print the optional arguments of \pend or the content printed after every \pend

\normalpars
\ifboolexpr{%
  test {\ifstrempty{#1}}
  and test {\ifstrempty{#2}}%
}{%
  \at@every@pend%
  {\ifstrempty{#1}{}{\noindent#1}}
  {\ifstrempty{#2}{}{#2}}%
}{%
\restorestandard "nobreak" and "autopar" settings. Normally, \if@nobreak is true only immediately after a sectioning command (see latex.ltx file). As a \pstart... \pend structure can't contain any sectioning command, we set \if@nobreak to false.

\if@nobreakfalse%
\ifautopar%
\autopar%
\fi%
%
At the very end, we check if the lineation is made by \pstart. In this case, we reset the line number, using \setlinenum, as we are, technically, already out of \pstart\pend structure.

\ifbypstart%
\begingroup%
\unless\ifinstanza%
\let\leavevmode\relax%
\setlinenum{0}%
\fi%
\endgroup%
\resetprevline%
\fi%
%
Here, two macros to insert content after every \pend, between numbered line. \AtEveryPend is the user macro, \at@every@pend is macro set by it.
Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

\AtEveryPend\newcommand{\AtEveryPend*}[1]\%
\ifstrempty{#1}\%
{\gdef\at@every@pend{}}\%
{\gdef\at@every@pend{#1}}\%
\global\at@every@pend@star@true\%
\xdef\at@every@pend\%
\% 
\AtEndEveryPend
Here a macro to insert automatically any content at the end of \pend, in numbered lines.
\newcommand{\AtEndEveryPend}[1]\%
\ifstrempty{#1}\%
{\xdef\@at@end@every@pend{}}\%
{\gdef\@at@end@every@pend{#1}}\%
\def\@at@end@every@pend\%
\% 
\l@dzeropenalties
A macro to zero penalties for \pend or \pstart.
\newcommand*{\l@dzeropenalties}{\%
\brokenpenalty z@ \clubpenalty z@ \displaywidowpenalty z@ \interlinepenalty z@ \predisplaypenalty z@ \postdisplaypenalty z@ \widowpenalty z@}\%
\% 
\autopar
In most cases it is only an annoyance to have to label the paragraphs to be numbered with \pstart and \pend. \autopar will do that automatically, allowing you to start a paragraph with its first word and no other preliminaries, and to end it with a blank line or a \par command. The command should be issued within a group, after \beginnumbering has been used to start the numbering; all paragraphs within the group will be affected.

A few situations can cause problems. One is a paragraph that begins with a begin-group character or command: \pstart will not get invoked until after such a group beginning is processed; as a result the character that ends the group will be mistaken for the end of the \vbox that \pstart creates, and the rest of the paragraph will not be numbered. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly using \indent, \noindent, or \leavevmode — or \pstart, since you can still include your own \pstart and \pend commands even with \autopar on.

Prematurely ending the group within which \autopar is in effect will cause a similar problem. You must either leave a blank line or use \par to end the last paragraph before you end the group.

The functioning of this macro is more tricky than the usual \everypar: we do not want anything to go onto the vertical list at all, so we have to end the paragraph, erase
any evidence that it ever existed, and start it again using \pstart. We remove the paragraph-indentation box using \lastbox and save the width, and then skip backwards over the \parskip that has been added for this paragraph. Then we start again with \pstart, restoring the indentation that we saved, and locally change \par so that it will do our \pend for us.

The boolean \ifautopar is set to TRUE while \autopar is enabled, and the \ifby@autopar is set to TRUE at each \pstart automatically called by the \autopar feature. A manual \pstart will have a \ifby@autopar set to FALSE.

\newif\ifautopar
\newif\ifby@autopar
\newcommand*{\autopar}{
  \ifledRcol
  \ifnumberingR \else
    \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
  \fi
  \else
    \ifnumbering \else
      \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
    \fi
  \fi
  \autopartrue
  \everypar{\setbox0=\lastbox
    \endgraf \vskip-\parskip
    \global\by@autopartrue%
    \pstart \noident \kern\wd0%
    \ifnumberpstart%
    \ifinstanza\else%
      \thepstart%
    \fi%
    \fi%
    \fi%
    \let\par=\pend%
    \ignorespaces}
%
\normalpars

We also define a macro which we can rely on to turn off the \autopar definitions at various important places, if they are in force. We will want to do this within a footnotes, for example.

\newcommand*{\normalpars}{\everypar{\let\par\endgraf}
%
\ifautopar@pause

We define a boolean test switched to true at the beginning of the \pause@numbering command if the autopar is enabled. This boolean will be tested at the beginning of \resum@numbering to continue the autopar if needed.
VII.2 Processing one line

VII.2.1 General process

The \do@line macro is called by \pend to do all the processing for a single line of text. The \l@dunhbox@line macro only \unhboxes one line, but packages like \microtype can override it as required.

\do@line
\l@dunhbox@line

The \do@line macro is called by \pend to do all the processing for a single line of text. The \l@dunhbox@line macro only \unhboxes one line, but packages like \microtype can override it as required.

Depending whether a sectioning command is called at this point or not we print sectioning command or normal line,

\ifinlist{\the\pstarts@typeset@L}{\eled@sections@@}{\print@eledsection}{\print@line}{\ifinlist{\the\pstarts@typeset@L}{\eled@sections@@}{\print@eledsection}{\print@line}}

VII.2.2 Process for “normal” line

\print@line

\print@line is for normal line, i.e., line without sectioning command.
Insert the pstart number inside, if we are in the first line of a pstart.

\affixpstart@num%

The line will be boxed, to have the good width.

\hbxt \linewidth%

User hooks.

\do@insidelinehook%
\csuse{insidethis@\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}%
\global\csundef{insidethis@\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}%

Left line number

\ldldta%

Prepare text to be inserted before notes.

\if@firstlineofpage%
\set@Xtxtbeforenotes%
\set@txtbeforenotesX%
\global@firstlineofpagefalse%
\fi%

Insert footnotes made of manuscripts data and critical footnotes.

\ifdefstring{\ms@data@position}{msdata-regular}{%
\insert@msdata%
\add@inserts%
\add@Xgroupbyline%
}%
\ifdefstring{\ms@data@position}{msdata-regular}{%
\add@inserts%
\add@Xgroupbyline%
\insert@msdata%
}%

Insert marginal notes.

\affixside@note%

Print left notes.

\ldlsnte

Boxes the line, writes information about new line in the numbered file.
VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

If we use the continuousnumberingwithcolumns, we increase right line number.

\continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext

If we use Lua\LaTeX then restore the direction.

\ifluatex\textdir\l@luatextextdir\textdir\fi

Insert, if needed, the hanging symbol.

\inserthangingsymbol

And so, print the line.

\l@dunhbox@line\l@line

Right line number

\ledrlfill\l@drd@ta

Print right notes.

\l@drsn@te

And reinsert penalties (for page breaking)...
VII.2 Processing one line

\do@linehook
\do@insidelinehook

These high-level commands just redefine the low level commands. They have to be used by the user, without \makeatletter.

\newcommand*{\do@linehook}[1]{\gdef\do@linehook(#1)}%
\newcommand*{\do@insidelinehook}[1]{\gdef\do@insidelinehook(#1)}%
%
\do@linehook
\do@insidelinehook

Two hooks into \do@line. The first is called at the beginning of \do@line, the second is called in the line box. The second can, for example, have a \markboth command inside, the first can not.

\newcommand*{\do@linehook}{}
\newcommand*{\do@insidelinehook}{}
Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

The \doinside{thislinehook} can be called directly in the main flood of a text. It will define a hook executed at a specific line, determined by the position of the command in the flood of the text.

\newcommand{\doinside{thislinehook}[1]}% \leavevmode% In case it begins with a $pstart$, ensure the \inside{thisline} is written after \nl
\ifledRcol%
\write\linenum@outR{\string\@inside{thisline}[\unexpanded{#1}]%}
\else%
\ifonedRcol%
\write\linenum@out{\string\@inside{thisline}[\unexpanded{#1}]%}
\else%
\csgappto{insidethisR\the\abslineR \the\sectionR}{#1}%
\fi%
\else%
\csgappto{insidethis\the\absline \the\section}{#1}%
\fi%
\}
\}

The auxiliary files command just store the information to be executed when typing setting the specific line.

\newcommand{\inside{thisline}[1]}% \ifonedRcol%
\ifonedRcol%
\csgappto{insidethisR\the\abslineR \the\sectionR}{#1}%
\else%
\csgappto{insidethis\the\absline \the\section}{#1}%
\fi%
\}
\}

VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization

Nulls the \emph{...d@ta}, which may later hold line numbers. Similarly for \emph{dcsnotetext}, \emph{dcsnotetext@l}, \emph{dcsnotetext@r} for the texts of the sidenotes, left and right notes.

\newcommand*{\demptyd@ta}{% \gdef\dld@ta{}\gdef\drd@ta{}\gdef\dcsnotetext@l{}\gdef\dcsnotetext@r{}\gdef\dcsnotetext{}}

Zero width boxes of the left and right sidenotes, together with their kerns, and, eventually, with additional space if we are in parallel columns typesetting.

\newcommand{\dlnote@te}{% \ifboolexpr{% bool \tempdima=\@morespace @leftnote@rightcolumn} \gdef\dlnote@te{}\gdef\dlote@te{}\gdef\dlnote@te{}\gdef\drnote@te{}\gdef\dlote@te{}\gdef\dlote@te{}}
These macros are called at the left (\ledllfill) and the right (\ledrlfill) of each numbered line.

\ledllfill
\ledrlfill

\getline@num

The \getline@num macro determines the page and line numbers for the line we are about to send to the vertical list.

\getline@num

\ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@ \global\advance\subline@num \@ne \fi
\else
\ifnum\@lock<\tw@ \global\advance\line@num \@ne \global\subline@num \z@ \fi
\fi
The real work in the macro above is done in \do@actions, but before we plunge into that, let’s get \do@ballast out of the way. This macro looks to see if there is an action to be performed on the next line, and if it is going to be a page break action, \do@ballast decreases the count \ballast@count counter by the amount of ballast. This means, in practice, that when \add@penalties assigns penalties at this point, \TeX will be given extra encouragement to break the page here (see X11.2 p. 186).

First we set up the required counters; they are initially set to zero, and will remain so unless you type \setcounter{ballast}{⟨some figure⟩} in your document.

\newcount\ballast@count
\newcounter{ballast}
\setcounter{ballast}{0}

And here is \do@ballast itself. It advances \absline@num within the protection of a group to make its check for what happens on the next line.

\newcommand*{\do@ballast}{\global\ballast@count \z@
  \begingroup
  \advance\absline@num \@ne
  \ifnum\next@actionline=\absline@num
    \ifnum\next@action>-1001\relax
      \global\advance\ballast@count by -\c@ballast
    \fi
  \fi
  \endgroup}
Next, we handle commands that change the line-number values. (We subtract 5001 rather than 5000 here because the line number is going to be incremented automatically in \getline@num.)

We rescale the value in \olo@dtempcnta so that we can use a case statement.

Now we get information about the next action off the list, and then set \do@actions@next so that we will call ourselves recursively: the next action might also be for this line.

There is no warning if we find \actionlines@list empty, since that will always happen near the end of the section.
\ifx\actionlines@list\empty
  \gdef
\else
  \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}\
  \gl@p\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
  \gl@p\actions@list\to\next@action
  \global\let\do@actions@next=\do@actions
\fi
\fi
%

% Make the recursive call, if necessary.
\do@actions@next}

\do@actions@fixedcode
This macro handles the fixed codes for $\do@actions$. It is one big case statement.
\newcommand*{\do@actions@fixedcode}{%
  \ifcase\@l@dtempcnta
    \or% 1001 = starting sublineation
    \global\sublines@true
    \or% 1002 = ending sublineation
    \global\sublines@false
    \or% 1003 = starting locking number
    \global\@lock=\@ne
    \or% 1004 = ending locking number
    \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
      \global\@lock=\thr@@
    \else
      \global\@lock=\z@
    \fi
    \or% 1005 = starting locking subnumber
    \global\sub@lock=\@ne
    \or% 1006 = ending locking subnumber
    \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
      \global\sub@lock=\thr@@
    \else
      \global\sub@lock=\z@
    \fi
    \or% 1007 = skipping numbering
    \l@dskipnumbertrue
    \or% 1008 = skipping numbering in stanza
    \l@dskipverse@numbertrue
    \or% 1009 = hiding number
    \l@dhidenumbertrue
    \or% 1010 = inserting msdata
    \add@msdata%
    \else
    \end@msdata%
    \fi
  \else
  \led@warn@BadAction
  \fi}
VIII.1 Continuous line numbering between parallel typesetting and normal typesetting

The \texttt{continuousnumberingwithcolumns} option allows to alternate between single text and two parallel texts, keeping the same line numbers when switching from one layout to the other. The lines counter for the text in a single column and for the text in the left column in parallel typesetting is the same. But the lines counter for the text in the same column is not the same.

When typesetting single column text, if the option is enabled, we need to “simulate” typesetting right line, in order to keep the two counters synchronized. That is the aim of the \texttt{\continuousnumberingwithcolumns\sync@linenumber\singletext} macro.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\continuousnumberingwithcolumns\sync@linenumber\singletext}{%
  \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
  \unless\ifafterendnumberingR%
  \newlineR%
  \xappto\next@line@list@stuffR{%\unexpanded{\global\line@numR=}%\the\line@num%
  }%
  \fi%
  \fi%
}\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
\%
First, the user-level commands, which only write commands to the numbered files, storing the annotation.

```latex
\newcommand{\linenumannotation}[1]{%
  \leavevmode\%In case it begins with a \pstart, ensure the \@annot is written after \@nl
  \ifledRcol%
    \write\linenum@outR{\string\@annot[#1]}%
  \else%
    \write\linenum@out{\string\@annot[#1]}%
  \fi%
}%

\newcommand{\resetlinenumannotation}[0]{%
  \leavevmode\%In case it begins with a \pstart, ensure the \@resetannot is written after \@nl
  \ifledRcol%
    \write\linenum@outR{\string\@resetannot}%
  \else%
    \write\linenum@out{\string\@resetannot}%
  \fi%
}%
```

The `\linenumannotationposition@side` macro, to determine the position of line number annotations in lines printed in the side, relative to the line number position. The default value is "after", but it can be changed to "before", using the `\linenumannotationposition` macro.

```latex
\def\linenumannotationposition@side{after}%
```

The `\wraplinenumannotation@ref` macro is applied to line annotations in crossref. The `\wraplinenumannotation@side` macro is applied to line annotation in sides. They must be modified by users using `\wraplinenumannotation`. By default, they call `\textsuperscript`.

```latex
\def\wraplinenumannotation@ref{\textsuperscript}%
\def\wraplinenumannotation@side{\textsuperscript}%
\newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@ref}%
\newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@side}%
```

The `\iflinenumannotationotherside` boolean allows to print the annotation on the side opposite the line number.

```latex
\newif\iflinenumannotationotherside%
```
\annot \store\annot@to@absline

Then, the numbered files command \annot, which

- associates the annotation to the absolute lines number.
- stores the current annotation in a macro to be used by the \ref@reg macro, which manages all things related to \edtext in numbered files. As we don’t want to store it multiple times in the event of nested \edtext, we use an auxiliary macro, \store\annot@to@absline, which is set to \gobble when we parse nested \edtext in numbered auxiliary files.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\annot}[1]{%
\store\annot@to@absline{#1}%
\def\current@annot{#1}%
}%
\newcommand{\store\annot@to@absline}[1]{%
  \ifledRcol%
    \ifcsdef{annotR@\the\absline@numR \the\section@numR}{%\%
      \csgappto{annotR@\the\absline@numR \the\section@numR}{\@linenumannotationsep#1}%
    }{%
      \csgdef{annotR@\the\absline@numR \the\section@numR}{#1}%
    }%
  \else%
    \ifcsdef{annot@\the\absline@num@ \the\section@num}{%\%
      \csgappto{annot@\the\absline@num@ \the\section@num}{\@linenumannotationsep#1}%
    }{%
      \csgdef{annot@\the\absline@num@ \the\section@num}{#1}%
    }%
  \fi%
}\%
%
\current@annot

By default, there is no annotation to a line number, so we store an empty \current@annot

\let\current@annot=\empty%

\reset@current@annot

\reset@current@annot is called at each \@nl in numbered auxiliary files. It resets the annotation of line numbers at each line.

The \reset@current@annot macro is written in the auxiliary files with \resetlinenumannotation macro. It resets the annotation.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\reset@current@annot}{%\%
  \unless\ifnoresetlinenumannotation%
    \let\current@annot=\empty%
  \fi%
  %}
\end{verbatim}
In the \annot@list list, each individual \edtext is associated with a starting and an ending line number annotation, which is stored this way: \texttt{start annotation|end annotation}

The \parse@annot reads the format and defines two global macros.

\def\parse@annot#1|#2|{
\gdef\annot@start{#1}\
\gdef\annot@end{#2}\
}

\setlinenumannotationsep
\@linenumannotationsep

The separator between the annotations and the way to redefine it.

\setlinenumannotationsep\{1\}{\gdef\@linenumannotationsep{#1}}\
\def\@linenumannotationsep{, }\

\xspace Line number printing

\affixline@num

\affixline@num just puts a left line number into \l@dld@ta or a right line number into \l@drd@ta as required.

To determine whether we need to affix a line number to this line, we compute the following:

\[ n = \text{int}\left(\frac{\text{linenum} - \text{firstlinenum}}{\text{linenumincrement}}\right) \]
\[ m = \text{firstlinenum} + (n \times \text{linenumincrement}) \]

(where \texttt{int} truncates a real number to an integer). \texttt{m} will be equal to \texttt{linenum} only if we are to paste a number on here. However, the formula breaks down for the first line to number (and any before that), so we check that case separately: if \texttt{line@num} \leq \texttt{firstlinenum}, we compare the two directly instead of making these calculations.

We compute, in the scratch counter \@l@dtempcnta, the number of the next line that should be printed with a number (\texttt{m} in the above discussion), and move the current line number into the counter \@l@dtempcntb for comparison.

First, the case when we are within a sub-line range.

\ifledgroupnotesL@
\else
\ifnumberline
\ifl@dskipnumber

No number is attached if \ifl@dskipnumber is TRUE (and then it is set to its normal FALSE value). No number is attached if \ifnumberline is FALSE (the normal value is TRUE).
% That takes care of computing the values for comparison, but if line number locking
is in effect we have to make a further check. If this check fails, then we disable the
line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

% Now the line number case, which works the same way.

% Check on the \linenumberlist If it is \empty use the standard algorithm.

% The \linenumberlist was not \empty, so here is Wayne's numbering mechanism.
This takes place in \TeX's mouth.
A locking check for lines, just like the version for sub-line numbers above.

The following tests are true if we need to print a line number.

If we got here, we are going to print a line number; so now we need to calculate a number that will tell us which side of the page will get the line number. We start from \line@margin, which asks for one side always if it is less than 2; and then if the side does depend on the page number, we simply add the page number to this side code—because the values of \line@margin have been devised so that this produces a number that is even for left-margin numbers and odd for right-margin numbers.

For \LaTeX{} we have to consider two column documents as well. In this case Peter Wilson thought we need to put the numbers at the outside of the column — the left of the first column and the right of the second. Do the twocolumn stuff before going on with the original code.

A left line number is stored in \l@dld@ta and a right one in \l@drd@ta.
Now fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

These macros handle line number locking for \affixline@num. \ch@cksub@l@ck checks subline locking. If it fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.
\@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
\fi
\or
@ifnum\sublock@disp=\tw@ \else
  \@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
  \fi
\or
@ifnum\sublock@disp=\z@
  \@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
  \fi
\fi}
% Similarly for line numbers.
\newcommand*{\ch@ck@l@ck}{%
  \ifcase\@lock
    \or
      \ifnum\lock@disp=\@ne
        \@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
      \fi
    \or
      \ifnum\lock@disp=\tw@ \else
        \@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
      \fi
    \or
      \ifnum\lock@disp=\z@
        \@l@dtempcntb=\z@ \@l@dtempcnta=\@ne
      \fi
  \fi%
% Fix the lock counters. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.
\newcommand*{\f@x@l@cks}{%
  \ifcase\@lock
    \or
      \global\@lock=\tw@
    \or \or
      \global\@lock=\z@
    \fi
  \ifcase\sub@lock
    \or
      \global\sub@lock=\tw@
    \or \or
      \global\sub@lock=\z@
  \fi%
  \fi}
%
XI  Pstart number printing inside

Inside, the printing of the pstart number runs like the printing of the line number. There are only a few differences:

- The pstarts counter is upgraded in the \pend command. Consequently, the \affixpstart@num command has not to upgrade it, unlike the \affixline@num which upgrades the lines counter.

- To print the pstart number only at the beginning of a pstart, and not in every line, a boolean test is made. The \pstartnum boolean is set to TRUE at every \pend. It is tried in the \leftpstartnum and \rightpstartnum commands. After the try, it is set to FALSE.

```latex
\newcommand*{\leftpstartnum}{
  \ifodd\@lddtempcntb
    \gdef\l@dld@ta{\rlap{{\leftpstartnum}}}\
  \else
    \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftpstartnum}}}\
  \fi
}\newcommand*{\rightpstartnum}{
  \ifodd\@lddtempcntb
    \gdef\l@dld@ta{\rlap{{\rightpstartnum}}}\
  \else
    \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\rightpstartnum}}}\
  \fi
}\newcommand*{\pstartnum}{
  \if@twocolumn
    \if@firstcolumn
      \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftpstartnum}}}\
    \else
      \gdef\l@dld@ta{\rlap{{\rightpstartnum}}}\
    \fi
  \else
    \@l@dtempcntb=\linenumsep
    \ifnum\@l@dtempcntb>\one
      \advance\@l@dtempcntb -1
    \fi
    \ifodd\@l@dtempcntb
      \gdef\l@dld@ta{\rlap{{\rightpstartnum}}}\
    \else
      \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftpstartnum}}}\
    \fi
  \fi
}\pstartnumtrue
\newcommand*{\leftpstartnum}{
  \ifpstartnum\thepstart\kern\linenumsep\fi
  \global\pstartnumfalse
}\newcommand*{\rightpstartnum}{
  \ifpstartnum
```

Because of the paragraph decomposition process in order to number line, \texttt{reledmac} must hack the standard way \TeX works in order to manage insertion of footnotes, both critical and familiar.

We need to call the \texttt{\insert} commands not when the content of \texttt{\pstart\ldots\pend} is read by \TeX by when each individual line is typeset. Consequently, when reading the content of \texttt{\pstart\ldots\pend}, we store the insertion (footnotes) in a specific \texttt{reledmac}'s list, and we restore them to the vertical list when printing each individual line.

\subsection{Add insertions to the vertical list}

\texttt{\inserts@list} is the list macro that contains the inserts that we save up for one paragraph.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\add@inserts}{% 
  \global\let\add@inserts@next=\relax 
  \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else 
    \next@insert 
  \fi 
}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\add@inserts} is the penultimate macro used by \texttt{\do@line}; it takes insertions saved in a list macro and sends them onto the vertical list.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using \TeX's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called \texttt{\add@inserts@next} that is always the last thing that \texttt{\add@inserts} does. If there could be more inserts to process for this line, \texttt{\add@inserts@next} is set equal to \texttt{\add@inserts}; otherwise it is just \texttt{\relax}.

If \texttt{\inserts@list} is empty, there are not any more notes or insertions for this paragraph, and we need not waste our time.
Add insertions to the vertical list

If the next insert’s for this line, tack it on (and then erase the contents of the insert macro, as it could be quite large). In that case, we also set \add@inserts@next so that we will call ourself recursively: there might be another insert for this same line.

\add@inserts@next

If you use \add@Xgroupbyline, the insertion of the critical footnotes are not made immediately in \add@inserts, but the content to be inserted is stored, in order to be inserted later in one block. This insertion in one block is made by \add@Xgroupbyline.
XII.2 Penalties

\add@penalties is the last macro used by \do@line. It adds up the club, widow, and interline penalties, and puts a single penalty of the appropriate size back into the paragraph; these penalties get removed by the \vsplit operation. \displaywidowpenalty and \brokenpenalty are not restored, since we have no easy way to find out where we should insert them.

In this code, \num@lines is the number of lines in the whole paragraph, and \par@line is the line we are working on at the moment. The count \@l@dtempcnta is used to calculate and accumulate the penalty; it is initially set to the value of \ballast@count, which has been worked out in \do@ballast above [VIII p. 172]. Finally, the penalty is checked to see that it does not go below $-10000$.
XII.3 Printing leftover notes

The \flush@notes macro is called after the entire paragraph has been sliced up and sent on to the vertical list. If the number of notes to this paragraph has increased since the previous run of \TeX, then there can be leftover notes that have not yet been printed. An appropriate error message will be printed elsewhere; but it is best to go ahead and print these notes somewhere, even if it is not in quite the right place. What we do is dump them all out here, so that they should be printed on the same page as the last line of the paragraph. We can hope that is not too far from the proper location, to which they will move on the next run. For the first run, we do not flush the notes, as that means all the notes will be added at the end of numbered section, and so, very far of the expected position.

\newcommand*{\flush@notes}{\%
\iftoggle{notfirstrun@\jobname.extensionchars\the\section@num}{\xloop\%
\ifx\inserts@list\empty \else\%
\global\let@insert=\undefined%
\repeat%
}}\%
%
% \xloop is a variant of the Plain \TeX \loop macro, useful when it's hard to construct a positive test using the \TeX \if commands—as in \flush@notes above. One types
XII Restoring footnotes and penalties

\@xloop \if \else \repeat, and the action following \else is repeated as long as the \if test fails. (This macro will work wherever the Plain \TeX \loop is used, too, so we could just call it \loop; but it seems preferable not to change the definitions of any of the standard macros.)

This variant of \loop was introduced by Alois Kabelschacht in \textit{TUGboat} 8 (1987), pp. 184–5.

\begin{verbatim}
\def\@xloop#1\repeat{%
  \def\body{#1\expandafter\body\fi}
  \body
}\end{verbatim}

XII.4 Text before notes

\@set@Xtxtbeforenotes

The \@set@Xtxtbeforenotes macro resets the Xtxtbeforesnotes@⟨series⟩@typeset boolean to false. Just before the first note of the ⟨series⟩ in a page, the \Xtextbeforenotes will be inserted.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\set@Xtxtbeforenotes}{%
  \unless\ifnocritical%
  \do{#1}{%
    \nottoggle{Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce@#1}{%
      \global\togglefalse{Xtxtbeforesnotes@#1@typeset}%
    }%
  }%}
  \dolistloop{@series}%
  \fi%
}\end{verbatim}

\@set@txtbeforenotesX

The \@set@txtbeforenotesX does the same for the \txtbeforenotesX.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\set@txtbeforenotesX}{%
  \unless\ifnofamiliar%
  \do{#1}{%
    \nottoggle{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX@#1}{%
      \global\togglefalse{txtbeforesnotesX@#1@typeset}%
    }%
  }%}
  \dolistloop{@series}%
  \fi%
}\end{verbatim}

\@insert@Xtxtbeforenotes \@insert@txtbeforenotesX

\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{⟨series⟩}, called when inserting a familiar footnote, will insert the text before the note if it is not already inserted. For paragraphed footnotes, it will insert it as a component of the first footnote. For other types of footnotes, it will insert it as a regular footnote.

\insert@txtbeforenotesX is the same for familiar footnotes.
XIII Critical footnotes

The footnote macros are adapted from those in Plain TeX, but they differ in these respects: the outer-level commands must add other commands to a list macro rather than doing insertions immediately; there are many separate levels of the footnotes, not just one; and there are options to reformat footnotes into paragraphs or into multiple columns.

XIII.1 Fonts

Before getting into the details of formatting the notes, we set up some font macros. It is the notes that present the greatest challenge for our font-handling mechanism, because we need to be able to take fragments of our main text and print them in different forms: it is common to reduce the size, for example, without otherwise changing the fonts used.

\select@lemmafont
\select@@lemmafont

\select@lemmafont is provided to set the right font for the lemma in a note. This macro extracts the font specifier from the line and page number cluster, and issues the associated font-changing command, so that the lemma is printed in its original font.

\footnoteoptions@

The \footnoteoptions@[⟨side⟩]{⟨options⟩}{⟨value⟩} changes the value of on options of Xfootnote, to switch between true and false.

\footnoteoptions@

\newcommand*{\footnoteoptions@}[3]{%
XIII.3  Notes language

\footnotelang@lua
\footnotelang@lua is called to remember the information about the direction of a lemma when LuaLaTeX is used.

\newcommandx*{\footnotelang@lua}[1][1=L, usedefault]{%  \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}}\to\inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@count\@ne%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}}\to\inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@count\@ne% \}%  \}}%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@countR\@ne%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@countR\@ne% \}%%}

\footnotelang@poly
\footnotelang@poly is called to remember the information about the language of a lemma when polyglossia is used.

\newcommandx*{\footnotelang@poly}[1][1=L, usedefault]{%  \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%  \if@RTL%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}\to\inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@count\@ne%  \else%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}\to\inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma  \global\advance\insert@count\@ne%  \fi%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@lang}{\expandonce\languagename}}\to\inserts@list%Know the language of lemma  \global\advance\insert@count\@ne%  \}%%  \if@RTL%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma  \global\advance\insert@countR\@ne%  \else%  \xright@appenditem{% \csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}\to\inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma  \global\advance\insert@countR\@ne%  \fi%}
XIII.4 General survey of the way we manage notes

The processing of each note is done by four principal macros: the \vfootnote macro takes the text of the footnote and does the \insert; it calls on the \footfmt macro to select the right fonts, print the line number and lemma, and do any other formatting needed for that individual note. Within the output routine, the two other macros, \footstart and \footgroup, are called; the first prints extra vertical space and a footnote rule, if desired; the second does any reformatting of the whole set of the footnotes in this series for this page—such as paragraphing or division into columns—and then sends them to the page.

These four macros, and the other macros and parameters shown here, are distinguished by the “series letter” that indicates which set of the footnotes we are dealing with—A, B, C, D, or E. The series letter always precedes the string foot in macro and parameter names. Hence, for the A series, the four macros are called \vAfootnote, \Afootfmt, \Afootstart, and \Afootgroup.

These macros are changed depending on the footnote arrangement: “normal”, “paragraphed”, “two columns” or “three columns”.

XIII.5 General setup

\footsplitskips

Some setup code that is common for a variety of the footnotes. The setup is for:

- \interlinepenalty.
- \splittopskip (skip before last part of notes that flow from one page to another).
- \splitmaxdepth.
- \floatingpenalty, that is penalty values being added when a long note flows from one page to another. Here, we let it to 0 when we process parallel pages in \eledpar, in order to allow notes to flow from left to right pages and vice-versa. Otherwise, we let it to \@MM, which is the standard \LaTeX \floatingpenalty.

\newcommand*{\footsplitskips}{% 
\interlinepenalty=\interfootnotelinepenalty 
\unless\ifdprintingpages
\else\floatingpenalty=\@MM
%\fi
\fi
\splittopskip=\ht\strutbox \splitmaxdepth=\dp\strutbox}
XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement

XIII.6.1 User level macro

We can now define all the parameters for the series of footnotes; initially they use the "normal" footnote formatting.

What we want to do here is to insert something like the following for each footnote series. (This is an example, not part of the actual \reledmac code.)

\skip\Afootins=12pt plus5pt minus5pt
\count\Afootins=1000
\dimen\Afootins=0.8\vsize
\let\vAfootnote=normalvfootnote \let\Afootfmt=normalfootfmt
\let\Afootstart=normalfootstart \let\Afootgroup=normalfootgroup
\let\Afootnoterule=normalfootnoterule

(Read The TeXbook in order to understand what are the counter, skip and dimen associated to an insertion.)
Instead of repeating ourselves, we define a `\arrangement@normal` macro that makes all these assignments for us, for any given series letter. This command is called when people use `\arrangement[(\textit{series})]{normal}`

Now we set up the `\arrangement@normal` macro itself. It takes one argument: the footnote series letter.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\arrangement@normal}[1]{%
\csgdef{series@display#1}{normal}
\expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\normalfootstart
\expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\normalvfootnote
\expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\normalfootfmt
\expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\normalfootgroup
\expandafter\let\csname #1footnoterule\endcsname=\normalfootnoterule
\count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{\Xmaxhnotes@#1}
\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{\Xbeforenotes@#1}%
\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{\Xafterrule@#1}%
}\end{verbatim}

The `reledpar` provides tools in order to confine notes to one side. The mechanism is explained in the `reledpar`'s handbook. For now, just retain we need to store default value of the counter associated to the notes TEX’s inserts.

\begin{verbatim}
\csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one side only%
\end{verbatim}

Now do the setup for minipage footnotes. We use as much as possible of the normal setup as we can (so the notes will have a similar layout).

\begin{verbatim}
\ifnoledgroup%@else%
\expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
\expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroup
\count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{\Xmaxhnotes@#1}
\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{\Xbeforenotes@#1}%
\advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{\Xafterrule@#1}%
\fi
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\normalvfootnote} We now begin a series of commands that do “normal” footnote formatting: a format much like that implemented in \texttt{Plain} \TeX, in which each footnote is a separate paragraph.

\texttt{\normalvfootnote} takes the series letter as \texttt{#1} and the entire text of the footnote is \texttt{#2}. It does the `\insert` for this note, calling on the `\footfmt` macro for this note series to format the text of the note.

\begin{verbatim}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnote}[2]{%
XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement

\iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{% In the case we use \Xgroupbyline, the
insertion is done later, in \add@Xgroupbyline.
\prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\normalvfootnoteinserted}{%}
}{% In the case we don't use \Xgroupbyline, the insertion is made directly
\X@beforeinsertion{#1}%
\insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{%
\X@atbegininsertion{#1}%
\normalvfootnoteinserted{#1}{#2}%
}%
}%
}%

\normalvfootnoteinserted

The \normalvfootnoteinserted macro is expanded to the content to be added to a
\insert for normal critical footnote.
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnoteinserted}{[2]}{%
\nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{\noindent}{\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
\iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{\strut}{}%
\footsplitskips
\iffl@dpairing\ifl@dpaging\else%
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\fi\fi%
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip%
\csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}%
}%%

\X@beforeinsertion
\newcommand{\X@beforeinsertion}{[1]{%}
\if@ledgroup\else%
\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
\fi%
\csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
}%

\beforeinsertion@X
\newcommand{\beforeinsertion@X}{[1]{%}
\if@ledgroup\else%
\insert@txtbeforenotesX{#1}%
\fi%
\csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
}%
And somewhat different versions of \normalvfootnote and \normalvfootnote@inserted for minipages.

\normalfootfmt
\normalfootfmt is a “normal” macro to take the footnote line and page number information (see V.9 p. 113), and the desired text, and output what’s to be printed. Argument #1 contains the line and page number information and lemma font specifier; #2 is the lemma; #3 is the note’s text; #4 is the note’s series. This version is very rudimentary—it uses \printlines to print just the range of line numbers, followed by a square bracket, the lemma, and the note text.
XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement

\normalfootstart is a standard footnote-starting macro, called in the output routine whenever there are footnotes of this series to be printed: it skips a bit and then draws a rule.

Any \footstart macro must put onto the page something that takes up space exactly equal to the \skip\Xfootins value for the associated series of notes. \TeX makes page computations based on that \skip value, and the output pages will suffer from spacing problems if what you add takes up a different amount of space.

But if the skip \Xprenotes@ is greater than 0 pt, it is used instead of \skip\footins for the first printed series in one page.

The \leftskip and \rightskip values are both zeroed here. Similarly, these skips are cancelled in the \vfootnote macros for the various types of notes. Strictly speaking, this is necessary only if you are using paragraphed footnotes, but we have put it here and in the other \vfootnote macros too so that the behavior of reledmac in this respect is general across all footnote types. What this means is that any \leftskip and \rightskip you specify applies to the main text, but not the footnotes. The footnotes continue to be of width \hsize.

The first series of notes printed in a page can have a specific skip before it. In order to insert this specific skip without overlap the bottom margin of the page, Maïeul Rouquette have defined an algorithm explained in XIX p. 254. Here is part of this algorithm, when the block of notes are ready to be printed.

And now, the problem of left and right skip for notes. Especially when using one feature of reledpar which allows to have the footnotes horizontal size as the size of columns printed by \Columns. Read XVI p. 252 for the general description of the problem.
XIII Critical footnotes

And now, print the footnote's rule to finish the footnote's introduction.

\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%

\normalfootgroup

\normalfootgroup is a standard footnote-grouping macro: it sends the contents of the footnote-insert box to the output page without alteration.

\newcommand*{\normalfootgroup}[1]{% 
  \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1} 
  \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname 
  \hsize=\old@hsize% 
}%

\mpnormalfootgroup

A somewhat different version for minipages. Note that, in this case, we do not make distinctions between the \Xfootgroup and \Xfootstarts macros.

\unless\ifnoledgroup@ 
  \newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroup}[1]{% 
    \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
    \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup% 
      \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}% 
      \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}% 
      \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}% 
      \fi\fi\normalcolor% 
    \fi\fi\normalcolor% 
    \ifl@dpairing% 
    \else% 
      \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
      \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
      \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
    \fi% 
  }% 
\else% 
  \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
  \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
  \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
\fi% 
\setlength{\parindent}{0pt} 
  \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1} 
  \unvbox\csname mp#1footins\endcsname}
XIII.6  Footnotes arrangement

XIII.6.3  Paragrapged footnotes

The paragrapged-footnote option reformats all the footnotes of one series for a page into a single paragraph; this is especially appropriate when the notes are numerous and brief. The code is based on *The TeXbook*, pp. 398–400, with alterations for our environment. This algorithm uses a considerable amount of save-stack space: a \TeX of ordinary size may not be able to handle more than about 100 notes of this kind on a page.

\texttt{\Xarrangement\@paragraph} The \texttt{\Xarrangement\@paragraph} macro sets up everything for one series of the footnotes so that they will be paragraphed; it takes the series letter as argument. We include the setting of \texttt{\count\footins} to 1000 for the footnote series just in case user is switch- ing to paragraphed footnotes after having columnar ones, since they change this value (see below).

The argument of \texttt{\Xarrangement\@footparagraph} is the letter denoting the series of notes to be paragraphed.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\Xarrangement@paragraph}[1]{%
  \csgdef{series@display#1}{paragraph}
  \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\parafootstart
  \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\paravfootnote
  \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\parafootfmt
  \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\parafootgroup
  \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
  \csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one side only
  \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
  \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
  \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
  \para@footsetup{#1}
  \%
  And the extra setup for minipages.
  \ifnoledgroup@\else
    \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpparavfootnote
    \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpparafootgroup
    \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
    \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
    \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
    \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
  \fi
  \%
%
\footfudgefiddle For paragrapged footnotes \TeX has to estimate the amount of space required. If it under-estimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. \texttt{\footfudgefiddle} can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 70) to increase the estimate.

  \providecommand{\footfudgefiddle}{64}
  %
\end{verbatim}
Critical footnotes

\footparagraph calls the \para@footsetup macro to calculate a special fudge factor, which is the ratio of the \baselineskip to the \hsize. We assume that the proper value of \baselineskip for the footnotes (normally 9 pt) has been set already. The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

Peter Wilson thinks that \columnwidth should be used here for \TeX not \hsize. Peter Wilson have also included \footfudgefiddle.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\para@footsetup}[1]{\csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}
\ifcempty{Xwidth@#1}{\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax}\% 
\dimen0=\baselineskip
\multiply\dimen0 by 1024
\divide\dimen0 by \columnwidth
\multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\relax
\csxdef{#1footfudgefactor}{\expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
\end{verbatim}

\strip@pt strip the characters pt from a dimen value.

\parafootstart is the same as \normalfootstart, but we give it again to ensure that \rightskip and \leftskip are zeroed (this needs to be done before \para@footgroup in the output routine). The size of paragraphed notes is calculated using a fudge factor which in turn is based on \hsize. So the paragraph of notes needs to be that wide.

The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\parafootstart}[1]{\rightskip=0pt \leftskip=0pt\% 
\Xsetparindent{#1}\% 
\ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{}{\iftoggle{Xprenotes@}{\togglefalse{Xprenotes@}\% 
\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\glueexpr\csuse{Xprenotes@}+\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}\relax\% 
}\% \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname\% 
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}\% 
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}\% 
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}\%
\old@bidi@RTL@everypar\@empty\%
\noindent\leavevmode\%
\endverbatim

\vspace{1cm}
The initial model for this insertion is, of course, the \insert\footins definition in *The TeXbook*, p. 398. There, the footnotes are first collected up in hboxes, and these hboxes are later unpacked and stuck together into a paragraph.

However, Michael Downes has pointed out that because text in hboxes gets typeset in restricted horizontal mode, there are some undesirable side-effects if you later want to break such text across lines. In restricted horizontal mode, where \TeX{} does not expect to have to break lines, it does not insert certain items like \discretionary{s}. If you later unbox these hboxes and stick them together, as the *TeXbook* macros do to make these footnotes, you lose the ability to hyphenate after an explicit hyphen. This can lead to overfull \hboxes when you would not expect to find them, and to the uninitiated it might be very hard to see why the problem had arisen\footnote{Michael Downes, “Line Breaking in \unhbox ed Text”, *TUGboat* 11 (1990), pp. 605–612.}

Wayne Sullivan pointed out to us another subtle problem that arises from the same cause: \TeX{} also leaves the \language whatsit nodes out of the horizontal list\footnote{See *The TeXbook*, p. 455 (editions after January 1990).}. So changes from one language to another will not invoke the proper hyphenation rules in such footnotes. Since critical editions often do deal with several languages, especially in a footnotes, we really ought to get this bit of code right.

To get around these problems, Wayne suggested emendations to the *TeXbook* versions of these macros which are broadly the same as those described by Michael: the central idea (also suggested by Donald Knuth in a letter to Michael) is to avoid collecting the text in an \hbox in the first place, but instead to collect it in a \vbox whose width is (virtually) infinite. The text is therefore typeset in unrestricted horizontal mode, as a paragraph consisting of a single long line. Later, there is an extra level of unboxing to be done: we have to unpack the \vbox, as well as the hboxes inside it, but that is not too hard. For details, we refer you to Michael’s article, where the issues are clearly explained\footnote{Wayne supplied his own macros to do this, but since they were almost identical to Michael’s, Peter Wilson have used the latter’s \Xunvxh macro since it is publicly documented.}. Michael’s unboxing macro is called \Xunvxh: \unvbox, extract the last line, and unhbox it.

Doing things this way has an important consequence: as Michael pointed out, you really can’t put an explicit line-break into a note built in a \vbox the way we are doing\footnote{“Line Breaking”, p. 610.}. In other words, be very careful not to use \break, or \penalty-10000, or any equivalent inside your para-footnote. If you do, most of the note will probably disappear. You are allowed to make strong suggestions; in fact \penalty-9999 will be quite okay. Just do not make the break mandatory. We have not applied any of Michael’s solutions...
here, since we feel that the problem is exiguous, and \texttt{relmac} is quite baroque enough already. If you think you are having this problem, look up Michael’s solutions.

One more thing: we set \texttt{\leftskip} and \texttt{\rightskip} to zero. This has the effect of neutralizing any such skips which may apply to the main text (cf. XIII.6.2 p. 197 above). We need to do this, since \texttt{\footfudgefactor} is calculated on the assumption that the notes are \texttt{\hsize} wide.

So, finally, here is the modified foot-paragraph code, which sets the footnote in vertical mode so that language and discretionary nodes are included.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\paravfootnote}[2]{$\%$
\csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}$\%$
\insert\csname #1footins\endcsname
\bgroup
\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
\footsplitskips
\setbox0=vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen
\let\bidi\@empty
\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}$\%$
\noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}
\csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}$\%$
\setbox0=\vbox{\Xunvxh{0}{#1}}$
\dp0=0pt$
\ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0$
$\%$
\if@RTL\noindent \leavevmode\fi\box0$
\penalty0$
\egroup}$
$\%$
\end{verbatim}

Here we produce the contents of the footnote from box 0, and add a penalty of 0 between boxes in this insert.

\begin{verbatim}
\if@RTL\noindent \leavevmode\fi\box0
\penalty0
\egroup$
$\%$
\end{verbatim}

The final penalty of 0 was added here at Wayne’s suggestion to avoid a weird page-breaking problem, which occurs on those occasions when \TeXX attempts to split foot paragraphs. After trying out such a split (see \textit{The TeXbook}, p. 124), \TeXX inserts a penalty of \texttt{−10000} here, which nearly always forces the break at the end of the whole footnote paragraph (since individual notes can’t be split) even when this leads to an overfull vbox. The change above results in a penalty of 0 instead which allows, but does not force, such breaks. This penalty of 0 is later removed, after page breaks have been decided, by the \texttt{\unpenalty} macro in \texttt{\makehboxofhboxes}. So it does not affect how the footnote paragraphs are typeset (the notes still have a penalty of \texttt{−10} between them, which is added by \texttt{\parafootfmt}).

\texttt{\mparavfootnote} This version is for minipages.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\mparavfootnote}[2]{$\%$
\global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{$\%$
\unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}$\%$
\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}$\%$
\end{verbatim}
Here is (modified) Michael’s definition of \unvxh, used above. Michael’s macro also takes care to remove some unwanted penalties and glue that Te\TeX automatically attaches to the end of paragraphs. When Te\TeX finishes a paragraph, it throws away any remaining glue, and then tacks on the following items: a \penalty of 10000, a \parfillskip and a \rightskip (The Te\TeXbook, pp. 99–100). \unvxh cancels these unwanted paragraph-final items using \unskip and \unpenalty.

\unvxh is \normalfootfmt adapted to do the special stuff needed for paragraphed notes — leaving out the \endgraf at the end, sticking in special penalties and kern and leaving out the \footstrut. The first argument is the line and page number information, the second is the lemma, the third is the text of the footnote, and the fourth is the series (optional, for backward compatibility).
Note that in the above definition, the penalty of $-10$ encourages a line break between notes, so that notes have a slight tendency to begin on new lines. The \texttt{\textbackslash \InsertParaFootSep} command is used to insert the \texttt{\textbackslash \ParaFootSep@Series} between each note in the same page.

\texttt{\textbackslash ParaFootGroup} This footgroup code is modelled on the macros in \textit{The TeXbook}, p. 399. The only difference is the \texttt{\unpenalty} in \texttt{\MakeHboxOfHboxes}, which is there to remove the penalty of 0 which was added to the end of each footnote by \texttt{\ParaFootNote}.

The call to \texttt{\textbackslash \TextFontSize@()} is to ensure that the correct \texttt{\baselineskip} for the footnotes is used. The argument is the note series letter.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\ParaFootGroup}[1]{% 
\hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax% 
\unbox\csname #1footins\endcsname
\ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}% 
\ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}% 
\makehboxofhboxes
\setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
\csuse{Xhboxgroup@#1}%
\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
\unhbox0\par%
\global\hsize=\old@hsize%}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash \MpparaFootGroup} The minipage version.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\MpparaFootGroup}[1]{% 
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
\ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
\leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
\marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
\marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
\fi\fi\normalcolor
\ifparledgroup%
\ifl@dpairing%
\else%
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%%
\fi%
\else%
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
\fi%
\end{verbatim}
And finally, the two macros which are required to transform the long horizontal box stored in the insert' box to a printable text.

\makehboxofhboxes:
\newcommand*{\makehboxofhboxes}{\setbox0=\hbox{}\%}
\loop
\unpenalty
\setbox2=\lastbox
\ifhbox2
\setbox0=\hbox{\box2\unhbox0}\%\repeat
\newcommand*{\removehboxes}{\setbox0=\lastbox\%\ifhbox0{\removehboxes}\unhbox0 \fi}
% Insertion of the footnotes separator
The command \Xinsertparafootsep{⟨series⟩} must be called at the beginning of \parafootftm.

\prevpage@num:
\newcommand{\Xinsertparafootsep}{[1]}\%
\ifledRcol0\%
\ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@numR}}{\page@numR}\%
  {\ifsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
   {\ifcsequal{prevline#1}{lineinfo0}\%
    {\ifcsemempty{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}}{}
    \csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
  }%
\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}%
}%
\global\csname #1prevpage@numR\endcsname=\page@numR%
\else%
\ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@num}}{\page@num}\%
  {\ifsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
   {\ifcsequal{prevline#1}{lineinfo0}\%
    {\ifcsemempty{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}}{}
    \csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
  }%
\global\csname #1prevpage@num\endcsname=\page@num%
\else%
XIII.6.4 Columnar footnotes

Common tools

We will now define macros for three-column notes and two-column notes. Both sets of macros will use \texttt{\rigidbalance}, which splits a box (~#1~) into a number (~#2~) of columns, each with a space (~#3~) between the top baseline and the top of the \vbox. The \texttt{\rigidbalance} macro is taken from \textit{The TeXbook}, p. 397, with a slight change to the syntax of the arguments so that they do not depend on white space. Note also the extra unboxing in \texttt{\splitoff}, which allows the new \vbox to have its natural height as it goes into the alignment.

The \texttt{\@line} macro has no relationship to the TeX \line. The \LaTeX\ equivalent is \texttt{\@@line}.

We do not call directly \texttt{\rigidbalance}, but we call \texttt{\Xrigidbalance} for critical notes and \texttt{\rigidbalanceX} for familiar notes. Both of them call \texttt{\rigidbalance}.

\newcount\@k \newdimen\@h
\newcommand*{\Xrigidbalance}[3]{\hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@\@currentseries}\relax\relax
\rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}}
\newcommand*{\rigidbalanceX}[3]{\hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@\@currentseries}\relax\relax
\rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}}
\newcommand*{\rigidbalance}[3]{\setbox0=\box#1 \@k=#2 \@h=#3
\@@line{\splittopskip=\@h \vbadness=\@M \hfilneg \valign{##\vfil\cr\dosplits}}}
\newcommand*{\dosplits}{\ifnum\@k>0 \noalign{\hfil}\splitoff\global\advance\@k-1\cr\dosplits\fi
\global\advance\@k-1\cr}\global\unvbox2}
\newcommand*{\splitoff}{\dimen0=\ht0 \divide\dimen0 by\@k \advance\dimen0 by\@h \setbox2 \vsplit0 to \dimen0 \unvbox2}
Three columns

\texttt{\newcommand*{\Xarrangement@threecol}{[1]{%}
\csgdef{series@display#1}{threecol}
\expanded\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\threecolvfootnote
\expanded\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\threecolfootfmt
\dimen\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}\%
\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}\%
\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}\%
\threecolfootsetup{#1}}}

The additional setup for minipages.

\texttt{\ifnoledgroup@else
\expanded\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
\expanded\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroup
\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}\%
\advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}\%
\mpthreecolfootsetup{#1}
\fi
}

The \texttt{\footstart} and \texttt{\footnoterule} macros for these notes assume the normal values \texttt{XIII.6.2 p. 197} above.

\texttt{\threecolfootsetup} The \texttt{\threecolfootsetup} macro calculates and sets some numbers for three-column footnotes.

We set the \texttt{\count} of the foot insert to 333. Each footnote can be thought of as contributing only one third of its height to the page, since the footnote insertion has been made as a long narrow column, which then gets trisected by the \texttt{\rigidbalance} routine (inside \texttt{\threecolfootgroup}). These new, shorter columns are saved in a box, and then that box is put back into the footnote insert, replacing the original collection of the footnotes. This new box is, therefore, only about a third of the height of the original one.

The \texttt{\dimen} value for this note series has to change in the inverse way: it needs to be three times the actual limit on the amount of space these notes are allowed to fill on the page, because when \TeX is accumulating material for the page and checking that limit, it does not apply the \texttt{\count} scaling.
\texttt{\textbackslash{mpthreecolfootsetup}} The setup for minipages.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetup}[1]{\protect \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 333 \protect \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{threecolvfootnote}} This is the \texttt{\textbackslash{footnote}} command for three-column notes. However, most of the code is deported on \texttt{\textbackslash{threecolvfootnote@inserted}}. The call to \texttt{\textbackslash{Xnotefontsize@}} ensures that the \texttt{\textbackslash{splittopskip}} and \texttt{\textbackslash{splitmaxdepth}} take their values from the right \texttt{\textbackslash{strutbox}}: the one used in a footnotes. Note especially the importance of temporarily reducing the \texttt{\textbackslash{hsize}} to 0.3 of its normal value. This determines the widths of the individual columns. So if the normal \texttt{\textbackslash{hsize}} is (say) 10 cm, then each column will be \(0.3 \times 10 = 3\) cm wide, leaving a gap of 1 cm spread equally between columns (i.e., 0.5 cm between each).

The arguments are \#1 the note series letter and \#1 the full text of the note (including numbers, lemma and text).

\begin{verbatim}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnote}[2]{\protect \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{\protect \prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\threecolvfootnote@inserted}}{\let\bidi@RTL@everypar\relax\X@beforeinsertion{#1}\insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{\threecolvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}}}%}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{threecolvfootnote@inserted}}

\begin{verbatim}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnote@inserted}[2]{\protect \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax\protect \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}\protect \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\protect \footsplitskips\protect \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}}%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{threecolfootfmt}} \texttt{\textbackslash{threecolfootfmt}} is the command that formats one note. The arguments are \#1 the line numbers, \#2 the lemma and \#4 the text of the \texttt{-footnote} command \#4 optional (for backward compatibility): the series.

\begin{verbatim}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolfootfmt}[4]{%}
\end{verbatim}
XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement

\threecol@begin@insert

The \texttt{\textbackslash threecol@begin@insert} contains code used at the beginning of any \texttt{\textbackslash insert} for critical footnotes in three columns. It is used both by \texttt{\textbackslash threecolfootfmt} and by \texttt{\textbackslash insert@Xtxtbeforenotes}.

\newcommand*{\texttt{\textbackslash threecol@begin@insert}}[1]{%
  \normal@pars%
  \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}%
  {\hsize \csuse{Xhsizethreecol@#1}}%
  \Xsetparindent{#1}%
  \tolerance=5000%
  \Xsethangindent{#1}%
  \@tempdima=\parindent%
  \csuse{Xcolalign@#1}%
  \parindent=\@tempdima%
  \strut%
}%
%
\texttt{\textbackslash threecolfootgroup}

And here is the \texttt{\textbackslash threecolfootgroup} macro that is called within the output routine to regroup the notes into three columns. Once again, the call to \texttt{\Xnotefontsize@\{s\}} is there to ensure that it is the right \texttt{\textbackslash splittopskip}—the one used in footnotes—which is used to provide the third argument for \texttt{\rigidbalance}. This third argument (\texttt{\@h}) is the \texttt{\topskip} for the box containing the text of the footnotes, and does the job of making sure the top lines of the columns line up horizontally. In \textit{The TeXbook}, p. 398, Donald Knuth suggests retrieving the output of \texttt{\rigidbalance}, putting it back into the insertion box, and then printing the box. Here, we just print the \texttt{\line} which comes out of \texttt{\rigidbalance} directly, without any re-boxing.

\newcommand*{\texttt{\textbackslash threecolfootgroup}}[1]{%
  \begingroup%
  \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
  \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
  \par%
  \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox%
  \expandafter%
  \Xrigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip%}
\mpthreecolfootgroup The setup for minipages.

\newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroup}[1]{% 
\vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
\ifdpairing\ifparledgroup%
\leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
\marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
\marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
\fi\fi
normalcolor
\ifparledgroup%
\ifdpairing%
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
\fi%
\else%
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
\fi%
\csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
\splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
\expandafter\Xrigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}%

Two columns

\Xarrangement@twocol The additional setup for minipages.

\newcommand*{\Xarrangement@twocol}[1]{% 
\csgdef{series@display#1}{twocol}
\expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\twocolvfootnote
\expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\twocolfootfmt
\expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\twocolfootgroup
\setulen{\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}}%
\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
\twocolfootsetup{#1}%
}

The additional setup for minipages.

\ifnoledgroup\else
\expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mptwocolnormalvfootnote
\expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroup
\fi

Here is a series of macros which are very similar to their three-column counterparts. In this case, each note is assumed to contribute only a half a line of text. And the notes are set in columns giving a gap between them of one tenth of the \hsize.

\newcommand*{\twocolfootsetup}[1]{%
\count\csname #1footins\endcsname 500
\csxdef{default@#1footins}{500}%
multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@%
%
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolvfootnote}[2]{%
\iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{%
\prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\twocolvfootnote@inserted}%
}%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\let\bidi@RTL@everypar\relax%
\X@beforeinsertion{#1}%
\insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{%
\twocolvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}%
}%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmt}[4]{%
\Xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
\twocol@begin@insert{#4}%
\hspace{\parindent}%
\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
\print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
\csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
\nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}{}%
}%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmt}[4]{% 4th arg is optional, for backward compatibility
\Xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
\twocol@begin@insert{#4}%
\hspace{\parindent}%
\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
\print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
\csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
\nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}{}%
}
The versions for minipages.

\newcommand{\mptwocolfootsetup}[1]{% 
\count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 500 
\multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@ 
}%

\newcommand{\mptwocolfootgroup}[1]{% 
\vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins} 
\ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup% 
\leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}% 
\marks\parledgroup@series{#1}% 
\fi\fi
\normalcolor
\ifparledgroup% 
\ifl@dpairing% 
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}% 
\else% 
\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
\print@Xfootnoterule{#1}% 
\fi% 
}%

\mptwocolfootsetup
\mptwocolfootgroup
XIII.7  Footnote paragraph indent

These two commands set the paragraph indentation of the footnotes, depending on the settings of the user.

\Xsetparindent \setparindentX

\newcommand{\Xsetparindent}[1]{% 
\nottoggle{Xparindent@#1}{% 
\parindent=\z@% 
}% 
{\ifdef{\parindent@beforestanza}{\parindent=\parindent@beforestanza}{}% 
}% 
}\newcommand{\setparindentX}[1]{% 
\nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{% 
\parindent=\z@% 
}{\ifdef{\parindent@beforestanza}{\parindent=\parindent@beforestanza}{}% 
}% 
}%

XIII.8  Footnote hanging indent

\Xsethangindent \sethangindentX

\newcommand{\Xsethangindent}[1]{% \if@RTL\hangindent=-\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}% \everypar{\hangindent=-\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}}% \else\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}% \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}}% \fi%}
XIII.9 Critical notes presentation

Here, we define some commons macro which are used in order to print a critical notes, that is a note with 1) line number 2) lemma 3) lemma separator 4) text associated to the lemma.

XIII.9.1 Font tools

The fonts that are used for printing notes might not have the character mapping we expect: for example, the Computer Modern font that contains old-style numerals does not contain an en-dash or square brackets, and its period and comma are in odd locations. To allow use of the standard footnote macros with such fonts, we use the following macros for certain characters.

The \endashchar macro is simply an en-dash from the normal font and is immune to changes in the surrounding font. The same goes for the full stop. These two are used in \printlines. The right bracket macro is the same again; it crops up in \normalfootfmt and the other footnote macros for controlling the format of the footnotes.

Note that these commands are not directly called by reledmac, but are enclosed as default value of specific hooks. Consequently, people should not redefine them, but use instead the \Xlinerangeseparator, \Xendlinerangeseparator, \Xsublinesep, \Xendsublinesep and \Xlemmaseparator macros.

With polyglossia, each critical note has a \footnote@lang which shows the language of the lemma, and which can be used to switch the bracket from right to left.
XIII.9 Critical notes presentation

### XIII.9.2 Pstart number in footnote

The \texttt{printpstart} macro prints the pstart number for a note.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\printpstart}{%0
  \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{l@dprintingcolumns}}{%\ndeflRcol%\thepstartR%\else%\thepstartL%\fi%}{\thepstart%}
\end{verbatim}

### XIII.9.3 Lemma printing

\texttt{print@lemma} is called inside critical footnotes to print the lemma and the lemma separator (#1: line number and font information, #2: lemma, #3: series).

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\print@lemma}{3}{%
\nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#3}%\select@lemmafont#1|%\n\csuse{Xlemmafont@#3}%\csuse{Xwraplemma@#3}{#2}%\n\iftoggle{nosep@}{%\hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%\relax%}{%\ifcsempty{Xlemmaseparator@#3}%\hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%\relax%
\end{verbatim}
XIII.9.4 Line number printing

\Xstorelineinfo The \Xstorelineinfo macro is used to store some data about line number of the current critical footnote, data which will be reused later for the \Xnumberonlyfirstinline and related setting.

#1 footnote specification for the current footnote; #2 footnote series.

\newcommand{\Xstorelineinfo}[2]{\l@dp@rsefootspec#1|\iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{\xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub - \l@dparsedendline - \l@dparsedendsub}}{\xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub}}}

\printlinefootnote The \printlinefootnote macro is called in each \texttt{footfmt} command. It controls whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote. The printing of the line number is shared in \printlinefootnotenumbers.

\newcommand{\printlinefootnote}[2]{\@currentseries{#2}\iftoggle{nonum@}{\hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}}{\iftoggle{Xnonumber@#2}{\hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}}{\xspace}}
XIII.9 Critical notes presentation

\%
{\iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#2}\% If for this series the line number must be printed only in the first time.
{\%
   \ifcsdef{prevline#2}\%
     \%Be sure the prevline exists.
     \ifcsequal{prevline#2}{lineinfo0}\%Try it
       {\%
         \ifcsequal{Xsymlinenum@#2}\%
         \%
           \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}\%
           \printsymlinefootnotearea{#2}\%
           \%
           \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}\%
         \%
         \%
         \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}\%
         \%
       \}%
     \%
     \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}\%
     \%
   \}%
   \%
   \csxdef{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}\%
}%
}%
\%

\printsymlinefootnotearea\% This macro prints the space before the line symbol, changes the font, when prints the line symbol and the space after it.
\newcommand{\printsymlinefootnotearea}[1]{\%
   \hspace{\csuse{Xbeforesymlinenum@1}}\%
   \csuse{Xnotenumfont@1}\%
   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@1}}{\z@}{\csuse{Xsymlinenum@1}}\%
   \hbox to \csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@1}\%{\hfill}{\csuse{Xsymlinenum@1}\%}
   \hspace{\csuse{Xaftersymlinenum@1}}\%
}\%

\printlinefootnotearea\% This macro prints the space before the line number, changes the font, then prints the line number and the space after it. It is called by \printlinefootnote depending on
the options about repeating line numbers. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.)

```latex
\newcommand{\printlinefootnotearea}[2]{% 
  \printXbeforenumber{#2}\
  \csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}\
  \boxfootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}\
  \printXafternumber{#2}\
}\%
%
\boxfootnotenumbers Depending on the user settings, this macro will box line numbers (or not). The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous \printlinefootnotearea calls it.

\newcommand{\boxfootnotenumbers}[2]{% 
  \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}{% 
    \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}\
  }{% 
    \hbox to \csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}\
      {\IfSubStr{RC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}% 
      \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}\
      \IfSubStr{LC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}% 
    }% 
  }% 
}\%
%
\printlinefootnotenumbers This macro prints, if needed, the pstart number and the line number. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous \printlinefootnote call it.

\newcommand{\printlinefootnotenumbers}[2]{% 
  \get@pstartcounter% 
  \ifboolexpr{% 
    (togl{Xpstart@#2} and bool{numberpstart})% 
    or togl{Xpstarteverytime@#2}% 
    and not (% 
    togl{Xpstartonlyfirst@#2}% 
    and test \{ifnumequal{\csuse{Xprevpstart@#2}}{\current@pstart}\% 
  )% 
  }{% 
    \printpstart% 
    \csuse{Xpstartseparator@#2}%; 
  }% 
  \global\cslet{Xprevpstart@#2}{\current@pstart}% 
  \get@stanzacounter% 
}
A single macro to get the current pstart counter.

\newcommand{\getpstartcounter}[0]{%  
  \ifboolexpr{bool{1@dprintingpages} or bool{1@dprintingcolumns}}{%  
    {%  
      \ifledRcol%  
        \global\numdef{current@pstart}{\the{c@pstartR}}%  
      \else%  
        \global\numdef{current@pstart}{\the{c@pstartL}}%  
      \fi%  
    }%  
  }%  
  \%  
  %}

The same to get the current stanza counter.

\newcommand{\getstanzacounter}[0]{%  
  \ifboolexpr{bool{1@dprintingpages} or bool{1@dprintingcolumns}}{%  
    {%  
      \ifledRcol%  
        \global\numdef{current@stanza}{\the{c@stanzaR}}%  
      \else%  
        \global\numdef{current@stanza}{\the{c@stanzaL}}%  
      \fi%  
    }%  
  }%  
  \%  
  %}
\texttt{\textbackslash printXbeforenumber} This macro prints a space (before the line number) in footnote. It is called by \texttt{\textbackslash printlinefootnotearea}. Its only argument is the note series (A, B, C, etc.)

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\printXbeforenumber}{\hspace{\csuse{Xbeforenumber@#1}}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash printXafternumber} This macro prints the space, adding eventually a \texttt{\nobreak}, after the line number, in footnote. It is called by \texttt{\textbackslash printlinefootnotearea}. Its only argument is the series

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\printXafternumber}{\iftoggle{Xnonbreakableafternumber@#1}{\nobreak}{}\hspace{\csuse{Xafternumber@#1}}}
\end{verbatim}

If we have decided to print the line number in a specific notes, the \texttt{\textbackslash printlines} macro prints the line numbers for a note—which, in the general case, is a rather complicated task. The seven parameters of the argument are the line numbers as stored in \texttt{\l@d@nums}, in the form described on V.9 p. 113: the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma.

EDMAC’ creator have defined six boolean in order to know which component of line number description we have to print:

- \texttt{\ifl@d@pnum} for page numbers;
- \texttt{\ifl@d@ssub} for starting sub-line;
- \texttt{\ifl@d@elin} for ending line;
- \texttt{\ifl@d@esl} for ending sub-line; and
- \texttt{\ifl@d@dash} for the dash between the starting and ending groups.

There was no boolean for the line number because it was always printed. Maïeul Rouquette has added:

- \texttt{\ifl@d@Xtwolines} and \texttt{\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines} to print a symbol which stands for “and subsequent” when there are two, three or more lines;
- \texttt{\@annot@start@print} and \texttt{\@annot@end@print} which define annotations associated with the starting and ending line numbers in critical footnotes;
- \texttt{\ifl@d@Xlinenumber}, which value depends on the configuration of \texttt{\Xnolinenumber} and \texttt{\Xnolinenumberifannotation}. 
\l@dparsefootspec \l@dparsefootspec{\langle spec\rangle}{\langle lemma\rangle}{\langle text\rangle} parses a footnote specification. \langle lemma\rangle and \langle text\rangle are the lemma and text respectively. \langle spec\rangle is the line and page number and lemma font specifier in \l@d@nums style format. The real work is done by \l@dparsefootspec which defines macros holding the numeric values. In many cases, this last command is called directly. Just a reminder of the arguments:

\l@dparsedstartpage \l@dparsedstartline \l@dparsedstartsub \l@dparsedendpage \l@dparsedendline \l@dparsedendsub

\setprintlines #1 | #2 | #3 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #7
\prints lines start-page | line | subline | end-page | line | subline | fontflag
\setprintlines

Initialise the several number value macros.

\l@dparsedstartpage(0)\%
\l@dparsedstartline(0)\%
\l@dparsedstartsub(0)\%
\l@dparsedendpage(0)\%
\l@dparsedendline(0)\%
\l@dparsedendsub(0)\%

The macro \setprintlines does the work of deciding what numbers should be printed. Its arguments are the same as the first 6 of \prints lines.
Should we print the line number? It depends on hooks and annotations.

We print the page numbers only if: 1) we are doing the lineation by page, and 2) the ending page number is different from the starting page number.

We print the ending line number if:

1. we print the ending page number;
2. or the ending line number is different from the starting line number and we didn’t disable the line number printing

If either of these conditions is true, we also print the annotation linked to the ending line number annotations.
We define the starting line number annotation as a merge of the starting annotation and ending annotation if we don’t print the ending line number. Otherwise, it is only the starting annotation.

\begin{verbatim}
\if@oddpage
\def\@annot@start@print{%
  \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{\annot@start}%
}\
\else
  \ifx\annot@start\annot@end%
    \unless\ifx\annot@start\relax%
      \def\@annot@start@print{%
        \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{\annot@start}%
      }%
    \fi
  \else
    \ifx\annot@end@print\relax%
      \def\@annot@start@print{%
        \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{%}
          \ifx\annot@start\empty\else%
            \annot@start%
          \fi%
        \ifdefined\linerangesep%
          \linerangesep%
        \else%
          \csuse{Xlinerangeseparator@\@currentseries}%
        \fi%
      }%
    \fi
    \annot@end%
  \fi
\fi
\end{verbatim}

We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

\begin{verbatim}
\l@oddssubfalse
\ifnum\#3=0 \else
  \l@oddssubtrue
\fi
\end{verbatim}
We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

However, if the `\Xtwolines` is set for the current series, we do not print the last line number.
If the \texttt{Xnoidenticalinenumannotation} is set for this series, we check if the ending annotation is identical to the starting. If true, we don’t print the ending annotation.

\begin{verbatim}
\if\Xnoidenticalinenumannotation\@currentseries\%
  \iftoggle{\Xnoidenticalinenumannotation\@currentseries}{
    \if\annot@start\annot@end\%
      \let\annot@end@print\relax\%
      \ifboolexpr{%Do not print the dash if we do not print the line number
        test {\ifdefempty{\linenumrep}\%}
        or not bool {\l@d@Xlinenumber}\%
      }{\l@d@dashfalse\%}{\fi\%}
    \fi\%
  \fi\%
\fi\%
\end{verbatim}

Finally, we check for \texttt{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst} and \texttt{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo}, and we redefine, if required, \texttt{\annot@start@print} and \texttt{\annot@end@print}. We also store the current line number annotations.

\begin{verbatim}
\iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo\@currentseries}{
    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo\@currentseries}{
      \if\annot@start\annot@end\%
      \global\cslet{prevannot@start\@currentseries}{\annot@start}
      \global\cslet{prevannot@end\@currentseries}{\annot@end}
      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
        \def\annot@start@print{
          \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{\xwraplinenumannotation\@currentseries}{\csuse{\xysymlinenumannotation\@currentseries}}
        }\%
        \let\annot@end@print\relax\%
      }{\iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
          \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
            \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
              \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                          \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                            \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                              \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                          \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                            \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                              \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                          \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                            \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                              \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                          \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                            \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                              \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                  \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                    \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                      \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                        \iftoggle{\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst\@currentseries}{
                                                                                      }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
                                                                          }\%
                                                                                        }\%
                                                                                    }\%
                                                                                  }\%
                                                                                }\%
                                                                              }\%
                                                                            }\%
The \ifistwofollowinglines boolean, used by the \Xtwolines and related setting, is set to true by \setistwofollowinglines. This command takes the following arguments:

- #1 First page number.
- #2 First line number.
- #3 Last page number.
- #4 Last line number.

If #3-#2 = 1, then that means the two lines are subsequent, and consequently \ifistwofollowinglines is set to true. However, if we use lineation by page, two given lines can be subsequent if:

- The first line number is equal to the last line number of the first page.
- The last line number is equal to 1.
- #3-#1 is equal to 1.

\setistwofollowinglines
III.9 Critical notes presentation

So, we have decided which part of line number sets will be printed depending on these values. Now we are ready to print them. If the lineation is by pstart, we print the pstart. Arguments are 1) start page number 2) start line number 3) start subline number 4) end page number 5) end line number 6) end subline number 7) font specification 8) side flag

\newcount\printlines@count
\def\printlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8| {%
  \global\advance\printlines@count by 1%
  \begingroup%

Decide which part of line number components we will print.

\setprintlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%
%
One subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could come after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period). So, first, print the start line number.

\ifdimequal\csuse{Xboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}{0pt}{\bgroup}%
  \template{Xlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{before}%
  {\@annot@start@print}%
  {}%
%
Sometime, we need to print the page number. However, if both the current page is equal to the page number and we use \Xnopagenumberifcurrent, we do not want to print it. To determine the current page, we need to use crossref mechanism. See https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/239457/7712 for explanation.

\if@nopagenumber{%
  \if@currentseries{\the\printlines@count}{#1}{1}{1}%
  \if@currentseries{\the\printlines@count}{#1}{1}{1}%
  \csuse{Xbeforepagenumber@\@currentseries}%
  \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{%}
  \csuse{Xpagelinesep@\@currentseries}%
  \fi
Then print the dash + end line number, or the range symbol.

\ifdimequal\csuse{Xboxendlinenum}@\currentseries\{0pt\}%
  {\bgroup}%
  {\hbox to \csuse{Xboxendlinenum}@\currentseries\bgroup}%
  \ifodd@Xtwolines%
    \ifodd@Xlinenumber%
      \ifodd@Xmorethantwolines%
        \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\csuse{Xmorethantwolines}@\currentseries}%
      \else%
        \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\csuse{Xtwolines}@\currentseries}%
      \fi%
    \else%
      \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\csuse{Xtwolines}@\currentseries}%
    \fi%
  \else%
    \ifodd@dash%
      \ifdef\linerangesep@%
        \linerangesep@%
      \else%
        \csuse{Xlinerangeseparator}@\currentseries%
      \fi%
    \fi%
  \fi%
  \ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition}@\currentseries\{after\}%
    {\annot@end@print}%
  \else%
    {\annot@start@print}%
  \fi%
\fi%
XIII.9 Critical notes presentation

or not togl{Xnopagenumberifcurrent0\currentseries}%
}%
\csuse{Xbeforepagenumber0\currentseries}%
\wrap@edcrossref{\this@crossref@end}{% #4%
}%
\csuse{Xpagelinesep0\currentseries}%
}%
\fi%
\ifl@d@Xlinenumber%
\ifl@d@elin%
\wrap@edcrossref{\this@crossref@end}{%
\linenumrep{#5}%
\iftoggle{Xlineflag0\currentseries}{#8}{%}%
}%
\fi%
\ifl@d@esl%
\ifl@d@elin%
\csuse{Xsublinesep0\currentseries}%
\fi%
\ifl@d@esl%
\wrap@edcrossref{\this@crossref@end}{\sublinenumrep{#6}}%
\fi%
\fi%
\ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition0\currentseries}{after}%
{%\Cannot@end@print}%
}%
\fi%
\ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxendlinenum0\currentseries}}{0pt}%
{\hfill}%Prevent underfull hbox
\egroup%
\endgroup%
}%

Prepare@Xgroupbyline

Prepare@Xgroupbyline is a macro called on the \metaXXXvfootnote if \Xgroupbyline is set to true, instead of calling \insert directly. #1 The series
#2 The content of the footnote, which is also the line number indication
#3 This macro, which prepares the contents of the insertion

\newcommand{\prepare@Xgroupbyline}[3]{%}
\iftoggle{Xgroupbylineseparetwolines0\currentseries}{%}
\l@parsefootspec#2%
\ifcsdef{#1@forinserting0\l@parsedendpage-\l@parsedendline-\l@parsedendsub}%
}
\keep@this@crossref@forinserting is called by \prepare@Xgroupbyline. It just ensures that \@this@crossref@start and \this@crossref@end value are kept in
XIV  Familiar footnotes

XIV.1  Adjacent footnotes

The original EDMAC provided users with five series of critical footnotes (\Afootnote \Bfootnote \Cfootnote \Dfootnote \Efootnote), and \LaTeX{} provides a single numbered footnote. The reledmac package uses the EDMAC mechanism to provide six series of numbered footnotes.

First, though, the footmisc package has an option whereby two or more consecutive \footnotes have their marks separated by commas. This seemed to Peter Wilson such a useful ability that it was provided automatically by eledmac.

Maïeul Rouquette has maintained this feature in reledmac, despite he thought that is not directly in relationship with the aim of reledmac.

These macros may have been defined by the memoir class, are provided by the footmisc package and perhaps by other footnote packages. That is why we use \providecommand and not \newcommand.

A pair of self-cancelling kerns. This may have been defined in the memoir class.

This may have been defined in the memoir class. If it recognises the last kern as \multiplefootnotemarker it typesets \multfootsep.
We have to modify \footnotetext and \footnotemark. However, if \texttt{memoir} is used the modifications have already been made.

\ifclassloaded{memoir}{% 
\footnotetext Add \m@mmf@prepare at the end of \footnotetext.
\apptocmd{\footnotetext}{\m@mmf@prepare}{}{}
\footnotemark Modify \footnotemark to cater for adjacent \footnote.
\patchcmd{\footnotemark}{\nobreak}{\m@mmf@check \nobreak \{}\{
\patchcmd{\footnotemark}{\@makefnmark}{\@makefnmark \m@mmf@prepare}{}{}
% Finished the modifications for the non-memoir case.
}\fi}}

\section{Regular footnotes for numbered texts}

In order to enable the regular \footnote{s} in numbered text we have to play around with its \footnotetext, using different forms for when in numbered or regular text.

\pretocmd{\footnotetext}{\ifnumberedpar \edtext{% \advance \edtext@notes by 1\% \l@dbfnote{#1}\% \else \fi\}}\apptocmd{\footnotetext}{\fi\}}\%
\texttt{\l@dbfnote} adds the footnote to the insert list, and \texttt{\vl@dbfnote} calls the original \texttt{@footnotetext}. We also patch \texttt{\footnote} in order to get the correct footnote numbers when typesetting parallel texts. This is moved into a \texttt{\get@fnmark} command.
XIV  Familiar footnotes

Some of the code for the various formats is remarkably similar to that in section ??.

**XIV.3  Footnote formats**

Some of the code for the various formats is remarkably similar to that in section ??.

The following macros generally set things up for the "standard" footnote format.

Two convenience macros for use by \...@footnotemark... macros.

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash prebodyfootmark}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash postbodyfootmark}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash prebodyfootmark}\}[]}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash postbodyfootmark}\}[]}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash ifhmode}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash edef\{\texttt{\textbackslash x@sf\{\texttt{\textbackslash the\spacefactor}\}}\}}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash m@mmf@check}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash nobreak}}

\leavevmode
\emph{\texttt{\textbackslash fi}}
XIV.4  Footnote arrangement

XIV.4.1  User level macro

\texttt{\textbackslash arrangementX[\langle series\rangle]} command calls, for each series, a specific command which set many counters and commands in order to define specific arrangement.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommandx{\arrangementX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
  \def\do##1{%\csname arrangementX@#2\endcsname{##1}%
  }%
  \ifstrempty{#1}{}{%\dolistloop{\@series}{}%\docsvlist{#1}{}%}
}%
\end{verbatim}

XIV.4.2  Normal footnotes

\texttt{\textbackslash normal@footnotemarkX[\langle series\rangle]} sets up the typesetting of the marker at the point where the footnote is called for.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\normal@footnotemarkX}[1]{%
  \prebodyfootmark
  \wrapped@bodyfootmark[#1]{%\postbodyfootmark}
}%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash normalbodyfootmarkX[\langle series\rangle]} really typesets the in-text marker. The style is the normal superscript.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\normalbodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
  \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont@thefnmark#1}}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash normalvfootnoteX[\langle series\rangle][\langle text\rangle]} does the \texttt{insert} for the \langle series\rangle and calls the series’ \texttt{\footfmt...} to format the \langle text\rangle.
\normalfootnoteX \normalfootnoteX\{\langle series\rangle\}\{\langle text\rangle\} typesets the footnote text, prepended by the marker.

\normalfootfmtX \normalfootfmtX The minipage version.

\mpnormalvfootnoteX \mpnormalvfootnoteX\{\langle series\rangle\}\{\langle text\rangle\} typesets the footnote text, prepended by the marker.
\normalfootfootmarkX  \normalfootfootmarkX{⟨series⟩} is called by \normalfootfmtX to typeset the footnote marker in the footer before the footnote text.
\newcommand*{\normalfootfootmarkX}[1]{% 
  \textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}

\normalfootstartX  \normalfootstartX{⟨series⟩} is the ⟨series⟩ footnote starting macro used in the output routine.
\newcommand*{\normalfootstartX}[1]{% 
  \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{% 
    \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{% 
      \togglefalse{prenotesX@}%% 
      \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=% 
      \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%, 
      }% 
    }% 
  }% 
  \vskip\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname%, 
  \leftskip=\z@ 
  \rightskip=\z@ 
  \ifl@dpairing\else%, 
  \hsize=\old@hsize% 
  \fi% 
  \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}% 
  \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% 
  \print@footnoteXrule{#1}% 
}%

\normalfootnoteruleX  The rule drawn before the footnote series group.
\let\normalfootnoteruleX=\footnoterule

\normalfootgroupX  \normalfootgroupX{⟨series⟩} sends the contents of the ⟨series⟩ insert box to the output page without alteration.
\newcommand*{\normalfootgroupX}[1]{% 
  \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\
  \unvbox\@nameuse{footins#1}\
  \hsize=\old@hsize%}
%

\mpnormalfootgroupX The minipage version.
\newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroupX}[1]{% 
  \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\
  \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
    \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
    \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
    \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
  \fi\fi\normalcolor
  \ifparledgroup%
    \ifl@dpairing%
      \else%
        \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
        \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
        \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
      \fi%
    \else%
      \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
      \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
      \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
    \fi%
  \else%
    \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
    \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
    \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
  \fi%
  \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\
  \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}}
%

\normalbfnoteX \texttt{#1} = footnote series, \texttt{#2} = footnote content, \texttt{#3} manual footnote number
\newcommand{\normalbfnoteX}[3]{% 
  \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
  \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
    \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
    \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
    \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
  \fi\fi\normalcolor
  \ifparledgroup%
    \ifl@dpairing%
      \else%
        \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
        \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
        \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
      \fi%
    \else%
      \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
      \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
      \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
    \fi%
  \else%
    \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
    \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
    \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
  \fi%
  \ifluatex
    \footnotelang@lua[R]\
  \fi
  \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}\text{if polyglossia}
  \else
    \{\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
  \fi
  \xright@appenditem%
  \noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
  \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
  \unexpanded{\gdef\0currentnotetype{familiar}}}
XIV.4  Footnote arrangement

\unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading}{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
\noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
\noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
\unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@ne}%
\to\inserts@listR
\global\advance\insert@countR@m@ne%
\else%
\ifluatex
\footnotelang@lua%
\fi
\ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
{}%
\footnotelang@poly%
\xright@appenditem{%
\noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
\noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
\unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{familiar}}%
\unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading}{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
\noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
\noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
\unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@ne}%
\to\inserts@list}
\global\advance\insert@countR@m@ne%
\fi
\ignorespaces}
\%  

\get@thisfootnotex  The macro \get@thisfootnotex command just saves the footnote number in the \thisfootnotex macro, depending on the use of pairing environments.

\newcommand{\get@thisfootnotex}[1][]{%
\ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
\protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
}%
\protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\csname c@footnote#1\endcsname}%
}%
\%  

\vbfnoteX  This command calls the correct footnote-inserting commands. #1 footnote series, #2 footnote content, #3 footnote counter, #4 manual footnote mark

\newcommand{\vbfnoteX}[4]{%
\get@fnmarkX This command gets the correct footnote number when typesetting parallel texts. \#1 footnote series, \#2 footnote counter, \#3 manual footnote number

\vnumfootnoteX \#1 footnote series, \#2 footnote content, \#3 manual footnote mark
arrangementX@normal \arrangementX@normal\{\langle \text{series} \rangle \} initialises the settings for the \langle \text{series} \rangle\footnotes. This should always be called for each series.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\arrangementX@normal}[1]{%
\csedef{series@displayX#1}{normal}
\expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\normalfootstartX
\@namedef{bodyfootmark#1}{\normalbodyfootmarkX[#1]}
\expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\twocolvfootnoteX
\expandafter\let\csname vfootnote#1\endcsname=\vnumfootnoteX
\@namedef{footfmt#1}{\normalfootfmtX}
\expandafter\let\csname footfootmark#1\endcsname=\normalfootfootmarkX
\expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\normalfootgroupX
\expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
\count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
\csxdef{default@footins#1}{1000}%Use to have note only for one side
\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}\
\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}\
\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\
\twocolfootsetupX{#1}
\fi
%
\end{verbatim}

Additions for minipages.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifnoledgroup@\else%
\expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
\expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroupX
\count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}\
\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}\
\advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\
\fi
%
\end{verbatim}

XIV.4.3 Two columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in two columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\arrangementX@twocol}[1]{%
\csedef{series@displayX#1}{twocol}
\expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\twocolvfootnoteX
\expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\twocolfootfmtX
\expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\twocolfootgroupX
\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}\
\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}\
\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\
\twocolfootsetupX{#1}
\end{verbatim}
XIV  Familiar footnotes

\twocolfootsetupX  \twocolfootsetupX{⟨series⟩}
\newcommand*{\twocolfootsetupX}[1]%%%\count\csname footins#1\endcsname 500
\csxdef{default@footins#1}{500}%Use this to confine the notes to one
\multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \tw@
\newcommand*{\mptwocolfootsetupX}[1]%%%\count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 500
\multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \tw@

\twocolvfootnoteX  \twocolvfootnoteX{⟨series⟩}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolvfootnoteX}[2]%%%\beforeinsertionX[⟨#1⟩]
\let\bidi@RTL@everypar\relax
\insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup
\hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
\noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
\footsplitskips%
\spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip%
@nameuse{footfmt#1}{⟨#1⟩}{⟨#2⟩}\egroup

\twocolfootfmtX  \twocolfootfmtX{⟨series⟩}
\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmtX}[2]%%%\protected@edef\@currentlabel{%\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
\normal@pars
\sethangindentX{⟨#1⟩}%
\hsize=\hsizetwocolX@#1%
\setparindentX{⟨#1⟩}%
\tolerance=5000\relax%
\par%
XIV.4 Footnote arrangement

The following macros set footnotes in three columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

\twocolfootgroupX
\mptwocolfootgroupX
\newcommand*{\twocolfootgroupX}[1]{{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}\\splittopskip=\ht\strutbox\\expandafter\rigidbalanceX\csname footins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
\newcommand*{\mptwocolfootgroupX}[1]{{\vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\\ifl@dpairing\\ifparledgroup\\leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}\\marks\parledgroup@series{#1}\\marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}\fi\\fi\normalcolor\\ifparledgroup\\ifl@dpairing\\else\\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}\\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}\\print@footnoteXrule{#1}\fi\\else\\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}\\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}\\print@footnoteXrule{#1}\fi\\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\\splittopskip=\ht\strutbox\\expandafter\rigidbalanceX\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
\newcommand*{\arrangementX@threecol}[1]{%
  \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{threecol}
  \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\threecolvfootnoteX
  \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\threecolfootfmtX
  \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\threecolfootgroupX
  \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
  \advance\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
  \threecolfootsetupX{#1}
  \ifnoledgroup@\else%
    \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
    \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroupX
    \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
    \advance\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}
    \mpthreecolfootsetupX{#1}
  \fi%
%
\threecolfootsetupX{⟨series⟩}

\newcommand*{\threecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
  \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 333
  \csxdef{default@footins#1}{333}% Use this to confine the notes to one side only
  \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}

\newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
  \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 333
  \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}
%
\threecolvfootnoteX{⟨series⟩}{⟨text⟩}

\notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
  \let\bidi@RTL@everypar\relax%
  \beforeinsertionX{#1}%
  \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup%
    \hspace{\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
    \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
    \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
    \footsplitskips%
  \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
%
\threecolfootfmtX{⟨series⟩}
XIV.4.5 Paragraphed footnotes

The following macros set footnotes as one paragraph.

\texttt{\arrangementX@paragraph}
\texttt{\footparagraphX{⟨series⟩}}

\texttt{\newcommand*{\arrangementX@paragraph}{[1]}{}}
\texttt{\csodef{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}{}%}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\parafootstartX}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\para@vfootnoteX}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname footnote#1\endcsname=\parafootfmtX}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\para@footgroupX}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX}
\texttt{\count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000%Use this to confine the notes to one side only}
\texttt{\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}}
\texttt{\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}}
\texttt{\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}}
\texttt{\para@footsetupX{#1}}
\texttt{\ifnoledgroup@\else}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mppara@vfootnoteX}
\texttt{\expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mppara@footgroupX}
\texttt{\count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000}
\texttt{\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}}
\texttt{\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}}
\texttt{\advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}}
\texttt{\fi}
\texttt{}}

\texttt{\para@footsetupX}
\texttt{\para@footsetupX{⟨series⟩}}

\texttt{\newcommand*{\para@footsetupX}{[1]}{}}
\texttt{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}}
\texttt{\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}{}%}
\texttt{\ifcsempty{widthX@#1}{}%}
\texttt{\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%}
\texttt{\dimen0=\baselineskip}
\texttt{\multiply\dimen0 by 1024}
\texttt{\divide\dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 \footfudgefiddle\relax%}
\texttt{\expandafter}
\texttt{\def\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname{}}
\texttt{\expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0}}
\parafootstartX \parafootstartX\{\langle series\rangle\}
\newcommand*{\parafootstartX}[1]{%\ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{}% \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{\togglefalse{prenotesX@}}% \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=% \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax% }% \leftskip=\z@ \rightskip=\z@ \setparindentX{#1}% \vskip\skip\@nameuse{footins#1}% \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}% \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}% \print@footnoteXrule{#1}}%\para@vfootnoteX \mppara@vfootnoteX \para@vfootnoteX\{\langle series\rangle\}{\langle text\rangle}
\newcommand*{\para@vfootnoteX}[2]{% \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}% \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname% \bgroup \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1} \footsplitskips \setbox0=vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen% \let\bidi@RTL@everypar\@empty% \insert@txtbeforenotesX{#1}% \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}% \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}}% \setbox0=hbox{unvxhX0}{#1}% \dp0=\z@ \ht0=\csname footnote#1@endcsname\wd0 \box0 % penalty0 \egroup% \newcommand*{\mppara@vfootnoteX}[3]{% \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}% \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}% \edef\this@footnoteX{\the\csname footnote#1@endcsname}\% \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%


**XIV.4 Footnote arrangement**

---

**Insertion of the footnotes separator**  The command `\insertparafootsepX{⟨series⟩}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftmX`.

\insertparafootsepX

---

\newcommand{\insertparafootsepX}[1]{%
XIV.5 Wrapping footnote marks in hyperlink

\texttt{\wrapped@footfootmarkX} \texttt{\wrapped@footfootmarkX} prints the footnote mark of the footpage, wrapped in hyperref package's commands, if needed.

\newcommand{\wrapped@footfootmarkX}[1]{%  
  \ifdef\hypertarget{\hyperlink{#1\this@footnoteX@reading}{\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}}%  
  \Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1\this@footnoteX@reading}{\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}}%  
  \hypertarget{#1\this@footnoteX@reading}{%  
    \@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}%  
  \else%  
    \@nameuse{footfootmark#1}%  
  \fi%}

\texttt{\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX} \texttt{\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX} prints the footnote mark of the text body, wrapped in hyperref package's commands, if needed.
XV  Code common to both critical and familiar footnote in normal arrangement

\par should always be redefined to \endgraf within the format macro (this is what \normal@pars does), to override tricky material in the main text to get the lines numbered automatically (as set up by \autopar, for example).

In the case of footnote arranged in a “normal” way, we also must set some setting for paragraph indent and text direction when using Lu\LaTeX. That why we have defined \ledsetnormalparstuff@common in order to make this setting for both familiar and critical notes. This command is called by command to make specific setting to critical or familiar footnote.
XVI  Footnotes’ width for two columns

We define here some commands which make sense only with \reledpar, but must be called when defining notes parameters. These commands change the width of block notes to allow them to have the same size than two parallel columns.

These two commands are called at the beginning of critical or familiar notes groups. They set, if the option is enabled, the \hsize. They are also called at the on the setup for paragraphed notes.
These two commands set the position of the critical / familiar footnotes, depending on the hooks \Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns and \noteswidthliketwocolumnsX. They call commands which are defined only in \reledpar, because this feature has no sense without \reledpar.

\newcommand{\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{% 
  \iftoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}{% 
    \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns\columns@position}% 
  }{}% 
}% 
\newcommand{\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{% 
  \iftoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}{% 
    \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns\columns@position}% 
  }{}% 
}%

\XVII Footnotes' order

The \fnpos and \mpfnpos simply place their arguments in \@fnpos and \@mpfnpos, which will be used later in the output routine.

\def\@fnpos{familiar-critical} 
\def\@mpfnpos{critical-familiar} 
\newcommand{\fnpos}[1]{\xdef\@fnpos{#1}} 
\newcommand{\mpfnpos}[1]{\xdef\@mpfnpos{#1}}

\XVIII Footnotes' rule

Because the footnotes' rules can be shifted to the right when footnotes are set like two columns, we do not print them directly, but we put them in a \vbox.

\newcommand{\printXfootnoterule}[1]{% 
  \vskip-\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{#1footins} 
  \nointerlineskip% 
  \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{#1footnoterule}}% 
  \nointerlineskip% 
  \vskip\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}% 
}% 
\newcommand{\print脚下noteXrule}[1]{% 
  \vskip-\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{footins#1} 
  \nointerlineskip% 
  \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{footnoterule#1}}%
XIX  Specific skip for first series of footnotes

XIX.1  Overview

\Xbeforenotes inserts a specific skip for the first series of notes in a page. As we can’t know in advance which series will be the first, we call \prepare@Xprenotes before inserting any critical notes in order to prevent page number overlapping.

1. If it is the first note of the current page, it changes the footnote skip for the series to the value specified to \Xbeforenotes. It also keeps the series of the note as the first one of the current page.

2. If it is not the first note of the current page:
   • If the current series is printed after the series kept as the first of the current page, then nothing happens.
   • If the current series is printed before the series kept as the first of the current page, then it changes the footnote skip of the current series to the value normally used by the series which was marked as the first of the page. It also keeps the current series as the new first one of the current page.

For example, suppose the series order is A,B. We call first a \Bfootnote and a \Afootnote. The only skips used are, finally, the skip specific to the first series of the page, and the skip for the B series. If we have not called \Afootnote, the only skip used is the skip specific to the first series of the page.

That is perfect.

The series skip and the first series of the current page are reset before the footnotes are printed. Then, the footstart macros manage the problem of the first series of the page.

After the rule, the space which is defined by \Xafterrule does not depend on whether the series is the first one of the page or not. So we use its normal value for each series.

And now, implementation!

XIX.2  User level command

\Xprenotes\@  If user redefines \Xprenotes\@, via \Xprenotes to a value greater than 0 pt, this skip will be added before first series notes instead of the notes skip.
XIX.3 Internal commands

\newcommand{\Xprenotes@}{0pt}\
\newcommand*{\Xprenotes}[1]{\renewcommand{\Xprenotes@}{#1}}
%For compatibility
%
The same, but for familiar footnotes.

\Xprenotes
\Xprenotes@
\newtoggle{prenotesX@}
toggletrue{prenotesX@}
\newcommand{\prenotesX@}{0pt}
\newcommand*{\prenotesX}[1]{\renewcommand{\prenotesX@}{#1}}
%

XIX.3 Internal commands

\firstXseries@
\prepare@Xprenotes
\gdef\firstXseries@{}
\newcommand{\prepare@Xprenotes}[1]{%
  \ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{%}
  \IfStrEq{\firstXseries@}{ {}{%
    \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}={\Xprenotes@}%
    \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
    \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
  }{%
    \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstXseries@}{}{%
      \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}={\csuse{Xbeforenotes@\firstXseries@}%,%}
      \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
      \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
    }%}
  }%}
%

The same thing is required for familiar notes and \prenotesX.

\firstseriesX@
\prepare@prenotesX
\gdef\firstseriesX@{}
\newcommand{\prepare@prenotesX}[1]{%
  \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{%}
  \IfStrEq{\firstseriesX@}{%}
  \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstseriesX@}{}{%
    \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}={\csuse{Xbeforenotes@\firstseriesX@}%,%}
    \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
    \gdef\firstseriesX@{#1}%
  }%}
%
XX Endnotes

First, check the noend option.

\ifbool{noend@}{% Used instead of \ifnoend@ to prevent expansion problem

XX.1 Internal commands

\l@dend@open \l@dend@close

\l@dend@open and \l@dend@close are the macros that are used to open and close the endnote file. Note that all our writing to this file is \immediate: all page and line numbers for the endnotes are generated by the same mechanism we use for the footnotes, so there is no need to defer any writing to catch information from the output routine. The argument of these two command is the series letter.
\l@dend@stuff is used by \beginnumbering to do everything that is necessary for the endnotes at the start of each section: it opens the \l@d@end file, if necessary, and writes the section number to the endnote file.

\newcommand{\l@dend@stuff}{
\def\do##1{\ifbool{l@dend@##1}{}{\l@dend@open{##1}}}
\expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@##1end\endcsname{string\l@d@section{\the\section@num}\@percentchar}
}\dolistloop{\@series}
}

The \endprint here is nearly identical in its functioning to \normalfootfmt. The endnote file also contains \l@d@section commands, which supply the section numbers from the main text; standard reledmac does nothing with this information, but it is there if you want to write custom macros to do something with it. Arguments are:

- #1 Line numbers and font selection.
- #2 Lemma.
- #3 Note content.
- #4 Series.
- #5 Optional argument of \Xendnote.
- #6 Side (L or R).
- #7 Label for cross-referencing.
\texttt{\textbackslash xendstorelineinfo} \hspace{3pt} The \texttt{\textbackslash xendstorelineinfo} macro is used to store some data about line number of the current critical endnote, data which will be reused later for the \texttt{\textbackslash numberonlyfirstinline} and related setting.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\xendstorelineinfo}[2]{\%
  \@dp@rsefootspec#1|%
  \iftoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
    \l@dp@rseendnoteinfo{% \l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub - \l@dparsedendpage - \l@dparsedendline - \l@dparsedendsub}%
  }{%
    \xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub}%
  }%
  \xdef\xendlineno{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub}%
  \xdef\xendlineno{\xendlineno}%
  \xdef\xendlineno{\xendlineno}%
}\%
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash printlineendnote} \hspace{3pt} This macro controls, in endnote, whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\printlineendnote}[2]{\%
  \ifboolexpr{\%
    \togl {nonum@}%
    or \togl {Xendnonumber@#2}%
  }{%
    \hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofnumber@#2}}%\%
  }{%
    \ifsdef{prevendline#2}{\ifcsuse{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#2}{}%\%
      \ifcsuse{Xendahookinplaceofnumber@2}{%\%
        \ifcsuse{Xendsymlinenum@#2}{}%\%
        \csxdef{prevendline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
      }%\%
      \ifsdef{prevendline#2}{\ifcsuse{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#2}{}%\%
        \ifcsuse{Xendahookinplaceofnumber@#2}{}%\%
      }%\%
      \ifsdef{prevendline#2}{\ifcsuse{Xendsymlinenum@#2}{}%\%
        \ifcsuse{Xendahookinplaceofnumber@#2}{}%\%
      }%\%
    }%\%
    \%
  }%\%
}\%
\end{verbatim}
XX.2 User level commands

XX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes

The \Xendnotes commands are defined above, when defining apparatus commands by series. Here, we define only \toendnotes command not specific to a series, in order to insert arbitrary code. The regular version writes an unexpanded argument, while the regular version writes a once-expanded argument.

\toendnotes\newcommandx{\toendnotes}[2][1,usedefault]{%
\ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR}}{%
XX.2 User level commands

\doendnotes
\ifXendinsertsep@
\doendnotes
\ifXendinsertsep@ is the command you use to print one series of endnotes; it takes one argument: the series letter of the note series you want to print. \Xendinsertsep@ is set to true at the first note of the series, and to false at the last one.

\doendnotesbysection
\doendnotesbysection is a variant of the previous macro. While \doendnotes print endnotes for all of numbered sections \doendnotesbysection print the endnotes for the first numbered section at its first call for a series, then for the second section at its second call for the same series, then for the third section at its third call for the same series, and so on.
We close now the conditional period, which depends on \ifnoend@, because the following commands can be used by other commands than those specific to endnotes.

The \printendlines macro is similar to \printlines but is for printing endnotes rather than footnotes.

The principal difference between foot- and endnotes is that footnotes are printed on the page where they are specified but endnotes are printed at a different point in the document. We need an indication of the source of an endnote; \setprintendlines provides this by always printing the page number. The coding is slightly simpler than \setprintlines.

from the starting page number.

\setprintendlines=
\newif\if@Xendlinenumber
\newcommand*\setprintendlines[6]{%
\let@annot@start@print\relax
\let@annot@end@print\relax
\@pnumfalse
\@dashfalse
\@elinfalse
%
Should we print the line number? It depends on hooks and annotations.

\@Xendlinenumbertrue
\ifboolexpr{togl\Xendlinenumber\@currentseries}%
or (%
togl\Xendnolineumberifannotation\@currentseries%
and not test\ifdefvoid\annot@start}%
and not test\ifdefvoid\annot@end}%

%
We print the second page number only if the ending page number is different:

\ifnum#4=#1 \else
  \l@dd@pnumtrue
  \l@dd@dashtrue
\fi

We print the ending line number if:

1. we print the ending page number;
2. or the ending line is different from the starting line number and we didn’t disable the line number printing.

If either of these conditions is true, we also print the annotation linked to the ending line number annotations.

We define the starting line number annotation as a merge of the starting annotation and ending annotation if we don’t print the ending line number. Otherwise, it is only the starting annotation.
We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

\l@d@ssubfalse
\ifnum#3=0 \else
\l@d@ssubtrue
\fi

We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.
If the \texttt{\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation} is set for this series, we check if the ending annotation is identical to the starting. If true, we don't print the ending annotation.
Finally, we check for \Endlinenumannotationonlyfirst and \Endlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo, and we redefine, if required, \annot@start@print and \annot@end@print. We also store the current line number annotations.

\iftoggle{\Endlinenumannotationonlyfirst@\@currentseries}{%
  \ifboolexpr{%
    (\togl{\Endlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}
    and test{\ifcsequal{\annot@start}{\prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}
    and test{\ifcsequal{\annot@end}{\prevannot@end@\@currentseries}})
  }
  or%
  (\not \togl{\Endlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}
  test{\ifcsequal{\annot@start}{\prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}
  )%
}{%
  \def\annot@start@print{%
    \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{\Endwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{\csuse{\Endsymlinenumannotation@\@currentseries}}%}
  \let\annot@end@print\relax%
  \ifboolexpr{%Do not print the dash if do not print the line number
    \ifdefempty{\linenumrep}
    or not bool {l@d@\Endlinenumber}%
  }
  \l@d@dashfalse%
}
\global\cslet{\prevannot@start@\@currentseries}{\annot@start}%
\global\cslet{\prevannot@end@\@currentseries}{\annot@end}%
}{}

End of \setprintendlines.

\%}
\%
\%
\Endlinenumber{

Now we are ready to print it all.

\def\printendlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8|{%
  \begingroup
  \setprintendlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}{#7}{#8}%
\Endlinenumber{\setprintendlines}{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%

The only subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could be coming
after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an
ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period).

So, first, start the starting line box, if needed.

\ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum\@currentseries}}{0pt}\%
  \{\bgROUP\%
  \{\leavemode\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum\@currentseries}\bgROUP
  \hspace{#1}\%
% Then, print the starting page number-
\ifboolexpr{\%
  \test{\ifcsstring{prevpagenum\@currentseries}{#1}}\%
  and \not\%
  (\toggles{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle\@currentseries} and \bool{\%
    \l@dd@pnum})\%
  )\%
  or\%
  )\%
  \test {\ifcsstring{prevpagerange\@currentseries}{#1-#4}}\%
  )\%
  )\%
  )\%
  \ifcsempty{Xendsympagenum\@currentseries}\%
  \hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofpagenumber\@currentseries}}\%
  \csuse{Xendsympagenum\@currentseries}\%
  \%
  \%
  \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\printnpnum{#1}}\%
% Then, determine what must be printed before the start line.
\ifl@d@dash\%
  \ifl@d@pnum\%
    \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle\@currentseries}\%
  \else\%
    \ifcsempty{Xendlineprefixmore\@currentseries}\%
    \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingl@e\@currentseries}\%
    \csuse{Xendlineprefixmore\@currentseries}\%
  \fi\%
  \else\%
    \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle\@currentseries}\%
  \fi\%
% Then print the starting line, followed, if needed, by the side flag and the starting sub line
  number, then the line number annotation.
\ifcsstring{Xendlinenumannotationposition\@currentseries}{before}\%
Close the box.

\iftoggle{Xendnotboxingsubline0[@currentseries]}{}{\egroup}
%

Open the box for the ending line number.

\ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendendlinenum0[@currentseries]}}{Opt}{\bgroup}
{\hbox to \csuse{Xendendlinenum0[@currentseries]}{\bgroup}
%

Print the dash + the ending line number, or the line number range symbol.

\ifl@d@Xtwolines%
  \ifl@d@Xendlinenumber%
    \ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
      \wrap@edcrossref{\this@crossref@end}{\csuse{Xendmorethantwolines0[@currentseries]}}%
    \else%
      \wrap@edcrossref{\this@crossref@end}{\csuse{Xendtwolines0[@currentseries]}}%
    \fi%
  \fi%
\fi%
\fi%
XX.2  User level commands

\fi
\fi
\else%
\if@odd@dash%
\ifdefined\linerangesep%
  \linerangesep%
\else%
  \csuse{Xendlinerangeseparator}\@currentseries%
\fi%
\fi%
\fi
%
Print the ending page number.

\if@odd@pnum%
  \ifs@string{prevpagerange}@\@currentseries\{#1-#4\}%
    {%
      \ifcs@empty{Xendsympagenum}@\@currentseries%
        {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofpagenumber}@\@currentseries}}%
        {\csuse{Xendsympagenum}@\@currentseries}%
      }%
    {%
      \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\printnpnum{#4}}%
    }%
  \fi%
%
Print the ending line number, with, if needed, the line prefix, and followed by the side flag, the subline number, and line number annotation.

\ifs@string{Xendlinenumannotationposition}@\@currentseries\{before\}%
  {\@annot@end@print}%
  {}%
\if@odd@Xendlinenumber%
  \if@odd@elin%
    \if@odd@pnum\csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle}@\@currentseries\fi%
    \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\%}
    \if@Rcol@
      \linenumrepR{#5}%
    \else%
      \linenumrep{#5}%
    \fi%
  \fi%
  \iftoggle{Xendlineflag}@\@currentseries\{\if@Rcol@\Rlineflag\fi {}}%
  \fi%
\fi%
\if@odd@esl%
  \if@odd@elin%
    \csuse{Xendsublinesep}@\@currentseries%
  \fi%
  \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\%}
\fi%
In this section, X means the name of the series (A, B etc.)
The `\series` macro is an etoolbox list, which contains the name of all series.

The command `\newseries@` creates a new series of the footnote.

### XXI.1 Test if series is still existing

When calling `\newseries@` after having loaded `reledpar`, we need to load specific setting.

### XXI.2 Init specific to reledpar

Critical footnotes are those which start with letters. We look for the `\nocritical` option of `reledmac`.

### XXI.3 For critical footnotes

Critical footnotes are those which start with letters. We look for the `\nocritical` option of `reledmac`.

### XXI.3.1 Options
\csgdef{Xhangindent@#1}{0pt}\
\csgdef{Xragged@#1}{\raggedright}\
\csgdef{Xhsizetwocol@#1}{0.45 \hsize}\n\csgdef{Xhsizethreecol@#1}{.3 \hsize}\n\csgdef{Xcolalign@#1}{\raggedright}\
\csgdef{Xnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}\
\csgdef{Xnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}\
\csgdef{Xbhooknote@#1}{}\
\csgdef{Xbhookgroup@#1}{}\
\csgdef{Xboxlinenum@#1}{0pt}\
\csgdef{Xboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}\
\csgdef{Xboxstartlinenum@#1}{0pt}\
\newtoggle{Xnotboxingsubline@#1}\
\csgdef{Xboxendlinenum@#1}{0pt}\
\csgdef{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}{0pt}\
\newtoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xgroupbylineseparetwolines@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@#1}\
\csgdef{Xtwolines@#1}{}\
\csgdef{Xmorethantwolines@#1}{}\
\csgdef{Xsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}\
\csgdef{Xpagelinesep@#1}{\csname Xsublinesep@#1\endcsname} for backward compatibility, call Xsublinesep@1\
\newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xonlypstart@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xpstarteverytime@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xpstart@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xpstartonlyfirst@#1}\
\csgdef{Xprevpstart@#1}{0}\Not a hook, but a tool for the hook Xpstartonlyfirst\ncsgdef{Xpstartseparator@#1}{\%}\
\newtoggle{Xstanza@#1}\
\newtoggle{Xstanzaonlyfirst@#1}\
\csgdef{Xprevstanza@#1}{0}\Not a hook, but a tool for the hook Xstanzaonlyfirst\ncsgdef{Xstanzaseparator@#1}{\%}
XXI.3 For critical footnotes

As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of *The TeXbook* by D. Knuth.
XXI.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, \texttt{\Afootnote}, \texttt{\Bfootnote} etc.

Note the double # in command: it is because command it is made inside another command.

\begin{verbatim}
\global\notbool{parapparatus}{\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter\*\expandafter{%\expandafter\newcommand\csname \#1footnote\endcsname[2]{}\{%
  \nottoggle{Xnonote@#1}{{%
  \advance \edtext@notes by 1%
  \if@edtext@secondarg@%
  \ifledRcol%
  \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{L}{%
    \lederror@note@called@onrightside{#1footnote}}{}%}
  \else%
  \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{R}{%
    \lederror@note@called@onleftside{#1footnote}}{}%
  \fi%
  \begingroup%
  \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
  \ifcsstring{series@display#1}{paragraph}{}
  \patchcmd{\@tag}{\par}{\relax}{}{}
  \ifnumberedpar@
  \ifledRcol%
  \ifluatex%
  \footnotelang@lua[\textit{R}]%}
  \fi%
  \ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{}% if polyglossia
  \{\footnotelang@poly[\textit{R}]%}
  \footnoteoptions[\textit{R}]{true}%
  \xright@appenditem{%
    \ifbool{indtl@innote}{}
    \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}{}
    \noexpand\Xnote@true%
    \unexpanded\gdef\@currentnotetype{critical}
    \prepare@Xprenotes{#1}%
    \prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
    \unexpanded\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \texttt{\sw@inthisedtext} of current \texttt{\edtext} will be pushed to \texttt{\sw@list@inedtext} when the notes are expanded.
\end{verbatim}
XXI.3 For critical footnotes

\noexpand\setcounter{stanzaR}{\the\c@stanzaR}%Save stanzaR counter for footnote
\unexpanded{\def@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:\start}%
\unexpanded{\def@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}% now, no reason to make it public\unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:start}%
\unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}%
\expandonce{\@beforeinsertofthisedtext}% Internal for
\noexpand\parse@annot\l@current@annotR|%
\noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}{{\l@d@nums}{\expandonce\@tag}{\expandonce\content}}%
\noexpand\Xnote@false%
\unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote\@ne}%
\ifbool{indtl@innote}{\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%
\ifbool{indtl@notenumber}{\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%There is no note
number... so
\noexpand\Xnote@true%
\unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{critical}}%
\prepare@Xprenotes{#1}\
\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}\
\unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \sw@inthisedtext of current edtext will be pushed to \sw@list@inedtext when the notes are expanded.%\noexpand\setcounter{stanzaL}{\the\c@stanzaL}%Save stanzaR counter for footnote
\fi%
XXI. Generate series of notes

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

We need to be able to modify reledmac's footnote macros and restore their

XXI.3.4 Set standard display

End of for critical footnotes.
XXI.4  For familiar footnotes

Familiar footnotes are those which end with letters. We look for the nofamiliar option of reledmac.

\unless\ifnofamiliar@
%

XXI.4.1 Options

\newtoggle{parindentX@#1}
\csgdef{wrapcontentX@#1}{\%}
\csgdef{hangindentX@#1}{Opt}\%
\csgdef{beforeinsertingX@#1}{\%}
\csgdef{raggedX@#1}{3\%}
\csgdef{hsizetwocolX@#1}{0.45 \hsize}\%
\csgdef{hsizethreecolX@#1}{.3 \hsize}\%
\csgdef{colalignX@#1}{\raggedright}\%
\csgdef{notenumfontX@#1}{\normalfont}\%
\csgdef{notefontsizeX@#1}{\footnotesize}\%
\csgdef{bhooknoteX@#1}{}\%
\csgdef{bhookgroupX@#1}{}\%
\csgdef{afterruleX@#1}{0pt}\%
\csgdef{beforenotesX@#1}{1.2em \plus .6em \minus .6em}\%
\csgdef{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}\%
\csgdef{parafootsepX@#1}{\%}
\csgdef{afternoteX@#1}{1em plus .4em minus .4em}\%
\csgdef{widthX@#1}{\hsize}\%
\expandafter\csgdef{innotemarkX@#1}##1{\ledinnotemark{##1}}\%
\csgdef{txtbeforenotesX@#1}{\%}
\newtoggle{nonoteX@#1}\%
\newtoggle{txtbeforesnotesX@#1}\%
\newtoggle{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX@#1}\%
\newtoggle{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX@#1}\%
\% End of for familiar footnotes.
\% subsection{Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot}
\% As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of the TeXBook by D. Knuth.
\% \begin{macrocode}
\% \expandafter\newinsert\csname footins#1\endcsname\%
\% \unless\ifnoleadgroup\%
\% \expandafter\newinsert\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname\%
\fi\%
\%
XXI.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes (\footnotex)

First, create the \footnotex command. Note the double # in command: it is because a command is called inside another command.

\begin{verbatim}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1\endcsname[2][]{%
 \nottoggle{nonoteX@#1}{%
 \begin{group}
 \prepare@prenotesX{#1}%
 \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
\end{group}%
\ifdefined\csquotesqlevel%
 \csquotesqlevel=0\relax%
 \fi%
 %
 If we are using the \csquotes package, we reset the quotation level.

\ifdefined\csquotesqlevel%
 \csquotesqlevel=0\relax%
 \fi%
 %
 If we prepare parallel typesetting, we cannot just increase the footnote counter. Read reledpar's handbook about that \cite{V1.2 p.55}. If we have a manual footnote mark, use it.

\global\expandafter\advance\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname by \@ne%
\ifstrempty{##1}{%
 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or boolean{l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
 \ifcsdef{footnote#1reading\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname=typeset}{%
 \setcounter{footnote#1}{\csuse{footnote#1reading\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname=typeset}}{%
 \setcounter{footnote#1}{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}}%
\stepcounter{footnote#1}%
\}{}
\}%
\}else{%
\stepcounter{footnote#1}%
\}{}
\}%
\}
\end{verbatim}

We also have to check consistency with \onlysideX setting.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifledRcol%
 \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{L}{%
 \lederror{note@called@onrightside{footnote#1}}{%
 \else%
 \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{R}{%
 \lederror{note@called@onleftside{footnote#1}}{%
 \fi%
\end{verbatim}

And now, the feature not depending on wether we prepare parallel typesetting
XXI.4  For familiar footnotes

Then define the counters. The \LaTeX counter \footnote is the only one manipulated by the user. This is the one which is printed. The \TeX counter \footnote@reading is increased at each footnote. It is used for hyperlinks, for using \hyperlink\ package, and for getting the correct footnote number when using parallel typesetting (V.1.2 p. 55).

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

Add \let\footnoteX\@gobble to \noexpands.
And now, define `\footnotemark` and `\footnotetext`, equivalent to classical `\footnotemark` and `\footnotetext`.

\begin{verbatim}
\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1mark\endcsname[1][1]{%
  \begingroup
  \prepare@prenotes{#1}%
  \ifstrempty{##1}{%
    \stepcounter{footnote#1}%
  }{%}
  \setcounter{footnote#1}{##1}%
  \protect@csxdef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
  \csuse{@footnotemark#1}%
  \m@mmf@prepare%
  \endgroup%
}%
\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1text\endcsname[2][2]{%
  \begingroup
  \csuse{vfootnote#1}{#1}{\expandonce{##2}}{##1}%
  \endgroup%
}%
\end{verbatim}

Do not forget to initialize the series.

\begin{verbatim}
\arrangement@normal{#1}%
\fi%
\end{verbatim}

\section{The endnotes}

Endnotes are commands like `\Xendnote`, where X is a series letter. First, we check for the noend options.

\begin{verbatim}
\unless\ifnoend@
\end{verbatim}

\subsection{The auxiliary file}

Endnotes of all varieties are saved up in a file, one by series, typically named \texttt{⟨jobname⟩.Xend}. \texttt{\@d@end} is the output stream number for this file, and \texttt{\@d@en@true} is a flag that is true when the file is open.

\begin{verbatim}
\expandafter\newwrite\csname \@d@end\endcsname
\expandafter\newif\csname if\@d@end\endcsname
\end{verbatim}
XXI.5.2 The main macro

The \texttt{Xendnote} macro functions to write one endnote to the \texttt{.Xend} file. We change \texttt{newlinechar} so that in the file every space becomes the start of a new line; this generally ensures that a long note does not exceed restrictions on the length of lines in files.

\begin{verbatim}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1endnote\endcsname[2][1, usedefault]{%
  \advance \edtext@notes by 1%
  \bgroup
  \newlinechar='40%
  \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
  \stepcounter{labidx}%
  \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@#1end\endcsname{%
    \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}%
    \{\expandafter\unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%
    \@percentchar\space%Explicit space, to add a linebreak in the output file
    \expandafter\string\csname #1end\endcsname%
    \ifnumberedpar\l@d@nums\fi%
    \ifnumberedpar\expandonce\@tag\fi%
    \expandonce\content%
    \unexpanded{\ifledRcol R\else L\fi}%
    \theedtext%\@percentchar%
  }%
  \egroup%
  \ignorespaces%
}\endverbatim

XXI.5.3 Tools

The \texttt{Xtoendnotes} command inserts any arbitrary content into the endnote file. It is an alias of the more generalist \texttt{addtoendnotes}

\begin{verbatim}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\endcsname[1]{%
  \toendnotes[1]{##1}%
}%
\global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\endcsname*[1]{%
  \toendnotes*[1]{##1}%
}\endverbatim
XXI.5.4 Internal commands

\Xendnote commands called \Xend commands on to the endnote file; these are analogous to the various footfmt commands above, and they take the same arguments. When we process this file, we want to pick out the notes of one series and ignore all the rest. To do that, we equate the end command for the series we want to \endprint, and leave the rest equated to \@gobbleseven, which just skips over its seven arguments.

\global\cslet{#1end}{\@gobbleseven}

We need to store the number of times \doendnotesbysection is called for one series.

\global\expandafter\newcount\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname

XXI.5.5 The options

\csgdef{Xendwraplemma@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendwrapcontent@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendtwolines@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendmorethantwolines@#1}{}
\newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}{}
\newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}{}
\newtoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}{}
\csgdef{Xendnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}{}
\csgdef{Xendbhooknote@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}{}
\csgdef{Xendbeforenumber@#1}{Opt}{}
\csgdef{Xendafternumber@#1}{0.5em}{}
\csgdef{Xendboxlinenum@#1}{Opt}{}
\csgdef{Xendboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}{}
\csgdef{Xendboxstartlinenum@#1}{Opt}{}
\newtoggle{Xendnotboxingsubline@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendboxendlinenum@#1}{Opt}{}
\csgdef{Xendlemmaseparator@#1}{}
\csgdef{Xendbeforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}{}
\csgdef{Xendafterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}{}
XXI.5 The endnotes

\csgdef{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
\newtoggle{Xendparagraph@#1}%
\csgdef{Xendafternote@#1}{1em plus .4em minus .4em}%
\csgdef{Xendsp@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendinplaceofnumber@#1}{Opt}%
\newtoggle{Xendnumber@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendnolinenumber@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendnolinenumberifannotation@#1}%
\csgdef{Xendhangindent@#1}{Opt}%
\newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@#1}%
\csgdef{Xendbeforesymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xendbeforenumber@#1}}%
\csgdef{Xendaftersymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xendafternumber@#1}}%
\csgdef{Xendsymlinenum@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendsymlinenumannotation@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendboxsymlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
\csgdef{Xendbhooklinenumber@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendehooklinenumber@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendehookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendlinerangeseparator@#1}{\endashchar}%
\csgdef{Xendbeforepagenumber@#1}{p.}%
\csgdef{Xendafterpagenumber@#1}{) }%
\csgdef{Xendlinesuffixsingle@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendlinesuffixmore@#1}{}%
\newtoggle{Xendlineflag@#1}%
\csgdef{Xendlemmafont@#1}{}%
\csgdef{Xendlinenumannotationposition@#1}{after}%
\csgdef{Xendwraplinenumannotation@#1}{\textsuperscript}%
\newtoggle{Xendidenticallinenumannotation@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle@#1}%
\newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo@#1}%
XXII Setting series display

\csgdef{Xendsympagenum@#1}{}%  
\csgdef{Xendinplaceofpagenumber@#1}{0pt}%  
\csgdef{Xendtxtbeforenotes@#1}{}%  
\newtoggle{Xendfirstnote@#1}%Not a hook, but used to apply
\Restxtbeforenotes
%

End of endnotes declaration
\fi%
%
Dump series in @series
\listxadd{@series}{#1}
}% End of \newseries
%

XXI.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E)
\expandafter\newseries\expandafter{\default@series}
%

XXII Setting series display

XXII.1 Change series order
\seriesatbegin\seriesatbegin{⟨s⟩} changes the order of series, to put the series ⟨s⟩ at the beginning of the list. The series can be the result of a command.
\newcommand{\seriesatbegin}{1}{%  \StrDel{@series}{#1}@series%  \edef@new{%  \listeadd{@new}{#1}%  \listeadd{@new}{@series}%  \xdef@series{@new}%  }
%
\seriesatend And \seriesatend moves the series to the end of the list.
\newcommand{\seriesatend}{1}{%  \StrDel{@series}{#1}@series%  \edef@new{%  \listeadd{@new}{#1}%  \listeadd{@new}{@series}%  \xdef@series{@new}%  }
%
XXII.2  Test series order

\ifseriesbefore  \ifseriesbefore{⟨seriesA⟩}{⟨seriesB⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩} expands to ⟨true⟩ if ⟨seriesA⟩ is printed before ⟨seriesB⟩, or to ⟨false⟩ otherwise.

\newcommand{\ifseriesbefore}{\StrPosition{⟨@series⟩}{#1}[⟨@first⟩]}\StrPosition{⟨@series⟩}{#2}[⟨@second⟩] \ifnumgreater{⟨@second⟩}{⟨@first⟩}{#3}{#4}

%  XXII.2.1 Get the first series

In some specific case, we need to know the first series of the list of series.

\getfirstseries{} \newcommand{\getfirstseries}{\ifdefempty{⟨@series⟩}{⟨@firstseries⟩}{\StrChar{⟨@series⟩}{1}[⟨@firstseries⟩]}}

%  XXII.3  Series setting

XXII.3.1 General way of working

The setting’s command (like \numberonlyfirstinline), also called “hooks” can be divided in two categories: those which require a string values and those which require a boolean value. The first category includes those which require a length value, because we store the length’s expression send by user and we evaluate it only in the commands which requires to know the setting. The second category require boolean value only when it is set to FALSE. Otherwise, we understand the insinuated value is TRUE.

For each “hook” command, we store the value in commands (first category) or a etoolbox’s toggle (second category) which names are in the form ⟨hook⟩⟨series⟩. For example, when calling \twolines{⟨sq.⟩}, we store sq. in commands \twolines@A, \twolines@B, \twolines@C... for each series defined for use with reledmac, or, if the [⟨series⟩] optional argument was send, for each series of this argument.

These values are tested in some specific places, scattered throughout the code, depending on their effects. The default values are defined by the \newseries@ command.

In order to prevent code duplication, we have created some generic commands. Some of them change the value of any hook send as argument. Some other, getting a hook name, generate the user level commands.

XXII.3.2 Tools to set options

\settoggle@series  \settoggle@series{⟨series⟩}{⟨toggle⟩}{⟨value⟩} is a generic command to switch toggles for some series. The arguments are:
Setting series display

• #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the
  series will be affected.

• #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.

• #3 (mandatory): the new value of the hook (true or false).

• #4 (optional): if equal to reload, reload the footnote setting (call again \Xarrangement
  or \arrangementX or ... depending on the footnote display).

• #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-
  series, as appref.

\newcommandx{\settoggle@series}{5}[4,5,usedefault]{%
  \def\do##1{%
    \ifcsdef{etb@tgl@#2@##1}{%
      \global\settoggle{#2@##1}{#3}%
    }{%
      \led@warn@BadHookSeries{##1}{#2}%
    }%
    \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{%
      \csuse{Xarrangement@\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}%
    }{}%
    \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{%
      \csuse{arrangementX@\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}%
    }{}%
  }%
  \ifstrempty{#1}{%
    \dolistloop{\@series}%
    \ifstrempty{#5}{%#}
      \docsvlist{#5}%
      \}
    }{%
      \docsvlist{#1}%
    }%
  }%
%
\setcommand@series  \setcommand@series{⟨series⟩}{⟨command⟩}{⟨value⟩} is a generic command to store
a hook’s value into commands specific to some series. The arguments are:

• #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the
  series will be affected.

• #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.

• #3 (mandatory): the new value of the hook/command.

• #4 (optional): if equal to reload, reload the footnote setting (call \footnormal
  or \footparagraph or ... depending on the footnote display).
XXII.3 Series setting

- #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-series, as appref.
- #6 (optional): the number of arguments of the hook.

\newcommandx{\setcommand@series}[6][4,5,6=0,usedefault]{
  \def\do##1{
    \ifcsdef{#2@##1}{%
      \expandafter\global\expandafter\renewcommand\csname#2@##1\endcsname[#6]{#3}%
    }{%
      \led@warn@BadHookSeries{##1}{#2}%
    }%
  \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{%
    \csuse{Xarrangement@\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}%
  }{%
  \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{%
    \csuse{arrangementX@\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}%
  }{%
    \ifstrempty{#1}{%
      \dolistloop{\@series}%
      \ifstrempty{#5}{}{%
        \docsvlist{#5}
      }
    }%
    \ifstrempty{#1}{%
      \dolistloop{\@series}%
      \ifstrempty{#5}{}{%
        \docsvlist{#5}
      }
    }%
  }%
}\}
\ifstrempty{#1}{%
\ifstrempty{#2}{%
\dolistloop{\@series}%
\ifstrempty{#5}{}{%
  \docsvlist{#5}
}\}%
\ifstrempty{#1}{%
\docsvlist{#1}%
}\}%
\}%
%

XXII.3.3 Tools to generate options commands

\newhookcommand@series\newhookcommand@series\command names is a generic command to add new commands for hooks, like \Xhsizetwocol. The first argument is the name of the hook, the second a comma-separated list of pseudo-series where the hook can be used, like appref in the case of \Xtwolines. The second argument is also used to create commands named \hookname<pseudoseries>, like \Xtwolinesappref. The third argument

\newcommandx{\newhookcommand@series}[3][2,3=0,usedefault]{%
  \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[1][#2][#3]%
}%
\newhooktoggle@series \newhooktoggle@series\command names is a generic command to add new commands for a new toggle hook, like \Xnumberonlyfirstinline. The second argument is also used to create commands named \hookname<pseudoseries>, like \Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref.

\newcommandx{\newhooktoggle@series}{2,usedefault}{%}
\global\expandafter\newcommandx\expandafter{\csname #1\endcsname}{2,usedefault}{%}
\settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[^2]{%}
\ifstrempty{#2}{}{%}
\def\do##1{%}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter{\csname #1##1\endcsname}{%}
\csuse{#1}[##1]{%}
\docsvlist{#2}{%}
}%
%
\newhooktoggle@series@reload \newhookcommand@toggle@reload does the same thing as \newhooktoggle@series but the commands created by this macro also reload the series arrangement, depending on the type of notes.

\newcommand{\newhooktoggle@series@reload}{2}{%}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter{\csname #1\endcsname}{2}{%}
\settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]{%}
}%
%

\newhookcommand@series@reload \newhookcommand@series@reload does the same thing as \newhookcommand@series but the commands created by this macro also reload the series’ arrangement.

\newcommand{\newhookcommand@series@reload}{2}{%}
\global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter{\csname #1\endcsname}{2}{%}
\setcommand@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]{%}
}%
XXII.3 Series setting

XXII.3.4 Options for critical notes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the critical notes, such as \Xnumberonlyfirstinline, \Xlemmaseparator and the like, we check the nocritical option.

\unless\ifnocritical@
  \newhookcommand@series{Xwrapcontent}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforescanning}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xlemmamark}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xwraplemma}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xparindent}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xhangindent}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xragged}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xhsize}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xhsizec}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xcolalign}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xnotenumfont}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbhooknote}\
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbhookgroup}{critical}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xboxsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforepagenumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforenumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xafternumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xafterpagenumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xafternumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xsymlinenum}{critical}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforepagenumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforenumber}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}\
  \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannot}\
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xafterrule}{critical}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstinline}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xlinenumberannotationonlyfirst}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xlinenumberannotationonlyfirstintwo}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xgroupbyline}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xgroupbylineseparate}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xnoline}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xnolinentext}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstart}\
  \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstartonlyfirst}
\newhooktoggle@series{Xpstarteverytime}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xpstartseparator}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xstanza}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xstanzaonlyfirst}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xstanzaseparator}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xnonote}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xonlypstart}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xnonbreakableafternumber}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xlemmadisablefontselection}\%  
\newhookcommand@series@reload{Xmaxhnotes}{critical}\%  
\newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbeforenotes}{critical}\%  
\newhookcommand@series@reload{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns}{critical}\%  
\newhookcommand@series@reload{Xnotefontsize}{critical}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenum}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenumalign}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xboxstartlinenum}\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xnotboxingsubline}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xboxendlinenum}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xafternote}\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xparafootsep}\%  
\newhookcommand@series@reload{Xwidth}{critical}\%  
\ifundef{Xhsize}\%  
{\newcommandx{Xhsize}[2][1,usedefault]{\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated\Xwidth[#1]{#2}}}%  
{\}%  
\fi
%

Now, hooks for critical notes which also apply to crossreferencing and line numbering at the sides of the page.

\newhooktoggle@series{Xlineflag}[appref,SEref]\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xtwolines}[appref,SEref]\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xmorethantwolines}[appref,SEref]\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xsublinesep}[appref,SEref,side]\%  
\newhookcommand@series{Xpagelinesep}[appref,SEref,side]\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesbutnotmore}[appref,SEref]\%  
\newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage}[appref,SEref]\%
XXII.3  Series setting

Before generating the optional commands for familiar notes, we check the `\nofamiliar` option.

```
\unless\ifnofamiliar@
  \newhookcommand@series{wrapcontentX}%
  \newhookcommand@series{beforeinsertingX}%
  \newhooktoggle@series{parindentX}
  \newhookcommand@series{hangindentX}
  \newhookcommand@series{raggedX}
  \newhookcommand@series{hsizetwocolX}
  \newhookcommand@series{hsizethreecolX}
  \newhookcommand@series{colalignX}%
  \newhookcommand@series{notenumfontX}
  \newhookcommand@series{bhooknoteX}
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{bhookgroupX}{familiar}
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{beforenotesX}{familiar}
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{maxhnotesX}{familiar}
  \newhooktoggle@series@reload{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX}{familiar}%
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{afterruleX}{familiar}
  \newhookcommand@series@reload{notefontsizeX}{familiar}
  \newhookcommand@series{afternoteX}
  \newhookcommand@series{parafootsepX}
  \newhookcommand@series{txtbeforenotesX}%
  \newhooktoggle@series{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX}%
  \newhookcommand@series{innotemarkX}[]1]%
  \newhooktoggle@series{nonoteX}%
  \ifundef{\hsizeX}{}%
  \newcommandx{\hsizeX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
    \led@warning{\hsizeX@deprecated%}
    \widthX[#1]{#2}%
  }%
  {1}%
\fi
```

XXII.3.5  Options for familiar notes
XXII. Options for endnotes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the endnotes, such as `\numberonlyfirstinline`, `\lemmaseparator` and the like, we check the `noend` option.

\unless\ifnoend@
\newhookcommand@series{Xendwraplemma}
\newhookcommand@series{Xendwrapcontent}
\newhookcommand@series{Xendnotenumfont}
\newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmadatafont}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendbhooknote}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendboxlinenum}\
\newhookcommand@series{XendboxlinENUMalign}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendboxstartlinenum}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendnotoboxingsubline}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendboxendlinenum}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendnotefontsize}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendlemmadisablefontselection}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmaseparator}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforelemmaseparator}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendafterlemmaseparator}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforenumber}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendafternumber}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendparagraph}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendafternote}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsep}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceofnumber}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendnonumber}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendnolinenumber}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendnolinenumberifannotation}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst}\
\newhooktoggle@series{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenum}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenumannotation}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenumannotationonlyfirst}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenum}\
\newhookcommand@series{Xendsymlinenumannotation}
XXII.4 Hooks for a particular footnote

\newhooktoggle@specific is a generic command to create boolean hook specific to a note.

\newcommand{\newhooktoggle@specific}[1]{\%
  \neutoggle{#1}\
  \listgadd{\hooktoggle@specific}{#1}\%
  \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}{\%}{\global\settoggle{#1@}{true}}%}

When enabling footnote option
\newhookarg@specific
\newhookarg@specific is a generic command to create argument hook specific to a note.

\newcommand{\newhookarg@specific}[1]{%
  \listgadd{\hookarg@specific}{#1}%
  \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}{\csgdef{#1@}{##1}}%When enabling footnote option
  \define@key[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{#1}{\global\csundef{#1@}}%When disabling footnote option
%
}
%
\hooktoggle@specific
\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs
The \add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs macro stores to a macro all the current values of hook toggle specific to a command. It is useful for the \Xgroupbyline option, which does not immediately add notes to the inserts list. It uses the \hooktoggle@specific list.

\def\hooktoggle@specific{}%
\newcommand{\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs}[1]{%
  \def\do##1{%
    \iftoggle{##1@}{%
      \ifcsdef{#1}{%
        \csgappto{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
      }{%
        \csgdef{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
      }%
    }{%
      \ifcsdef{#1}{%
        \csgappto{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
      }{%
        \csgdef{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
      }%
    }%
  }
  \dolistloop{\hooktoggle@specific}%
}%
%
\hookarg@specific
\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs
The same, but for optional argument of critical footnotes with assigned value.

\def\hookarg@specific{}%
\newcommand{\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs}[1]{%
  \def\do##1{%
    \ifcsvoid{##1@}{}{%
      \ifcsdef{#1}{%
        \csgappto{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
      }{%
        \csgdef{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
      }%
    }{%
      \ifcsdef{#1}{%
        \csgappto{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
      }{%
        \csgdef{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
      }%
    }%
  }
  \dolistloop{\hookarg@specific}%
}%
And now, we define some hooks specific to a note.

\newhooktoggle@specific{fulllines}\% 
\newhooktoggle@specific{nonum}\% 
\newhooktoggle@specific{nosep}\% 
\newhooktoggle@specific{noprefix}\% 
\newhooktoggle@specific{prefixmore}\% 
\newhookarg@specific{linerangesep}\% 

\nomk@ \nomk@ toggle is used by \reledpar to remove the footnote mark in the text when using \footnote\nomk. Read \reledpar handbook.

XXII.5 Alias

\Xnolemmaseparator\{\langle series\rangle\} is just an alias for \Xlemmaseparator\{\langle series\rangle\}\{\}.

XXIII Output routine

Now we begin the output routine and associated things.
XXIII.1 Extra footnotes output

With luck we might only have to change \@makecol and \@reinserts of \LaTeX{}’s kernel. Since \reledmac{}, we use etoolbox’s patching commands instead of overriding. It should provides better compatibility with other package which modify these commands.

\@ddoxtrafeet \@ddoxtrafeet is the code extending \@makecol to cater for the extra \reledmac{} feet. We have two categories of extra footnotes. By default, we order the footnote inserts so that the regular footnotes of \LaTeX{} are first, then familiar familiar footnotes and finally the critical footnotes.

\@ddoxtrafeet
\newcommand*{\@ddoxtrafeet}{% 
\IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos} {% 
\IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos} {% 
{\do@feetX\do@Xfeet}% 
\setbox\@outputbox \vbox{% 
\unvbox\@outputbox% 
\do@feet@custom@order{}{\@fnpos}% 
}% 
}% 
}\do@Xfeet\do@feetX}% 
}{% 
\do@feet@custom@order{}
}%

\@ddoxtrafeet \@ddoxtrafeet is called when \@fnpos is neither “familiar-critical”, nor “critical-familiar”, that is, when the order is more complex. In this case, people must define the order for all footnote series. If they don’t, \LaTeX{} could perform an infinite run.

\do@feet@custom@order \do@feet@custom@order is called when \@fnpos is neither “familiar-critical”, nor “critical-familiar”, that is, when the order is more complex. In this case, people must define the order for all footnote series. If they don’t, \LaTeX{} could perform an infinite run.

\newcommand{\do@feet@custom@order}[2]{% 
\def\do##1{% 
\edef\@@notesseries{\@firstoftwo##1}% 
\edef\@@notetype{\@secondoftwo##1}% 
\ifdefstring{\@@notetype}{critical}% {
\csuse{#1append@Xnotes}{\@@notesseries}}% 
\ifdefstring{\@@notetype}{familiar}% {
\csuse{#1append@notesX}{\@@notesseries}}% 
{}% 
} %
\expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{#2}%
}%

\do@Xfeet \do@Xfeet is the code extending \@makecol to cater to the extra critical feet.

\newcommand*{\do@Xfeet}{%
The extra critical feet to be added to the output. A macro which appends critical notes to the output’s routine, also adding vertical space before notes.

\newcommand{\append@Xnotes}[1]{
  \ifvoid{\csuse{#1footins}}
  \else
    \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}\
    \global\advance\skip\csuse{#1footins} by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}\
    \print@Xnotes{#1}
  \fi
}

The normal way to add one series, \print@Xnotes, is replaced by \reledpar when using \Pages.

\newcommand\print@Xnotes[1]{
  \xdef\@currentseries{#1}\
  \csuse{#1footstart}{#1}\
  \csuse{#1footgroup}{#1}\
}

We print all series of notes by looping on them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

\newcommand*{\@opXfeet}{
  \unless\ifnocritical0\
  \gdef\firstXseries{}\
  \dolistloop{\@series}\
  \fi
}

\l@ddodoreinxtrafeet \l@ddodoreinxtrafeet is the code catering for the extra footnotes within @reinserts. We use the same category and ordering as in \l@ddoxtrafeet.

\newcommand*{\l@ddodoreinxtrafeet}{
  \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{familiar-critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{critical-familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{critical-critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{critical-critical-critical}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{familiar-critical-critical}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{familiar-critical-critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\
  \IfStrEq{familiar-critical-critical-critical}{\@fnpos}{\doreinfeetX \doreinfeetX}\

\X@doreinfeet \X@doreinfeet is the code for catering for the extra critical footnotes within \@reinserts.

\newcommand*{\X@doreinfeet}{\%
  \unless\ifnocritical@
    \def\do##1{%
      \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%
        \insert\csuse{##1footins}{\unvbox\csuse{##1footins}}%
      \fi%
    \fi%
    \dolistloop{\@series}
  \fi%
}\}
%
\X@doreinfeet X

\print@notesX We have to add all the new kinds of familiar footnotes to the output routine. A macro which appends the familiar footnotes of one series onto the output routine, also adding vertical skip before notes.

\newcommand{\append@notesX}[1]{%
  \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else%
    \global\skip\csuse{footins#1} = \csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
    \global\advance\skip\csuse{footins#1} by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
    \print@notesX{#1}%
  \fi%
}
%
\append@notesX X

\do@feetX The normal way to print one series of notes. \print@notesX is replaced by reledpar when using \Pages.

\newcommand{\print@notesX[1]}{%
  \xdef@currentseries{#1}%
  \csuse{footstart#1}{#1}%
  \csuse{footgroup#1}{#1}%
}%
%
\do@feetX X

We print all the series of notes by looping over them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

\newcommand*{\do@feetX}{\%
  \unless\ifnofamiliar@
    \gdef@firstseriesX{}%
    \setbox@outputbox \vbox{%
      \unvbox@outputbox%
    }%
    \def\do##1{%
  \fi%
XXIII.2  Patching standard output’s commands

The `memoir` class does not use the "standard" versions of \@makecol and \@reinserts, due to its sidebar insert. We had better add that code if `memoir` is used. (It can be awkward dealing with \if code within \if code, so don’t use \ifl@dmemoir here.)

\ifclassloaded{memoir}{
  %
  \g@addto@macro{\m@mdoextrafeet}{\l@ddoxtrafeet}\
  \g@addto@macro{\m@mdodoreinextrafeet}{\l@ddodoreinxtrafeet}\
}{
  %
  %
}

`memoir` has not been loaded, so patch \@makecol and \@reinserts. If the `fancyhdr` package < version 3.8 has been loaded, we patch the \latex@makecol command, because this package redefines the standard \@makecol in the preamble to call \latex@makecol, which has been let to \@makecol. If this package is not loaded, we directly patch \@makecol. If the `fancyhdr` package ≥ version 3.8, we also directly patch \@makecol, because `fancyhdr` does its own patch \AtBeginDocument.
It turns out that \@doclearpage also needs modifying.

\if@led@nofoot We have to check if there are any leftover feet.
\newif\if@led@nofoot
\if@led@nofoot
% \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{% If the memoir class is loaded, we hook into its modified \@doclearpage.
\g@addto@macro\@mem@extranofeet{%\%
  \def\do#1{%\%
    \unless\ifnocritical0%
    \ifvoid\csuse{#1footins}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
    \fi%
    \unless\ifnofamiliar0%
    \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
    \fi%
  }
  \dolistloop{\@series}%
}%;
%}{
XXIV  Page numbering in parallel typsetting

The \reledpar package has two options which change the way page numbering works. We need to implement these options on \reledmac and not on \reledpar because they have some consequences for the \reledmac auxiliary files (numbered file; see \cite{V.12 p. 134}). The sameparallelpagenumber option allows the same page number on both left and right side The prevpgnotnumbered option allows an empty (not numbered) right-side page before \Pages.
We cannot implement these two options by changing the value of the page counter, since its value is used by many \TeX features to determine whether a page is left (even numbered) or right (odd numbered). Consequently, we have to do it by patching \thepage, in order to use the value of the \par@page counter instead of the value of the page counter.

This counter will be increased in a patched version of \TeX’s \@outputpage macro, as is the page counter in this macro. However, this increase will take account of the options.

\par@patch@thepage patches \thepage in order to use the value of \par@page counter and not the value of page. It must be called after any redefinition of \thepage. That is why we insert it at the end of the \TeX macro \pagenumbering, which is called by some \xxxmatter commands. In cases when we are using the \memoir class, we insert it at the end of \@mempnum. When using \pagenumbering, we also need to reset the \par@page counter. Consequently, we put \par@patch@thepage and counter reset in \par@patch@pagenumbering We also call \par@patch@thepage at the beginning of the document.

\newcommand{\par@patch@thepage}{% 
\ifboolexpr{% \bool{sameparallelpagenumber} or \bool{prevpgnotnumbered} }{% \patchcmd{\thepage}{page}{\par@page}{}{\led@error@fail@patch@thepage} }{% 
\par@patch@pagenumbering{\par@patch@thepage}{% 
\setcounter{par@page}{1}\par@patch@thepage} \fi%
As its name says, \@outputpage is a \TeX{} macro called in the output routine. It is this macro which increases the page counter. We patch it in order to increase, conditionally, the \par@page counter, and to set correctly the page number sent to the auxiliary files (.1, .2, etc.).
You can mark a place in the text using a command of the form \edlabel{⟨foo⟩}, and later refer to it using the label ⟨foo⟩ by typing \edpageref{⟨foo⟩}, or \edlineref{⟨foo⟩} or \pstartref. These reference commands will produce, respectively, the page, line sub-line and pstart on which the \edlabel{⟨foo⟩} command occurred.

The reference macros warn you if a reference is made to an undefined label. If {⟨foo⟩} has been used as a label before, the \edlabel{⟨foo⟩} command will issue a complaint; subsequent \edpageref and \edlineref commands will refer to the latest occurrence of \edlabel{⟨foo⟩}.

Set up a new list, \labelref@list, to hold the page, line and sub-line numbers for each label.

Two convenience macros to zero three / four labeling counters in one go.

The \edlabel command first writes a \@lab macro to the \linenum@out file. It then checks to see that the \labelref@list actually has something in it (if not, it creates a dummy entry), and pops the next value for the current label, storing it in \label@refs. Finally it defines the label to be \empty so that any future check will turn up the fact that it has been used.

This version of the original EDMAC \label uses \@bsphack and \@esphack to eliminate extra space problems and also use the \LaTeX write methods for the .aux file.

Jesse Billett found that the original code could be off by several pages. This version, hopefully cures that, and also allows for non-arabic page numbering.
Use code from the kernel \label command to write the correct page number. Also define an hypertarget if hyperref package is loaded.

```latex
\protected@write\@auxout{\string\l@dparsedstartline\l@dparsedstartsub||\annot@start|\the\c@pstartR{#1}}% 
\ifdef{\hypertarget}{\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}\else\fi% 
\else% 
\write\linenumout{\string\@lab}% 
\ifdef{\labelref@list\empty}{\xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@@}}\else% 
\g@p\labelref@listR to\label@refs% 
\fi% 
\ifvmode% 
\advancelabel@refs% 
\fi% 
\}%
```

In cases where \edlabel is the first element in a paragraph, we have a problem with line counts, because line counts change only at the first horizontal box of the paragraph. Hence, we need to test \edlabel if it occurs at the start of a paragraph. To do so, we use \ifvmode. If the test is true, we must advance by one unit the amount of text we write into the .aux file. We do so with the \advmangle@refs command.

\newcounter{line}
\newcounter{subline}
\newcommand{\advancelabel@refs}{
\setcounter{line}{\expandafter\labelreffparseline\label@refs}
\setcounter{absline}{\expandafter\labelreffparseline\label@refs}
\setcounter{absline}{\expandafter\labelreffparseline\label@refs}
\ifsublines%
\setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelreffparsubline\label@refs}
\setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelreffparsubline\label@refs}
\setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelreffparsubline\label@refs}
\def\label@refs{\theline|\thesubline|\theabsline}
\else%
\def\label@refs{\theline|0|\theabsline}
\fi
\l@dmake@labels  The \l@dmake@labels macro gets executed when the labels file is read. For each label it defines a macro, whose name is made up partly from the label you supplied, that contains the page, line and sub-line numbers. But first it checks to see whether the label has already been used (and complains if it has).

The initial use of \newcommand is to catch if \l@dmake@labels has been previously defined (by a class or package).

#1 page number, #2 line number, #3 sub-line number, #4 absolute line number, #5 line number annotation, #6 pstart number, #7 label.

\newcommand*{\l@dmake@labels}{%
\def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7{%
\expandafter\ifx\csname the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#7\endcsname\relax%
\else%
\led@warn@DuplicateLabel{\csuse{XR@prefix}#7}%
\fi
\global\providetoggle{label@#7@ledRcol}%False is the default value of this toggle, which tells us whether a label is linked to the right or left side
\csgdef{the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#7}{#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6}\relax%
\ignorespaces}
%

\LaTeX reads the aux file at both the beginning and end of the document, so we have to switch off duplicate label checking after the first time the file is read.

\AtBeginDocument{%
\def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7{}%
}
%

\@lab  The \@lab command, which appears in the \linenum@out file, appends the current value of page, line, sub-line, and absolute line to the \labelref@list. These values are defined by the earlier \@page, \@nl, and the \sub@on and \sub@off commands appearing in the \linenum@out file.

\LaTeX uses the page counter for page numbers. However, it appears that this is not the right place to grab the page number. That task is now done in the \edlabel macro. This version of \@lab appends just the current line and sub-line numbers to \labelref@list.

\newcommand*{\@lab}{%
\applabel \applabel, if called in \edtext will insert automatically both a starting and an ending label for the current edtext lines.

\newcommand*{\applabel}[1]{% 
  \if@edtext@secondarg@% 
  Label should not be already defined. 
  \ifsundef{the@label#1}{% 
    \csdef{the@label#1}{applabel}% 
  }{% 
    \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{#1 (applabel)}% 
  }% 
  Parse the \edtext line numbers and annotations. 
  \expandafter\l@dp@rsefootspec\l@d@nums|\expandafter\parse@annot\l@current@annot|% 
  Use the \LaTeX standard hack for label. 
  \@bsphack% 
  And now, write the data in the auxiliary file. 
  \ifledRcol% 
  \protected@write\@auxout{}% 
  \{\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\l@dparsedstartpage|\l@dparsedstartline|\l@dparsedstartsub|\l@annot@start|\the\c@pstartR|#1: start}%}
Use the \LaTeX{} standard hack for label.
\@esphack
% If using hyperref, store the label in a list for the current edtext, to call later an hyper-
% target for the end of the lemma.
\ifdef\hypertarget{%\ifcsundef{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}{\global\cslet{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}\{\relax\}\{#1\}%\listcsgadd{applabel@thisedtext@\the\@edtext@level}\{#1\}%}\{%\\% Warning if \applabel{} is called outside of \edtext.\%}
End of \applabel

\edlabelS  \edlabelS and \edlabelE are just used to mark the beginning and the end of a passage.
\edlabelE
\edlabelSE
\newcommand{\edlabelS}[1]{\edlabel{#1:start}}
\newcommand{\edlabelE}[1]{\edlabel{#1:end}}
\newcommand{\edlabelSE}[1]{\edlabelS{#1} \edlabelE{#1}}

\wrap@edcrossref  \wrap@edcrossref is called around all \reledmac crossref commands, except those which start with x. It adds the hyperlink.
\newrobustcmd{\wrap@edcrossref}[2]{\ifdef{\hyperlink}{}{\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}}{#2}

\edpageref  If the specified label exists, \edpageref gives its page number.
\newcommand*{\edpageref}[1]{l@dref@undefined{#1} \wrap@edcrossref{#1}{l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}}
\newcommand*{\xpageref}[1]{l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}

\edlineref  If the specified label exists, \edlineref gives its line number.
\newcommand*{\sublineref}[1]{% 
\l@def{}{#1}% 
\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{% 
\providetoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}% Required for the first run, when the 
label has not yet been parsed on the .aux file 
\iftoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}% 
{\sublinenumrep{\l@getrefnum{3}{#1}}}% 
{\sublinenumrep{\l@getrefnum{3}{#1}}}% 
} 
\xsublineref{#1}% 
\newcommand*{\xsublineref}[1]{\l@getrefnum{3}{#1}}%

\sublineref If the specified label exists, \sublineref gives its sub-line number.

\newcommand*{\abslineref}[1]{% 
\l@def{}{#1}% 
\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{% 
\providetoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}% Required for the first run, when the 
label has not yet been parsed on the .aux file 
\iftoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}% 
{\abslinenumrep{\l@getrefnum{4}{#1}}}% 
{\abslinenumrep{\l@getrefnum{4}{#1}}}% 
} 
\xabslineref{#1}% 
\newcommand*{\xabslineref}[1]{\l@getrefnum{4}{#1}}%

\abslineref If the specified label exists, \abslineref gives its absolute line number. This is generally used only by \reledmac internal macros.

\newcommand*{\annotationref}[1]{% 
\l@def{}{#1}% 
\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{% 
\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\Xwraplinenumannotationref}{% 
\l@getrefnum{5}{#1}% 
} 
\xannotationref{#1}% 
\newcommand*{\xannotationref}[1]{\l@getrefnum{5}{#1}}%

\annotationref If the specified label exists, \annotationref gives the line number annotation with which it is associated.
If the specified label exists, \pstartref gives its pstart number.

\newcommand*{\pstartref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{6}{#1}}}%
\newcommand*{\xpstartref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{6}{#1}}%

\xflagref finds the side flag of any ref defined with \edlabel.

\newcommand*{\xflagref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{7}{#1}}%

The next three macros are used by the referencing commands above, and do the job of extracting the right numbers from the label macro that contains the page, line, and sub-line number.

\l@dref@undefined The \l@dref@undefined macro is called when you refer to a label with the normal referencing macros. Its argument is a label, and it just checks that the label has been defined.

\newcommand*{\l@dref@undefined}[1]{\expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax\led@warn@RefUndefined{#1}\fi}%

\l@dgetref@num Next, \l@dgetref@num fetches the number we want. It has two arguments: the first is simply a digit, specifying whether to fetch a page (1), line (2), sub-line (3), (4) pstart number or (5) side flag. (This switching is done by calling \l@dlabel@parse.) The second argument is the label-macro, which because of the \@lab macro above is defined to be a string of the type 123|456|789.

\newcommand*{\l@dgetref@num}[2]{\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\l@dlabel@parse\csname the@label#2\endcsname|#1|}%
Notice that we slipped another | delimiter into the penultimate line of \l@dgetref@num, to keep the "switch-number" separate from the reference numbers. This | is used as another parameter delimiter by \l@dlabel@parse, which extracts the appropriate number from its first argument. The | delimited arguments consist of the expanded label-macro (three reference numbers), followed by the switch-number (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) which defines which of the former seven numbers to extract. (It was given earlier as the first argument of \l@dgetref@num.)

\l@dlabel@parse  \newcommand*{\l@dlabel@parse}{}
\def\l@dlabel@parse#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8{%
    \ifcase #8%
        \or #1%
        \or #2%
        \or #3%
        \or #4%
        \or #5%
        \or #6%
        \or #7%
    \fi
%

\xxref  The \xxref command takes two arguments, both of which are labels, e.g., \xxref{mouse}{elephant}. It first does some checking to make sure that the labels do exist (if one does not, those numbers are set to zero). Then it calls \linenum and sets the beginning page, line, and sub-line numbers to those of the place where \label{mouse} was placed, and the ending numbers to those at \{elephant\}. The point of this is to be able to manufacture footnote line references to passages which cannot be specified in the normal way as the first argument to \edtext for one reason or another. Using \xxref in the second argument of \edtext lets you set things up at least semi-automatically.

\xxref  \newcommand*{\xxref}{2}{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax%
        \let\@tempa\zz@@@%
        \def\@tempc{}%
    \else%
        \def\@tempa{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}|%
            \l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}|%
            \l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}%
        }%
        \edef\@tempc{\l@dgetref@num{5}{#1}%
            \l@dgetref@num{6}{#1}%
        }%
    \fi%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname\relax%
        \let\@tempb\zz@@@%
        \def\@tempd{}%
    \else%
\def\appref{}\def\SEref{}\def\apprefwithpage{}\def\SErefwithpage{}\def\apprefwithpage\SErefwithpage and \SEonlypage print cross-ref to some start / end lines defined by specific commands. It prints the lines as they should be printed in the apparatus (critical notes for not suffixed versions, endnotes for suffixed versions).

Here we define hooks similar to some those related to critical footnotes or endnotes.

So, first declare the default value of the hooks for the pseudo-series. Also declare the internal toggle which are switch by reledmac.

\def\Xtwolines@appref{}\def\Xtwolines@SEref{}\def\Xmorethantwolines@appref{}\def\Xmorethantwolines@SEref{}\def\Xlinerangeseparator@appref{\endashchar}\def\Xlinerangeseparator@SEref{\endashchar}\def\Xsublinesep@appref{\fullstop}\def\Xsublinesep@SEref{\fullstop}\def\Xpagelinesep@appref{\fullstop}\def\Xpagelinesep@SEref{\fullstop}\newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@appref}
\newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@SEref}\%
\newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@appref}\%
\newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@SEref}\%
\newtoggle{Xlineflag@appref}\%
\toggletrue{Xlineflag@appref} \% Here exception
\newtoggle{Xlineflag@SEref}\%
\toggletrue{Xlineflag@SEref} \% Here exception
\newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@SEref}\% Never changed, just for the test in \setprintlines
\newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@appref}\% Idem
\newtoggle{Xnolinenumber@SEref}\% Idem
\newtoggle{Xnolinenumber@appref}\% Idem
\newtoggle{Xnolinenumberifannotation@SEref}\% Idem
\newtoggle{Xnolinenumberifannotation@appref}\% Idem
\def\Xlinenumannotationposition@appref{after} \%
\def\Xlinenumannotationposition@SEref{after} \%
\def\Xwraplinenumannotation@appref{\textsuperscript}\%
\def\Xwraplinenumannotation@SEref{\textsuperscript}\%
\newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@appref}\%
\newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@SEref}\%
\def\Xendtwolines@apprefwithpage{} \%
\def\Xendtwolines@SErefwithpage{} \%
\def\Xendmorethantwolines@apprefwithpage{} \%
\def\Xendmorethantwolines@SErefwithpage{} \%
\def\Xendlinerangeseparator@apprefwithpage{\endashchar} \%
\def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefwithpage{\endashchar} \%
\def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefonlypage{\endashchar} \%
\def\Xendbeforepagenumber@apprefwithpage{p.} \%
\def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SErefwithpage{p.} \%
\def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SEonlypage{p.} \%
\def\Xendafterpagenumber@apprefwithpage{} } \%
\def\Xendafterpagenumber@SErefwithpage{} } \%
\def\Xendafterpagenumber@SEonlypage{} } \%
\def\Xendlineprefixsingle@apprefwithpage{} \%
\def\Xendlineprefixmore@apprefwithpage{} \%
Note that some of these hooks are declared but no user command can change their values. Such hooks are not pertinent for appref and apprefwithpage pseudo-series, but their values are nonetheless tested in some macros.
Now, declare the default values of \@apprefprefixsingle and \@apprefprefixmore, \@SErefprefix, \@SErefprefixmore and the commands which defines them.

\newcommand{\apprefprefixsingle}{}
\newcommand{\apprefprefixmore}{}
\newcommand{\SErefprefixsingle}{}
\newcommand{\SErefprefixmore}{}
\newcommand{\setapprefprefixsingle}[1]{}
\newcommand{\setSErefprefixsingle}[1]{}
\newcommand{\setapprefprefixmore}[1]{}
\newcommand{\setSErefprefixmore}[1]{}
And not \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle and \setSErefonlypageprefixmore.

And now, the main commands: \appref, \apprefwithpage, \SEref and \SErefwithpage. These commands call \refformated@ and \refformatedwithpage, which calls \printlines and \printendlines. That is why we have previously declared all hooks values tested inside these last commands.
\edmakelabel Sometimes the \edlabel command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired; you can use the \edmakelabel macro make your own label. For example, if you insert \edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0} you will have created a new label, and a later call to \edpageref{elephant} would print "10" and \lineref{elephant} would print "25". The sub-line number here is zero. \edmakelabel takes a label, followed by a page and a line number(s) as arguments. \TeX defines a \makelabel macro.
which is used in lists. Peter Wilson has changed the name to \edmakelabel.

(If you are only going to refer to such a label using \xxref, then you can omit entries in the same way as with \linenum (see VI.3 p. 151 and V.9 p. 113), since \xxref makes a call to \linenum in order to do its work.)

XXV.1 Compatibility with xref

Here, we provide compatibility with the xref to enable reledmac’s cross-referencing to external documents. We assume that the user loads xref before reledmac, but uses \externaldocument after loading reledmac.

\XR@test
First, we patch the xr macro \XR@test, which is called on every line of the external .aux file, in order to also call macros specific to reledmac.

\XR@test@mac
The \XR@test@mac takes the full content of a line of the external .aux files, with the three final dots added by xr.

\XR@test@mac@test
And finally, \XR@test@mac@test does the job. This code is based on the \XR@test macro of the xr package. However, not that the \XR@prefix is not called here, but it is integrated directly in \l@dmake@labels and \l@dmake@labelsR.
XXVI  Sidenotes

Regular \marginpars do not work inside numbered text — they do not produce any note but do put an extra unnumbered blank line into the text.

\@xympar Changing \@xympar a little at least ensures that \marginpars in numbered text do not disturb the flow.

We provide sidenotes as replacement for \marginpar in numbered text.

\sidenote@margin \sidenotemargin \@dgetsidenote@margin
These are the sidenote equivalents to \line@margin and \linenummargin for specifying which margin. The default is the right margin (opposite to the default for line numbers). \@dgetsidenote@margin returns the number associated to sidenote margin:

- \textbf{left}: 0
- \textbf{right}: 1
- \textbf{outer}: 2
- \textbf{inner}: 3
\newbox\l@dlp@rbox
\newbox\l@drp@rbox
\newdimen\ledlsnotewidth \ledlsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\newdimen\ledrsnotewidth \ledrsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\newdimen\ledlsnotesep \ledlsnotesep=\linenumsep
\newdimen\ledrsnotesep \ledrsnotesep=\linenumsep
\newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}
\newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}
\newcommand*{\ledsidenote}{⟨text⟩} is the command for a moveable sidenote.

\ledleftnote, \ledrightnote, \ledinnernote, \ledouternote are the user commands for left, right, inner and outer sidenotes. The two last ones are just alias for the two first ones, depending on the page number. \ledsidenote{⟨text⟩} is the command for a moveable sidenote.

We need two boxes to store sidenote texts.

These specify the width of the left/right boxes (initialised to \marginparwidth), their distance from the text (initialised to \linenumsep), and the fonts used.

All these macro call the macro \ledsidenote@, as they have the same structure.
The "footnotes" for left, right, and moveable sidenotes. The whole scheme is reminiscent of the critical footnotes code.
Put the left/right text into boxes, but just save the moveable text. \l@dcsnotetext, \l@dcnote are etoolbox’s lists which will store the content of sidenotes. We store the content in lists, because we need to loop later on them, in case many sidenote co-exist for the same line. That is there some special test to do, in order to:

- Store the content of \ledsidenote to \l@dcsnotetext in any cases.
- Store the content of \rightsidenote to:
  - \l@dcsnotetext if \ledsidenote is to be put on right.
  - \l@dcsnotetextR if \ledsidenote is to be put on left.
- Store the content of \leftsidenote to:
  - \l@dcsnotetext if \ledsidenote is to be put on left.
  - \l@dcsnotetextL if \ledsidenote is to be put on right.

\vl@dlsnote and \vl@dosnote just call \vl@dlsnote or \vl@dosnote, depending on the page.
\setl@dlp@rbox \setl@dlprbox{(lednums)}{(tag)}{(text)} puts (text) into the \l@dlp@rbox box. And similarly for the right side box. It is these boxes that finally get displayed in the margins.

\newcommand*{\setl@dlp@rbox}[1]{%  
\begingroup  
\parindent\z@  \hsize=\ledlsnotewidth  
\ledlsnotefontsetup% We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect the ragging  
\global\setbox\l@dlp@rbox  
\ifleftnoteup  
\vbox to\z@{{\ledlsnotefontsetup\vss #1}}% We put \ledlsnotefontsetup inside footnote because required for color command. Note the {} to keep setting local.  
\else  
\vbox to 0.70\baselineskip{{\ledlsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}}%  
\fi  
\endgroup  }

\newcommand*{\setl@drp@rbox}[1]{%  
\begingroup  
\parindent\z@  \hsize=\ledrsnotewidth  
\ledrsnotefontsetup% We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect the ragging  
\global\setbox\l@drp@rbox  
\ifrightnoteup  
\vbox to\z@{{\ledrsnotefontsetup\vss #1}}% We put \ledrsnotefontsetup inside footnote because required for color command. Note the {} to keep setting local.  
\else  
\vbox to 0.7\baselineskip{{\ledrsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}}%  
\fi  
\endgroup  }

\newif\ifleftnoteup
\leftnoteuptrue

\@sidenotesep This macro is used to separate sidenotes of the same line.

\newcommand*{\setsidenotesep}[1]{\gdef\@sidenotesep{#1}}
\newcommand*{\@sidenotesep}{, }
This macro puts any moveable sidenote text into the left or right sidenote box, depending on which margin it is meant to go in. It's a very much stripped down version of \affixline@num.

Before do it, we concatenate all moveable sidenotes of the line, using \@sidenotesep as separator. It is the result that we put on the sidenote.

\newcommand*{\affixside@note}{%
\prepare@edindex@fornote{\the\page@num|\the\line@num|\the\subline@num|\the\page@num|\the\line@num|\the\subline@num|\the\page@num|\the\line@num|\the\subline@num|}
\def\sidenotecontent@{}%
\numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
\def\do##1{% \ifnumequal{\itemcount@}{0}{% \appto\sidenotecontent@{##1}}% Not print not separator before the 1st note {\appto\sidenotecontent@{\@sidenotesep ##1}}% \numgdef{\itemcount@}{\itemcount@+@ne}% }% \dolistloop{\l@dcsnotetext}%=\numgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{}% %

And we do the same for left and right notes (not movable).
\gdef\@templ@d{}%
\gdef\@templ@n{\l@dcsnotetext\l@dcsnotetext@l\l@dcsnotetext@r}%
\ifx\@templ@d\@templ@n \else % \if@twocolumn% \if@firstcolumn%
\setl@dlp@rbox{##1}{\sidenotecontent@}%
\else%
\setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
\fi%
\else%
\@l@dtempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
\ifnum\@l@dtempcntb=@ne%
\advance\@l@dtempcntb by\page@num%
\fi%
\ifodd\@l@dtempcntb%
\setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
\gdef\sidenotecontent@{}%
\numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
\dolistloop{\l@dcsnotetext@l}%=\numgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{}%
\setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
\else%
\setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
\gdef\sidenotecontent@{}%
\numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
\fi%
XXVII Minipages and such

We can put footnotes into minipages. The preparatory code has been set up earlier, all that remains is to ensure that it is available inside a minipage box. This requires some alteration to the kernel code, specifically the \@iiiminipage and \endminipage macros. We will arrange this so that additional series can be easily added.

\l@dfeetbeginmini \l@dfeetendmini

These will be the hooks in \@iiiminipage and \endminipage. They can be extended to handle other things if necessary.

\l@dedbeginmini \l@dedendmini

These handle the initiation and closure of critical footnotes in a minipage environment.

\l@dpairing \r@col

\l@dpairing \r@col
These handle the initiation and closure of familiar footnotes in a minipage environment.

\newcommand*{\l@dfambeginmini}{\unless\ifnofamiliar@%\
   \def\do##1{%\csletcs{vfootnote##1}{mpvfootnote##1}}%\dolistloop{@series}%\fi}%
\newcommand*{\l@dfamendmini}{\unless\ifnofamiliar@%\csuse{mpappendnotesX}\fi}%
\newcommand*{\mpappendnotesX}{%
\def\do##1{% 
\m@append@notesX{##1}% 
\dolistloop{\@series}% 
\fi}% 
\newcommand{\mp@append@notesX}[1]{% 
\ifvoid\csuse{mpfootins#1}\else% 
  \ifcsstring{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}{}{% 
    \setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}=\vbox{% 
      \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}% 
      \ifcsdef{hsize\csuse{series@display#1}X@#1}{% 
        \hsize\csuse{hsize\csuse{series@display#1}X@#1}% 
      }{}% 
      \noindent\csuse{txtbeforenotesX@#1}% 
      \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}% 
      \@parboxrestore% 
    }% 
  }% 
\csuse{mpfootgroup#1}{#1}% 
\fi% 
}% 

This is our extended form of the kernel \@iiiminipage defined in ltboxes.dtx.

\patchcmd{% 
{@iiiminipage}% 
{\let\footnotetext\mpfootnotetext}% 
{\let\footnotetext\mpfootnotetext\l@dfeetbeginmini}% 
{}% 
{\l@derror@fail@patch@@iiiminipage}% 
}%

This is our extended form of the kernel \endminipage defined in ltboxes.dtx.

\patchcmd{% 
{\endminipage}% 
{\footnoterule}% 
{\footnoterule\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}% 
{}% 
{\l@derror@fail@patch@endminipage}% 
}%

\patchcmd{% 
{\endminipage}% 
{\@minipagefalse}% 
{\l@dfeetendmini\@minipagefalse}% 
{}% 
{\l@derror@fail@patch@endminipage}% 
}%
\@dunboxmpfoot insert normal footnotes for ledgroup.

\newcommand*{\@dunboxmpfoot}{%
  \vskip\skip\@mpfootins
  \normalcolor
  \footnoterule
  \@advance\parledgroup@beforenormalnotes
  \unvbox\@mpfootins%
}
%

When using parallel ledgroup, we need to store the vertical space added before footnote, in order to compensate them between left and right pages.

\newcommand{\@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}{%
  \ifparledgroup
    \ifl@dpairing
      \ifledRcol
        \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+\skip\@mpfootins}
      \else
        \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+\skip\@mpfootins}
      \fi
    \fi
  \fi
%

ledgroup This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, fixed width minipage.

\newenvironment{ledgroup}{%
  \resetprevpage@num%
  \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
  \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
  \l@dfeetbeginmini%
  \%
  \par
  \unskip
  \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
    \l@dunboxmpfoot
  \fi
  \l@dfeetendmini%
  \@ledgroupfalse%
}{%
ledgroupsized \begin{ledgroupsized}[(pos)]{(width)}
This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of
a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, variable (width) minipage.
The optional (pos) controls the sideways position of numbered text.
\newenvironment{ledgroupsized}[2][1]{%}
% \hsizem #2\relax
% \let\ledllfill\hfil
\let\ledrlfill\hfil
\def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{l}%
% Left adjusted numbered lines
\ifx\@tempa\@tempb
\let\ledllfill\relax
\else
\def\@tempb{r}%
\ifx\@tempa\@tempb
% Right adjusted numbered lines
\let\ledrlfill\relax
\fi
\fi
%
% Set up the footnoting.
\def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
\let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
\l@dfeetbeginmini%
\par
\unskip
\ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
\l@dunboxmpfoot
\fi
\l@dfeetendmini%
}%
Close the \ifnoledgroup\else.

\fi%
%

These boolean tests check if we are in the notes of a ledgroup. If we are, we do not number the lines. It could be useful for parallel ledgroup of \reledpar.

\newif\ifledgroupnotesL%
\newif\ifledgroupnotesR%
%

XXVIII  Indexing

Here is some code for indexing using page and line numbers.

XXVIII.1  Looking on package order

First, ensure that \imakeidx or \indextools is loaded before \eledmac.

\AtBeginDocument{%
\unless\ifl@imakeidx%
  \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{imakeidx}}{}
\fi%
\unless\ifl@indextools%
  \@ifpackageloaded{indextools}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{indextools}}{}
\fi%
\unless\ifl@footmisc%
  \@ifpackageloaded{footmisc}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{footmisc}}{}
\fi%
%

XXVIII.2  Auxiliary macros for \edindex

In order to get a correct line number we have to use the label/ref mechanism. These macros are for that.

\newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}
\newcommand{\edindexlab}{$&$
\newcounter{labidx}
\setcounter{labidx}{0}
%

This macro sets an \indexlabel.

\newcommand{\doedindexlabel}{%\stepcounter{labidx}\indexlabel{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
}

This macro makes up the page/line number combo from the label/ref. The associated counter is never directly used, but it is required in order to not have any error message with \edgls.

\newcounter{pageline}\renewcommand{\thepageline}{\thepage\pagelinesep\xlineref{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
}

These macros make up the page/line start/end number when the \index command is called in critical notes.

\newcommand{\thestartpageline}{\l@dparsedstartpage\pagelinesep\l@dparsedstartline%
}
\newcommand{\theendpageline}{\l@dparsedendpage\pagelinesep\l@dparsedendline%
}

This counter is incremented at the beginning of each note (either a footnote or a sidenote), and decremented at the end of each note. If its value is greater than 0, that means we are inside a note.

\newcounter{\edindex@fornote@}

This macro is called at the beginning of each critical note. It switches some parameters, to allow index referring to this note, with reference to page and line number. It also defines \@edinnote@command which will be printed as an encapsulating command after the |.
\newcommand{\prepare@edindex@fornote}[1]{\% 
\l@dp@rsefootspec#1\% \advance\@edindex@fornote@\@ne\% }\%
\get@edindex@ledinnote@command

The \get@edindex@ledinnote@command macro defines a \@ledinnote@command command which is added as an attribute (text inserted after |) of the next index entry.

Consequently, we write the definition of the location reference attribute in the .xdy file.

\newcommand{\get@edindex@ledinnote@command}{\%
\ifxindy@ \gdef\@ledinnote@command{% ledinnote\thelabidx\% }
\ifxindyhyperref@ \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%(define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx")|--J 
\space\space(markup-locref|--J 
\eledmacmarkuplocrefdepth|--J 
:open "\string\ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}{"|--J 
:attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"|--J 
) }
}\% 
\else \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%(define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx")|--J 
\space\space(markup-locref|--J 
\eledmacmarkuplocrefdepth|--J 
:open "\string\ledinnote[@index@command]{\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}{"|--J 
:attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"|--J 
) }
}\% 
\fi \%
\ifxindy@ \gdef\@ledinnote@command{ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}{}% 
\else \gdef\@ledinnote@command{ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}{}% 
\fi \%}

If we do not use xindy option, \@ledinnote@command will produce something like ledinnote{formattingcommand}.

\else \%
\gdef\@ledinnote@command{% ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}{}% 
}\% 
\fi \%

If we do not use xindy option, \@ledinnote@command will produce something like ledinnote{formattingcommand}.
XXVIII.4 Analysis of command in indexed text

\get@index@command

This macro is used to analyze if a text to be indexed has a command after a \.|  

\def\get@index@command|#1|+{%
\gdef\@index@txt|#1|%
\gdef\@index@command|#2|%\xdef\@index@parenthesis{|%
\IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{{}|{%
\StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}|{\@index@command@%
\global\let\@index@command\@index@command@
\xdef\@index@parenthesis{{}|
\IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{)}}{%
\StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}|{\@index@command@%
\global\let\@index@command\@index@command@
\xdef\@index@parenthesis{}}%
\}|
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
\}%
XXVIII.6 Main code

Eledmac and ledmac were using the specific indexing tools of the memoir in order to allow multiple index. However, eledmac used imakeidx or indextools tools when one of these two packages was loaded. This system forced to maintain a double code, which was not very useful. Since reledmac, we use only the imakeidx or indextools tools.

The memoir class provides more flexible indexing than the standard classes. We need different code if the memoir class is being used, except if imakeidx or indextools is used.

\edindex \@wredindex \dummy@edindex
Write the index information to the idx file.
\newcommandx{\@wredindex}{[2][1=\expandonce\jobname,usedefault]{% #1 = the index name, #2 = the text
\begingroup
\let\emph@firstofone\emph
\let\textbf@firstofone\textbf
\let\textit@firstofone\textit
\let\textmd@firstofone\textmd
\let\textnormal@firstofone\textnormal
\let\textrm@firstofone\textrm
\let\textsc@firstofone\textsc
\let\textsf@firstofone\textsf
\let\textsl@firstofone\textsl
\let\texttt@firstofone\texttt
\xdef\@tmp{#2}%To be used in IfSubStr instead of #2 directly. Avoid some expansion bugs (for example with \edindex{textsc{something}})
\endgroup
\ifl@imakeidx
\ifnum\@edindex@fornote@>\z@\IfSubStr[1]{\@tmp}{|}{{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}
\get@edindex@ledinnote@command
\expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|\@ledinnote@command}{\thestartpageline}%
Need to add the definition of \edindex to \makeindex, and initialise \edindex to do nothing.

\pretocmd{\makeindex}{%
  \def\edindex{\ifboolexpr{\boolfalse{numbering} or \boolfalse{numberingR} or \boolfalse{l@dprintingpages} or \boolfalse{l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
    \@bsphack
    \doedindexlabel
    \begingroup
    \@sanitize
    \@wredindex
  }{%
    \led@warn@edinde@outsidenumbering
    \index
  }%
  }%
}%
\protect\newcommand{\edindex}{\@bsphack\@esphack}
\hyperlinkformat \hyperlinkformat command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink and a format, when indexing.

\hyperlinkR \hyperlinkR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink and \@Rlineflag, when indexing.

\hyperlinkformatR \hyperlinkformatR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink, a format and a \@Rlineflag, when indexing.

\get@edindex@hyperref \@edindex@hyperref is to be used to define the \@edindex@hyperref macro, which, in index, links to the point where the index was called (with hyperref).

We have to disable temporary spaces to work through a xstring bug (or feature?)

Now, we define \@edindex@hyperref if the hyperindex of hyperref is enabled.
% If we use both xindy and hyperref, first get the \protect\cs{index@command} command.
% Then define \protect\cs{@edindex@hyperref} in the form \verb+eledmacXXX+. 
% \begin{macrocode}
{\ifxindyhyperref@%
\IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}{
{\get@index@command#1+}
{\get@index@command#1|+}
\gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|eledmac\thelabidx}\
}\else%
\gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|eledmac\thelabidx}\
\fi%}
}\% 
% If we start a reference range by a opening parenthesis, store the \thelabidx for the current \edindex, then define \@edindex@hyperref in the form |(eledmac\thelabidx).
% \begin{macrocode}
\IfStrEq{@index@parenthesis}{}%
{\csxdef{xindyparenthesis@0@index@txt}{\thelabidx}\
\gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|eledmac\thelabidx}% 
}\% 
% This \thelabidx will be called back at the closing parenthesis, to have the same number in \@edindex@hyperref command that we had at the opening parenthesis. \@edindex@hyperref start by a closing parenthesis, then followed by eledmacXXX where XXX is the \thelabidx of the opening \edindex.
% \begin{macrocode}
\IfStrEq{@index@parenthesis}{})%
"innote" and "notenumber" option of \texttt{indextools} package

The \texttt{\led@set@index@fornote} is called when a familiar footnote is inserted — and not when it is read — and changes the \texttt{index} command depending on the option of the \texttt{indextools} package. Its only argument is the note series.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\led@set@index@fornote}[1]{%
  \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
    \let\index\nindex%
  {}%
  \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
    \let\index\nindex%
  }%
%
XXVIII.8 "innote" and "notenumber" option of \texttt{indextools} package
\end{verbatim}
The \texttt{\textbackslash led@reinit@index@fornote} just reset the default value of \texttt{\index}.

First those which arguments are \texttt{⟨⟨options⟩⟩}{⟨⟨label⟩⟩}{⟨⟨insert⟩⟩}.

Here, we define the \texttt{\gls}-like commands prefixed by \texttt{ed}, only if the package \texttt{glossaries} is loaded.
Then those which arguments are \{\text{(options)}\}\{\text{(label)}\}\{\text{(link text)}\}.

\gdef\edglsom{}\%  \
\listgadd\edglsom{glsadd}\%  \
\renewcommand\do[1]{\%  
\expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname[3][1,\%  
\usedefault]{\%  
\doedindexlabel\%  
\ifdef\noexpands@edgl\%  \
\csname ed#1\endcsname[counter=pageline,noindex,##1][##2]##3\%  
\else\%  
\ifdef\hyperpage{}\%  
\csname ed#1\endcsname[pages\{pageline\},##1][##2]##3\%  
\fi\%  
}\%  
\dolistloop{\edglsomo}\%  
\}

Then those which arguments are \{\text{(options)}\}\{\text{(label)}\}.
XXX Verse

The original code is principally Wayne Sullivan's code from edstanza. However, the code has been many time modified by Maïeul Rouquette in order to obtain new features and improved compatibility with reledpar.

XXX.1 Hanging symbol management

The macro \hangingssymbol is used to insert a symbol on each hanging of verses. It is set by user level macro \sethangingssymbol.

For example, in French typography, the symbol is "[". We obtain it by means of the following code:

\sethangingssymbol{[\,}
The \ifinstanza boolean is used to ensure that we are in a stanza part.

\begin{verbatim}
def\@hangingsymbol{}
def\sethangingsymbol[1]{\gdef\@hangingsymbol{#1}}\newif\ifinstanza\inserthangingsymbol The boolean \ifinserthangingsymbol is set to TRUE when \@lock is greater than 1, i.e. when we are not in the first line of a verse. The switch of \ifinserthangingsymbol is made in \do@line before the printing of line but after the line number calculation.
\end{verbatim}

\newif\ifinserthangingsymbol\newcommand\inserthangingsymbol{\ifinserthangingsymbol%\ifinstanza\@hangingsymbol\fi%}

XXX.2 Using & character

\newcommand*{\ampersand}{\char`\&}

XXX.3 Code category setting

\begin{verbatim}\chardef\body=\catcode`\@\catcode`\@=11\chardef\next=\catcode`\&\catcode`\&=\active\end{verbatim} Before we can define the main macros we need to save and reset some category codes. To save the current values we use \next and \body from the \loop macro.
XXX.4 Stanza count and indent

A count register is allocated for counting lines in a stanza; also allocated is a dimension register which is used to specify the base value for line indentation; all stanza indentations are multiples of this value. The default value of \texttt{\stanzaindentbase} is 20pt.

\newcount\stanza@count
\newlength{\stanzaindentbase}
\setlength{\stanzaindentbase}{20\text{pt}}

The indentations of stanza lines are non-negative integer multiples of the unit called \texttt{\stanzaindentbase}. To make it easier for the user to specify these numbers, some list macros are defined. These take numerical values in a list separated by commas and assign the values to special control sequences using \texttt{\mathchardef}. Though this does limit the range from 0 to 32767, it should suffice for most applications, including penalties, which will be discussed below.

\def\strip@szacnt#1,#2|\{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}\}
\newcommand*{\setstanzavalues}[2]{\def\@tempa{#2,,|}\stanza@count\z@\next\expandafter\strip@szacnt\@tempa\ifx\@tempb\empty\let\next\relax\else\expandafter\mathchardef\csname #1@\number\stanza@count\endcsname\@tempb\relax\advance\stanza@count\@ne\fi\next}\next}

\def\strip@gstzacnt#1,#2|\{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}\}
\def\strip@gstacnt#1,#2|\{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}\}
\newcommand*{\setstanzavalues}[2]{\def\@tempa{#2,,|}\stanza@count\z@\next\expandafter\strip@gstacnt\@tempa\ifx\@tempb\empty\let\next\relax\else\expandafter\mathchardef\csname #1@\number\stanza@count\endcsname\@tempb\relax\advance\stanza@count\@ne\fi\next}\next}

\setstanzaindents
\setstanzapenalties

In the original EDMAC, \texttt{\setstanzavalues{sza}{\{\ldots\}}} had to be called to set the indents, and similarly \texttt{\setstanzavalues{szp}{\{\ldots\}}. to set the penalties. \texttt{\setstanzaindents} and \texttt{\setstanzapenalties} macros are a convenience to give the user one less thing to worry about (misspelling the first argument).

\newcommand*{\setstanzaindents}[1]{\setstanzavalues{sza}{#1}}
\newcommand*{\setstanzapenalties}[1]{\setstanzavalues{szp}{#1}}

\managestanza@modulo

Since the \texttt{\stanzaindentsrepetition} counter can be used when the indentation is repeated every $n$ verses.

The \texttt{\startstanzaindentsrepetition} counter tells in which line of verse the repetition of indent starts.

The \texttt{\managestanza@modulo} macro modifies the counter \texttt{stanza@modulo}. The command adds 1 to \texttt{stanza@modulo}, but if \texttt{stanza@modulo} is equal to the \texttt{\stanzaindentsrepetition} counter, the command restarts it.
The macro `\stanzaindent`, when called at the beginning of a verse, changes the indentation normally defined for this verse by `\setstanzaindent`. The starred version skips the current verse for the repetition of stanza indent.

```latex
\newcommand*{\stanzaindent*}[1]{\stanzaindent{#1}\global\advance\stanza@modulo-\@ne\ifnum\stanza@modulo=0\global\stanza@modulo=\value{stanzaindentsrepetition}\fi\ignorespaces}
```

### XXX.5 Numbering stanza

Here, macro for numbering stanza. First, the stanza counter.

```latex
\newcounter{stanza}
\renewcommand{\thestanza}{\textbf{\arabic{stanza}}}
\ifnumberstanza\WithSuffix\newcommand{\stanzaindent*}[1]{\stanzaindent{#1}\global\advance\stanza@modulo-\@ne\ifnum\stanza@modulo=0\global\stanza@modulo=\value{stanzaindentsrepetition}\fi\ignorespaces}
```

---

Then, macro to activate automatically numbering of stanza.

```latex
\ifnumberstanza \newif\ifnumberstanza \ifnumberstanza\insertstanzanumber
```

---

Now, macro called at the first line of verse of a stanza.
XXX.6  Stanza number in note

Here, the command called when printing stanza number in notes.

\newcommand{\printstanza}[0]{
  \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{l@dprintingcolumns}}{
    \ifledRcol%
      \thestanzaR%
    \else%
      \thestanzaL%
    \fi%
  }%
}

\@advancestanzanumber  Also a command to advance the counter of stanza.

\newcommand{\@advancestanzanumber}[0]{
  \ifnumberstanza%
    \ifl@dpairing%
      \ifledRcol%
        \addtocounter{stanzaR}{1}
      \else%
        \addtocounter{stanzaL}{1}
      \fi%
    \else%
      \addtocounter{stanza}{1}
    \fi%
  \fi%
}

\stanzanumwrapper  And finally, the wrapper for stanza number.

\newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{
  \flagstanza{#1}
}
XXX.7 Main work

\stanza@line Now we arrive at the main works. \stanza@line sets the indentation for the line and starts a numbered paragraph—each line is treated as a paragraph. \stanza@hang sets the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line. If it is known that each stanza line will fit on one print line, it is advisable to set the hanging indentation to zero. \sza@penalty places the specified penalty following each stanza line. By default, this facility is turned off so that no penalty is included. However, the user may initiate these penalties to indicate good and bad places in the stanza for page breaking.

\newcommandx{\stanza@line}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%  
\stanza@indent%  \pstart[#1][#2]\stanza@hang\ignorespaces% }%  
\newcommand{\stanza@indent} {%  \ifboolexpr{\test {\ifnumequal{\value{stanzaindentsrepetition}}{0}}  
or\test {\ifnumless{\number\stanza@count}{\value{startstanzaindentsrepetition}}} }{  \ifcsdef{sza@\number\stanza@count @} {  \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@count @\endcsname\stanzaindentbase%  }{\led@err@StanzaIndentNotDefined%}  }{  \ifcsdef{sza@\number\stanza@modulo @} {  \parindent=\csname sza@\the\numexpr\stanza@modulo - 1\relax\endcsname\stanzaindentbase%  }{\managestanza@modulo%}  }%  }%  
\newcommand{\stanza@modulo}{%  \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@modulo 0\endcsname\stanzaindentbase%  }%  
\newcommand{\stanza@number}{%  \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@modulo 0\endcsname\thenumexpr\stanza@modulo - 1+ \value{startstanzaindentsrepetition}\relax%  }%  
\newcommand{\stanza@indentsrepetition}{%  \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@modulo 0\endcsname\managestanza@modulo%  }%
Now we have the components of the `\stanza` macro, which appears at the start of a group of lines. This macro initializes the count and checks to see if hanging indentation and penalties are to be included. Hanging indentation suspends the line count, so that the enumeration is by verse line rather than by print line. If the print line count is desired, invoke `\let\startlock\relax` and do the same for `\endlock`. Here and above we have used `\xdef` to make the stored macros take up a bit less space, but it also makes them more obscure to the reader. Lines of the stanza are delimited by ampersands `&`. The last line of the stanza must end with `\&`.

```latex
\def\@startstanza[#1[#2]{%\noexpand\instanzatrue\expandafter\begingroup%\catcode`\noexpand\&\active%\unexpanded\parindent@beforestanza%\parindent@beforestanza=\parindent)%Keep in memory the standard parindent\ifnum\count0\one\global\stanza@count\z@\stanza@modulo\z@\noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\csname szp0\endcsname\stanza@count\z@%\def\noexpand\stanza@hang{\unexpanded\leavevmode\null}%\let\noexpand\endlock\relax%\else%\interlinepenalty\@M%\unexpanded{%\ifboolexpr{bool {\@RTL} and bool{xetex}}{%\leftskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax%}\rightskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax%}%\let\noexpand\endlock\relax%\else%\interlinepenalty\@M%\unexpanded{%\ifboolexpr{bool {\@RTL} and bool{xetex}}{%\leftskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax%}{%\rightskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax%}%\noexpand%\fi%\noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\csname szp0\endcsname\stanza@count\z@%\endgroup}%\@stopstanza%\AtEveryStopStanza%\AtEveryStanza%\AtStartEveryStanza%\BeforeEveryStopStanza%\newverse%}
```
\let\noexpand\sza@penalty%
\relax\noexpand\fi%
\def\noexpand&{% 
  \noexpand\newverse[][]%
  \noexpand\&% 
  \noexpand\@stopstanza%
  \noexpand\@advancestanzanumber%
  \noexpand\stanza@line[#1][#2]%
  \noexpand\insertstanzanumber%
  \let\par\relax
  \ignorespaces%No paragraph in verses
}
\newcommand\stanza[2][1,2,usedefault]{% 
  \ifboolexpr{% 
    not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stanza}}% 
    and test{\ifstrempty{#1}}% 
    and test{\ifstrempty{#2}}% 
  }{% 
    \@startstanza[][]\at@every@stanza\at@start@every@stanza% 
    \stanza@line[#1][#2]\at@start@every@stanza%
  }%
}
\newcommand\@stopstanza[2][1,2,usedefault]{% 
  \unskip%
  \endlock%
  \ifboolexpr{% 
    not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stop@stanza}}% 
    and test{\ifstrempty{#1}}% 
    and test{\ifstrempty{#2}}% 
  }{% 
    \before@every@stop@stanza\pend[]\at@every@stop@stanza% 
    \before@every@stop@stanza\pend[#1][#2]% 
  }
  \endgroup%
  \instanzafalse%
  \global\undef\parindent@beforestanza%
}
\newcommand\AtEveryStopStanza[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{}}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{#1}}% 
}
\WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryStopStanza*[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{\noindent#1}}%
}
\newcommand\AtEveryStanza[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stanza{}}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stanza{\noindent#1}}%
}
\WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryStanza*[1]{% 
  \ifstrempty{#1}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stanza{}% 
  \{\gdef\at@every@stanza{\noindent#1}}%
XXX.8  Restore catcode and penalties

The ampersand & is used to mark the end of each stanza line, except the last, which is marked with \&. This means that \halign may not be used directly within a stanza line. This does not affect macros involving alignments defined outside \stanza \&. Since these macros usurp the control sequence \&, the replacement \ampersand is defined to be used if this symbol is needed in a stanza. Also we reset the modified category codes and initialize the penalty default.

\catcode`\&=\next

flagstanza  Use \flagstanza[1en]{text} at the start of a line to put text a distance 1en before the start of the line. The default for 1en is \stanzaindentbase.

\newcommand*{\flagstanza}[2][\stanzaindentbase]{% 
  \hskip -#1\llap{#2}\hskip #1\ignorespaces}
XXX.9 Dealing with \texttt{antilabe}

If the \texttt{antilabe} option is enabled, after having vboxded the content of \texttt{pstart}...\texttt{pend} structure, we get the width of the last line of the \texttt{pend}.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifantilabe@
  \newdimen\firsthalf@antilabe@wd
  \get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd
  \antilabe
  \ifboolexpr{\boolfalse {instance} or \boolexpr {inastanza} or \boolexpr {inastanzaR}}{
    \vbadness=10000
    \splittopskip=\z@\normalsize
    \ifl@dpairing
      \ifledRcol
        \setbox0\copy\csname l@dRcolrawbox\the\l@dnumpstartsR\endcsname
      \else
        \setbox0\copy\csname l@dLcolrawbox\the\l@dnumpstartsL\endcsname
      \fi
    \else
      \setbox0\copy\raw@text
    \fi
    \dimen0=\dimexpr\ht0+\dp0-\baselineskip\relax
    \ifdim\dimen0>0pt
      \setbox1\vsplit0 to \dimen0
    \fi
    \setbox0\vbox{\unvbox0\global\setbox1=\lastbox}
    \setbox1\hbox{\noindent\unhbox1}
    \global\firsthalf@antilabe@wd=\wd1
  }{}
\def\beforeantilabe{}\def\afterantilabe{}
\newcommand{\antilabe}[1]{\beforeantilabe\hbox to\firsthalf@antilabe@wd{#1\hfill}\afterantilabe}
\else
  \let\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd\relax
\fi
\end{verbatim}
XXXI Apparatus of Manuscripts

XXXI.1 User level macro

The user level \msdata command only writes the manuscripts data in a numbered auxiliary file. There are two associated etoolbox counters.

\msdata\msdata@c
\msdata@cR
\def\msdata@c{}\%
\def\msdata@cR{}\%
\newcommand{\msdata}{[1]{%}
\leavevmode\%
\unless\ifstopmsdata@inserted@%
\stopmsdata%
\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop%
\fi%\
\global\stopmsdata@inserted@false%
\unless\ifledRcol%
\numgdef{\msdata@c}{\msdata@c+1}%
%}{}
\ifdef{\hypertarget}{\edlabel{\msdata@c:start:msdata}}%
\protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
\string@msd{#1}%
}\}
\else%
\numgdef{\msdata@cR}{\msdata@cR+1}%
%}{}
\ifdef{\hypertarget}{\edlabel{\msdata@cR:start:msdata}}%
\protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
\string@msd{#1}%
}\}
\fi%
%\}

\stopmsdata

The user level \stopmsdata command only writes information about the end of manuscripts data in numbered auxiliary file.

\newcommand{\stopmsdata}{[0]{%}
\leavevmode%
\unless\ifledRcol%
\protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
\string@stopmsd%
}%
\ifdef{\hypertarget}{%}
\edlabel{\msdata@c:end:msdata}%
}\}
\else%
\protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
\string@stopmsd%
}%\}%
XXXI.2 Setting macro

Setting macros for the manuscripts apparatus tools is very easy: they just save their argument in an internal macro.

\setmsdataseries  In which series of notes will be printed the apparatus of manuscripts?

\setmsdataposition  The label for the manuscripts data.

\setmsdatalabel  The label for the manuscripts data.
XXXI.3 Counters and lists

\@msd@c \@msd@c is a counter incremented at each \@msd read in auxiliary file.

\137 \numdef{\@msd@c}{0} \numdef{\@msd@cR}{0} \\
\138 \% \\
\139 \add@msd@ \add@msd@ is a counter incremented at each \add@msd data, that is at each time we prepare the insertion of manuscripts data footnote.

\140 \numdef{\add@msd@c}{0} \numdef{\add@msd@cR}{0} \\
\141 \% \\
\142 \@msdata@list The \@msdata@list will contain, for each line, the lists of command to be executed to insert the manuscripts apparatus. It will be filled on \add@msdata and looped on \insert@msdata, then emptied.

\143 \def\@msdata@list{} \% \\
\144 \% \\

XXXI.4 Auxiliary file macros

\@msd The \@msd macro is written in the auxiliary file. It just defines three macros by \msdata macro, which allow us to know the manuscripts data, the line number and the absolute line number where it was called.

It also stores the action code 1010 in the list of actions by line.

\145 \newcommand{\@msd}[1] {\% \\
\146 \unless\ifledRcol\% \\
\147 \global\numdef{\@msd@c+\@ne}{\@msd@c+\@ne} \% \\
\148 \csgdef{\msdata@\@msd@c \data}{#1} \% \\
\149 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@c \linenumber}{\the\line@num} \% \\
\150 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@c \sublinenumber}{\the\subline@num} \% \\
\151 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@c \abslinenumber}{\the\absline@num} \% \\
\152 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}{\the\actions@list}\% \\
\153 \xright@appenditem{-1010}{\the\actions@list}\% \\
\154 \else\% \\
\155 \global\numdef{\@msd@cR+\@ne}{\@msd@cR+\@ne} \% \\
\156 \csgdef{\msdata@\@msd@cR \dataR}{#1} \% \\
\157 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@cR \linenumberR}{\the\line@numR} \% \\
\158 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@cR \sublinenumberR}{\the\subline@numR} \% \\
\159 \csxdef{\msdata@\@msd@cR \abslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR} \% \\
\160 \xright@appenditem{\the\abslinenumberR}{\the\actions@listR}\% \\
\161 \xright@appenditem{-1010}{\the\actions@listR}\% \\
\162 \fi\% \\
\163 }\% \\
\164 \%
\@stopmsd

Inserted in the auxiliary file by \stopmsd, the \@stopmsd macro will store in two commands the line number and the absolute line number on which it is called.

\newcommand{\@stopmsd}[0]{%
\unless\ifledRcol%
  \ifcsundef{@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}{\the\absline@num}%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{\the\line@num}%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@c @stopsublinenumber}{\the\subline@num}%
  }{}
  \else%
  \ifcsundef{@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR}%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{\the\line@numR}%
    \csxdef{@msdata@\@msd@cR @stopsublinenumberR}{\the\subline@numR}%
  }{}
  \fi%
\else%
\fi%
\}}%
%
\add@msdata

\add@msdata is executed on each line when action code 1010 is seen. It will not insert immediately the manuscript data footnote, as action code are executed before the line be typeset, and, consequently, could be on the previous page. So it just stores the manuscript data footnote to \@msdata@list.

\newcommand{\add@msdata}{%
\bgroup%
\normalfont%
\unless\ifledRcol%
  \numgdef{\add@msd@c}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
  \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}{%
    \letcs{@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
    \edef\l@d@nums{000|% Start page = we don't print it
200|% Start line number
400|% Start subline number
000|% End page number, we don't print it
100|% End line number if in the same page
200|}%
\else%
\fi%
\}}%
XXXI.5  Action macro

\{\csuse{\@msdata@add@msd@c @stopsublinenumber}\}\%End subline number if in the same page
\{\csuse{\@lastsubline@forpage@\the\page@num}\}\%Otherwise, last subnumber of the page
\%
\edfont\info\%Font
\%
\@msd@options@fullpagefalse\%
\if@firstlineofpage\%Try if the data are for the full page. If yes,
will add options to the list.
\unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage\%
\ifnumless{\csuse{\@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}{\csuse{\@msdata@add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}+\@ne}\%
\{\}
\numdef{\add@msd@c \@abslinenumber}\%
\ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}\{
\letcs{\@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}\%
\edef\l@d@nums{000}\% Start page = we don’t print it
\fi
\fi\%
\listxadd{\@msdata@list}\%
\@msd@options@iffullpage\%
\ifluatex\%
\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}\%
\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}\%
\fi\%
\csdef{\this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@c:start:msdata}\%
\csdef{\this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@c:end:msdata}\%
\unexpanded{\%
\def\annot@start{}\%
\def\annot@end{}\%
\}
\noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\@data}\%
\reset@msd@options@iffullpage\%
\%
\}%
\}%
\else\%
\numdef{\add@msd@cR}{\add@msd@cR+\@ne}\%
\ifcsdef{\@msdata@\add@msd@cR \@dataR}\%
\letcs{\@data}{\@msdata@\add@msd@cR \@dataR}\%
\edef\l@d@nums{\%
0001\% Start page = we don’t print it
XXXI  Apparatus of Manuscripts

\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @linenumberR}% Start line number
\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @sublinenumberR}% Start subline number, for now, not used
000% End page number, we don't print it
\ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\pagenumR}}% if in the same page
{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}% End line number
\ifnumless{\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\pagenumR}}{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}% Otherwise, last number of the page
\edfont@info% Font
000% End sub line number, for now, not used
\@msd@options@fullpagetrue% if first line of page
\unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
\ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabslinenumberR\the\pagenumR}+\@ne}{%
\numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@cR+\@ne}%
\ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}{}
{\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}}{\csuse{@lastabslinenumberR\the\pagenumR}}{}{\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}}%
}%
{\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
\fi%
\fi%
\listxadd{@msdata@\list}{%}
\@msd@options@iffullpage%
\ifluatex%
\csdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}\
\csdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}\
\fi%
\csdef{this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@cR: start:msdata}%
\csdef{this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@cR: end:msdata}%
\unexpanded{%
\def\annot@start{}%
\def\annot@end{}%
}%
The \if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage boolean is set to TRUE if \reledmac automatically inserts data from previous page in the first line of a page.

\newif\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage

\add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called at the first line of every page. It inserts manuscript data which start on one of the previous pages and continue on this page.

\newcommand{\add@msdata@firstlineofpage}{
\bgroup
\normalfont
\unless\ifledRcol\%
\ifcsdef{@msdata\add@msd@data}{
\ifnumless{\the\absline@num-\@ne}{\csuse{@msdata\add@msd@stopabslinenumber}}{
\global@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagetrue
\letcs{@data}{@msdata\add@msd@data}
\edef\l@d@nums{000|% Start page = we don’t print it
\numexpr\the\line@num+\@ne\relax|% Start line number = first line of the page. As \add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called before line number has been incremented, we increment it for printing
000| Start subline number, for now, not used
000| End page number, we don’t print it
\ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata\add@msd@stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage\the\page@num}}%
{\csuse{@msdata\add@msd@stoplinenumber}}%End line number if in the same page
{\csuse{@lastline@forpage\the\page@num}}%Otherwise, last number of the page
}%
000| End sub line number, for now, not used
\edeffontinfo%Font
}%
\@msd@options@fullpagefalse
\ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage\the\page@num}}{\csuse{@msdata\add@msd@stopabslinenumber}+\@one}%We will test if the ms data is for the full page
\numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
\ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}{}
{\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}}{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}}}%
{\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
{\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
{}
\listxadd{\@msdata@list}{}
\ifluatex%
\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}%
\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}%
\fi%
\csdef{this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@c:start:msdata}%
\csdef{this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@c:end:msdata}%
\unexpanded{%
\def\annot@start{}%
\def\annot@end{}%}
\noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\@data}%
\reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
%
\}{}
{(global:\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagefalse)}%}
\else%
\ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}{}
\ifnumless{\the\absline@numR-\@ne}{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}%
\edef\l@d@nums{000|% Start page = we don't print it
\numexpr\the\line@numR+\@ne\relax}|% Start line number = first line of the page. As \add@msd@data@firstlineofpage is called before line number has been incremented, we increment it for printing
000|% Start subline number, for now, not used
000|% End page number, we don't print it
\ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}%
{\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}%End line number if in the same page
{\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}%Otherwise, last number of the page
XXXI.6 Inserting footnote

Just before inserting standard insert (familiar and critical footnotes, sidenotes), we call \insert@msdata to insert manuscripts data's footnotes.

\insert@msdata
XXXI.7 Other

\texttt{\msdoptions@iffullpage} sets some options if the manuscripts data are for all the page. \texttt{\reset@msdoptions@iffullpage} resets them after the footnote. \texttt{\if@msdoptions@fullpage} is switch to true in \texttt{add@msdata@firstlineofpage} if these option must be inserted.

XXXII Arrays and tables

XXXII.1 Preamble: macro as environment

The following is borrowed, and renamed, from the \texttt{amsmath} package. See also the CTT thread “\texttt{ceq} and \texttt{amstex}”, 1995/08/31, started by Keith Reckdahl and ended definitively by David M. Jones.

Several of the [math] macros scan their body twice. This means we must collect all text in the body of an environment form before calling the macro.

\texttt{\emptytoks} This is actually defined in the \texttt{amsgen} package.

\texttt{\@denvbody} A token register to contain the body.
XXXII.1  Preamble: macro as environment

\addtol@denvbody \addtol@denvbody\{arg\} adds arg to the token register \l@denvbody.

\newcommand{\addtol@denvbody\}[1]{%
  \global\l@denvbody\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody#1}}
%

\if@edtabular A boolean set to true inside a reledmac\`{e} tabular environment.

\newif\if@edtabular%
%
\l@dcollect@body The macro \l@dcollect@body starts the scan for the \end\{env\} command of the current environment. It takes a macro name as argument. This macro is supposed to take the whole body of the environment as its argument. For example, given cenv\#1{...} as a macro that processes \#1, then the environment form, \begin\{env\} would call \l@dcollect@body\cenv.

\newcommand{\l@dcollect@body\}[1]{%
  \ifvmode\else\%
  \l@denvbody{\expandafter#1\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody}}%
  \edef\processl@denvbody{\the\l@denvbody\noexpand\end{\@currenvir}}%
  \l@denvbody\@emptytoks \def\l@dbegin@stack{b} \%
  \begingroup \%
  \@edtabulartrue
  \expandafter\let\csname\@currenvir\endcsname\l@dcollect@@body%
  \edef\processl@denvbody{\expandafter\noexpand\csname\@currenvir\endcsname}%
  \processl@denvbody%
}%
%
\l@dpush@begins When adding a piece of the current environment’s contents to \l@denvbody, we scan it to check for additional \begin tokens, and add a “b” to the stack for any that we find.

\def\l@dpush@begins\#1\begin\#2{%
  \ifx\end\#2\else b\expandafter\l@dpush@begins\fi}
%
\l@dcollect@body The macro \l@dcollect@body takes two arguments: the first will consist of all text up to the next \end command, and the second will be the \end command’s argument. If there are any extra \begin commands in the body text, a marker is pushed onto a stack by the \l@dpush@begins function. Empty state for this stack means we have reached the \end that matches our original \begin. Otherwise we need to include the \end and its argument in the material we are adding to the environment body accumulator.
There was a question on CTT about how to use \collect@body for a macro taking an argument. The following is part of that thread.

From: Heiko Oberdiek <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>
Newsgroups: comp.text.tex
Subject: Re: Using \collect@body with commands that take \textgreater{}1\ argument
Date: Fri, 08 Aug 2003 09:03:20 +0200

eed132@psu.edu (Evan) wrote:
> I'm trying to make a new LaTeX environment that acts like the
> \colorbox command that is part of the color package. I looked through
> the FAQ and ran across this bit about using the \collect@body command
> that is part of AMSLaTeX:
> http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=cmdasenv
>
> It almost works. If I do something like the following:
> \newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
>
> \makeatletter
> \newenvironment{redbox}{\collect@body{\redbox}[1]}{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
>
> \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
> Yadda yadda yadda... this is on a blue background...
> \end{coloredbox}
>
> and can't figure out how to make the \collect@body take this.
>
> \collect@body \colorbox{red}
> \collect@body {\colorbox{red}}

You will get an error message: Command \redbox already defined. Thus you must rename either the command \redbox or the environment name.

> \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
> Yadda yadda yadda... this is on a blue background...
> \end{coloredbox}
>
> and can't figure out how to make the \collect@body take this.

> \collect@body \colorbox{red}
> \collect@body {\colorbox{red}}

The argument of \collect@body has to be one token exactly.
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{color}
\usepackage{amsmath}
\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
\makeatletter
\newenvironment{coloredbox}[1]{\def\next@{\colorbox{#1}{\collect@body\next@}}}{\collect@body\next@}
% ignore spaces at begin and end of environment
\newenvironment{coloredboxII}[1]{\def\next@{\mycoloredbox{#1}}}{\collect@body\next@}
\newcommand{\mycoloredbox}[2]{\colorbox{#1}{\ignorespaces#2\unskip}}
% support of optional color model argument
\newcommand{\coloredboxIII}[1]{\@coloredboxIII{#1}}
\def\@coloredboxIII#1#2{\def\next@{\mycoloredboxIII{#1}{#2}}}{\collect@body\next@}
\newcommand{\mycoloredboxIII}[3]{\colorbox{#1}{#2}{\ignorespaces#3\unskip}}
\makeatother
\begin{document}
Black text before
\begin{coloredbox}{blue}
Hello World
\end{coloredbox}
Black text after

Black text before
\begin{coloredboxII}{blue}
Hello World
\end{coloredboxII}
Black text after

Black text before
\begin{coloredboxIII}{rgb}{0,0,1}

Hello World
\end{coloredboxIII}
Black text after

\end{document}

Yours sincerely
Heiko <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>

XXXII.2 Tabular environments
This is based on the work by Herbert Breger in developing tabmac.tex.
The original tabmac.tex file was void of comments or any explanatory text other than the above notice. The algorithm is Breger's. Peter Wilson have made some cosmetic changes to the original code and reimplemented some things so they are more LaTeX-like. All the commentary are from Peter Wilson, as are any mistake or errors.
However, Maïeul Rouquette has modified code in order to add new features of eledmac and reledmac.

XXXII.2.1 Disabling and restoring commands
\l@tabnoexpands More no expansion for critical and familiar footnotes in tabular environment.

\disable@familiarnotes \restore@familiarnotes Macros to disable and restore familiar notes, to prevent them from printing multiple times in edtabularx and edarrayx environments.
XXXII.2 Tabular environments

\expandafter\renewcommand \csname footnote##1\endcsname[1]{%  
\protected@csxdef{@thefnmark##1}{\csuse{thefootnote##1}}%  
\csuse{@footnotemark##1}%.%  
\dolistloop{\@series}%  \fi%  \}%  \newcommand{\restore@famiilarnotes}{%  \unless\ifnofamiliar@%  \def\do##1{%  \csletcs{footnote##1}{footnote@@##1}%  \}}%  \dolistloop{\@series}%  \fi%  \}%  \newcommand{\disable@sidenotes}{%  \let@@ledrightnote\ledrightnote%  \let@@ledleftnote\ledleftnote%  \let@@ledsidenote\ledsidenote%  \let\ledrightnote\@gobble%  \let\ledleftnote\@gobble%  \let\ledsidenote\@gobble%  \}%  \newcommand{\restore@sidenotes}{%  \unless\ifnofamiliar@%  \def\do##1{%  \csletcs{##1@@endnote}{##1endnote}%  \expandafter\renewcommand \csname ##1endnote\endcsname[1]{}%  \}}%  \dolistloop{\@series}%  \fi%  \}%

\disable@sidenotes  The same for sidenotes.
\restore@sidenotes

\disable@endnotes  The same for endnotes.
\restore@endnotes


\disable@notes Disable/restore side, familiar and end notes.
\restore@notes
\newcommand{\disable@notes}{\disable@sidenotes\disable@familiarnotes\disable@endnotes}%
\newcommand{\restore@notes}{\restore@sidenotes\restore@familiarnotes\restore@endnotes}%

\EDTEXT We need to be able to modify the \edtext macros and also restore their original definitions.
\let\EDTEXT=\edtext
\newcommand{\xedtext}[2]{\EDTEXT{#1}{#2}}%
\EDLABEL We need to be able to modify and restore the \edlabel macro.
\let\EDLABEL=\edlabel
\newcommand{\xedlabel}[1]{\EDLABEL{#1}}%
\xedindex Macros supporting modification and restoration of \edindex.
\AtBeginDocument{\let\xedindex\edindex}%
\newcommand{\nulledindex}[2][\jobname]{\@bsphack\@esphack}%
\@line@@num Macro supporting restoration of \linenum.
\let\@line@@num=\linenum%
\l@dgobbleoptarg \l@dgobbleoptarg{⟨arg⟩}{⟨arg⟩} replaces these two arguments (first is optional) by \relax.
XXXII.2  Tabular environments

\newcommand*{\l@dgobbleoptarg}[2][]{\relax}
\l@secondmandarg \l@secondoptarg[⟨arg⟩]{⟨arg⟩} gobble the first (optional) argument, and expand to the second (mandatory) argument.
\NewExpandableDocumentCommand{\l@secondmandarg}{om}{#2}

\Relax: \let\Relax=\relax
\NEXT: \let\NEXT=\next

\l@dmodforedtext \l@drestoreforedtext Modify and restore various macros for when \edtext is used.
\newcommand{\l@dmodforedtext}{% \let\edtext\relax \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{l@dgobbleoptarg}} \dolistloop{\@series}\let\edindex\nulledindex \let\linenum\@gobble}\newcommand{\l@drestoreforedtext}{% \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@@footnote}} \dolistloop{\@series}\let\edindex\xediindex}

\l@dnullfills \l@drestorefills Nullify and restore some column fillers, etc.
\newcommand{\l@dnullfills}{% \def\edlabel##1{} \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{}\} \newcommand{\l@drestorefills}{% \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{\@EDROWFILL@{##1}{##2}{##3}}\} \let\edindex\xediindex

\letsforverteilen Gathers some lets and other code that is common to the *verteilen* macros.
\newcommand{\letsforverteilen}{% \let\edtext\xedi\edindex\xedi \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@@footnote}} \dolistloop{\@series}\let\linenum\@line@@num
XXXII Arrays and tables

\texttt{\hilfskip=\@dcolwidth}\%
\texttt{\advance\hilfskip by -\wd\hilfsbox}
\texttt{\def\edlabel##1{\xelabel{##1}}}\\
%
\disablel@dtabfeet\enablel@dtabfeet

Declarations for using or using \texttt{\edtext} inside tabulars. The default at this point is for \texttt{\edtext}.

\texttt{\newcommand\disablel@dtabfeet{\l@dmodforedtext}}\%
\texttt{\newcommand\enablel@dtabfeet{\l@restoreforedtext}}\%
%
XXXII.2.2 Counters, boxes and lengths

\texttt{\l@dampcount} \texttt{\l@dampcount} is a counter for the & column dividers and \texttt{\l@dcolcount} is a counter for the columns.

\texttt{\newcount\l@dampcount}
\texttt{\l@dampcount=1}\relax
\texttt{\newcount\l@dcolcount}
\texttt{\l@dcolcount=0}\relax
%
%
\hilfsbox \hilfsskip \Hilfsbox \hilfscount

Some (temporary) helper items.

\texttt{\newbox\hilfsbox}
\texttt{\newskip\hilfsskip}
\texttt{\newbox\Hilfsbox}
\texttt{\newbox\hilfscount}
\texttt{\newcount\hilfscount}
\texttt{\hilfscount=0}\relax
%
%
30 columns should be adequate (compared to the original 60). These are the column widths. (Originally these were German spelled numbers e.g., \texttt{\eins}, \texttt{\zwei}, etc).

\texttt{\newdimen\dcoli}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolii}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcoliii}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcoliv}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolv}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolvi}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolvii}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolviii}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolix}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolx}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolxi}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolxii}
\texttt{\newdimen\dcolxiii}
\newdimen\dcolxiv
\newdimen\dcolxv
\newdimen\dcolxvi
\newdimen\dcolxvii
\newdimen\dcolxviii
\newdimen\dcolxix
\newdimen\dcolxx
\newdimen\dcolxxi
\newdimen\dcolxxii
\newdimen\dcolxxiii
\newdimen\dcolxxiv
\newdimen\dcolxxv
\newdimen\dcolxxvi
\newdimen\dcolxxvii
\newdimen\dcolxxviii
\newdimen\dcolxxix
\newdimen\dcolxxx
\newdimen\dcolerr \% added for error handling
\% 

\l@dcolwidth \% This is a cunning way of storing the columnwidths indexed by the column number 
\l@dcolcount, like an array. (was \Dimenzuordnung)
\newcommand{\l@dcolwidth}{\ifcase \the\l@dcolcount \dcoli \%???
  \or \dcolii \or \dcoliii \or \dcoliv \or \dcolv \or \dcolvi
  \or \dcolvii \or \dcolviii \or \dcolix \or \dcolx
  \or \dcolxi \or \dcolxii \or \dcolxiii \or \dcolxiv
  \or \dcolxv \or \dcolxvi \or \dcolxvii \or \dcolxviii \or \dcolxx
  \or \dcolxxi \or \dcolxxii \or \dcolxxiii \or \dcolxxiv
  \or \dcolxxv \or \dcolxxvi \or \dcolxxvii \or \dcolxxviii \or \dcolxxx
  \else \dcolerr \fi}
\% 

\stepl@dcolcount \% This increments the column counter, and issues an error message if it is too large.
\newcommand*{\stepl@dcolcount}{\advance\l@dcolcount\@ne
  \ifnum\l@dcolcount>30\relax
    \led@err@TooManyColumns
  \fi}
\% 

\l@dsetmaxcolwidth \% Sets the column width to the maximum value seen so far.
\newcommand{\l@dsetmaxcolwidth}{{% 
\ifdim\l@dcolwidth < \wd\hilfsbox 
\l@dcolwidth = \wd\hilfsbox
\else \relax \fi}
%

\measuremcell Measure (recursively) the width required for a math cell.
\def\measuremcell #1&{% 
  \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\let\ NEXT\relax%
    \else\l@dcheckcols%
        \l@dcolcount=0%
        \let\ NEXT\measuremcell%
    \fi%
  \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\%
    \stepl@dcolcount%
    \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
    \let\ NEXT\measuremcell%
  \fi\ NEXT}
%

\measuretcell Measure (recursively) the width required for a text cell.
\def\measuretcell #1&{% 
  \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\let\ NEXT\relax%
    \else\l@dcheckcols%
        \l@dcolcount=0%
        \let\ NEXT\measuretcell%
    \fi%
  \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}\%
    \stepl@dcolcount%
    \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
    \let\ NEXT\measuretcell%
  \fi\ NEXT}
%

\measuremrow Measure (recursively) the width required for a math row.
\def\measuremrow #1\&{% 
  \ifx #1\&\&\&\relax%
  \else\measuremcell #1\&\&\&%
  \let\ NEXT\measuremrow%
  \fi\ NEXT}
%

\measuretrow Measure (recursively) the width required for a text row.
XXXII.2  Tabular environments

\def\measuretrow #1\{\%  
  \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax\%  
  \else\measuretcell #1\&\&\&\%  
  \let\NEXT\measuretrow\%  
  \fi\NEXT\%
\}

The length \edtabcolsep controls the distance between columns.

\newskip\edtabcolsep
\global\edtabcolsep=10pt

% \newcommand{\variab}{\relax}
% \newcommand*{\l@dcheckcols}{\%  
  \ifnum\l@dcolcount=1\relax  
  \else  
  \ifnum\l@dampcount=1\relax  
  \else  
  \ifnum\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount\relax  
  \else  
  \l@d@err@UnequalColumns  
  \fi  
  \fi  
  \l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount  
  \fi\%

% \edfilldimen \newdimen\edfilldimen
% \edfilldimen=0pt

% \c@addcolcount \theaddcolcount \newcounter{addcolcount}
% \renewcommand{\theaddcolcount}{\romannumeral \c@addcolcount}
XXXII.2.3 Tabular typesetting

\setmcellright Typeset (recursively) cells of display math right justified.

\settcellright Typeset (recursively) cells of text right justified.

\setmcellleft Typeset (recursively) cells of display math left justified.
XXXII.2 Tabular environments

\let\edindex\nulledindex
\ifx #1\n\ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next=relax\fi
\else \l@dcolcount=0\let\Next=\setmcellleft\fi
\else \disablel@dtabfeet\stepl@dcolcount\disable@notes\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\restore@notes\let\Next=\setmcellleft\fi\Next}

\settcellleft Typeset (recursively) cells of text left justified.
\def\settcellleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}\let\edindex\nulledindex
\ifx #1\n\ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next=relax\fi
\else \l@dcolcount=0\let\Next=\settcellleft\fi
\else \disablel@dtabfeet\stepl@dcolcount\disable@notes\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}\restore@notes\let\Next=\settcellleft\fi\Next}

\setmcellcenter Typeset (recursively) cells of display math centered.
\def\setmcellcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}\let\edindex\nulledindex
\ifx #1\n\ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next=relax\fi
\else \l@dcolcount=0\let\Next=\setmcellcenter\fi
\else \disablel@dtabfeet\stepl@dcolcount\disable@notes\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\restore@notes\let\Next=\setmcellcenter\fi\Next}
\settcellcenter \Typeset (recursively) cells of text centered.

\def\settcellcenter #1\{\def\edlabel##1{}\let\edindex\nullifiedindex
  \ife #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next\relax\else\l@dcolcount=0\fi\let\Next=\settcellcenter%
  \fi\Next\}

%

\setmrowright \Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified math.

\def\setmrowright #1\{\ifx #1& \let\Next\relax \else \centerline{\setmcellright #1&\&\&}\let\Next=\setmrowright\fi\Next\}

%
\texttt{\setmrowleft} \quad Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified math.

\begin{verbatim}
def\setmrowleft #1\{
    \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax
    \else \centerline{\setmcellleft #1&\&\&}
    \let\NEXT=\setmrowleft
    \fi\NEXT
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\settrowleft} \quad Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified text.

\begin{verbatim}
def\settrowleft #1\{
    \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax
    \else \centerline{\settcellleft #1&\&\&}
    \let\NEXT=\settrowleft
    \fi\NEXT
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\setmrowcenter} \quad Typeset (recursively) rows of centered math.

\begin{verbatim}
def\setmrowcenter #1\{
    \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax
    \else \centerline{\setmcellcenter #1&\&\&}
    \let\NEXT=\setmrowcenter
    \fi\NEXT
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\settrowcenter} \quad Typeset (recursively) rows of centered text.

\begin{verbatim}
def\settrowcenter #1\{
    \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax
    \else \centerline{\settcellcenter #1&\&\&}
    \let\NEXT=\settrowcenter
    \fi\NEXT
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\nullsetzen} \quad \texttt{\newcommand{\nullsetzen}{}}\%

\begin{verbatim}
\stepl@dcolcount\% 
\l@dcolwidth=0pt\%
\ifnum\l@dcolcount=30\let\NEXT\relax\%
\l@dcolcount=0\relax
\else\let\NEXT=\nullsetzen\%
\fi\NEXT
\end{verbatim}

\nullsetzen
XXXII Arrays and tables

\edatleft \edatleft[⟨\math⟩\{⟨symbol⟩\}⟨len⟩\}. Left ⟨symbol⟩, 2⟨len⟩ high with prepended ⟨math⟩ vertically centered.

\newcommand{\edatleft}[3]\[\empty\]{%\ifx#1\empty\vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left#2$vrule width0pt height #3 depth 0pt \right. \$\hss}\vfil}\else\vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$#1\left#2$vrule width0pt height #3 depth 0pt \right. \$}\vfil}\fi}\%}

\edatright \edatright[⟨\math⟩\{⟨symbol⟩\}⟨len⟩\}. Right ⟨symbol⟩, 2⟨len⟩ high with appended ⟨math⟩ vertically centered.

\newcommand{\edatright}[3]\[\empty\]{%\ifx#1\empty\vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.#2$vrule width0pt height #3 depth 0pt \right. \$}\hss}\vfil}\else\vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$#1\left.#2$vrule width0pt height #3 depth 0pt \right. \$}\vfil}\fi}\%}

\edvertline \edvertline[⟨len⟩} vertical line ⟨len⟩ high.

\newcommand{\edvertline}[1]{\vbox to 8pt{\vss\hbox{\vrule height #1}\vfil}}\%

\edvertdots \edvertdots[⟨len⟩} vertical dotted line ⟨len⟩ high.

\newcommand{\edvertdots}[1]{\vbox to 1pt{\vss\vbox to #1{\cleaders\hbox{$\m@th\hbox{.}$}}\vfil}}}\%

\l@tabaddcols \l@tabaddcols{⟨startcol⟩}⟨endcol⟩\ adds the widths of the columns ⟨startcol⟩ through ⟨endcol⟩ to \edfilldimen. It is a \TeX\ style reimplementation of the original \@add@.

\newcommand{\l@tabaddcols}[2]{{\%\l@checkstartend{#1}{#2}{%\ifl@startendok\setcounter{addcolcount}{#1}{%\@whilenum \value{addcolcount}<#2\relax \do{\advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname\advance\edfilldimen by \edtabcolsep}}}\%}}
Tabular environments

XXXII.2 Tabular environments

928 \stepcounter{addcolcount}%%
929 \advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
930 \fi 
931 }
932 
933 \ifl@dstartendok
934 \l@dcheckstartend{⟨startcol⟩}{⟨endcol⟩} checks that the values of ⟨startcol⟩ and ⟨endcol⟩ are sensible. If they are then \ifl@dstartendok is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE.

933 \newif\ifl@dstartendok
934 \newcommand{\l@dcheckstartend}[2]{% 935 \l@dstartendoktrue
936 \ifnum #1<\@ne
937 \l@dstartendokfalse
938 \led@err@LowStartColumn
939 \fi
940 \ifnum #2>30\relax
941 \l@dstartendokfalse
942 \led@err@HighEndColumn
943 \fi
944 \ifnum #1>#2\relax
945 \l@dstartendokfalse
946 \led@err@ReverseColumns
947 \fi
948 }
949 
950 \edrowfill \edrowfill{(⟨startcol⟩}{⟨endcol⟩)}fill fills columns ⟨startcol⟩ to ⟨endcol⟩ inclusive with ⟨fill⟩ (e.g. \hrulefill, \upbracefill). This is a \LaTeX style reimplementation and generalization of the original \waklam, \Waklam, \waklamec, \wastricht and \wapunktel macros.

951 \newcommand*{\edrowfill}[3]{% 952 \l@dtabaddcols{#1}{#2}%%
953 \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{#2}{#3}hss}
954 \let@edrowfill@=\edrowfill
955 \def@EDROWFILL@#1#2#3{\@edrowfill@{#1}{#2}{#3} %
956 
957 \edefbeforetab
958 \edefaftertab
959 \edefbeforetab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} puts ⟨text⟩ at the left margin before array cell entry ⟨math⟩. Conversely, the macro \edefaftertab{⟨math⟩}{⟨text⟩} puts ⟨text⟩ at the right margin after array cell entry ⟨math⟩. \edefbeforetab should be in the first column and \edefaftertab in the last column. The following macros support these.

959 \leftltab \leftltab{⟨text⟩} for \edefbeforetab in \ltab.
\newcommand{\leftltab}[1]{{}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}}

\leftrtab \leftrtab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} for \edbeforetab in \rtab.

\newcommand{\leftctab}[2]{{}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #2}\hss}}}

\leftctab \leftctab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} for \edbeforetab in \ctab.

\newcommand{\rightctab}[2]{{}\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\edef\dampcount=\z@\dcolcount=\l@dcolcount\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\edef\dampcount=\z@\dcolcount=\l@dcolcount\moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\edef\dampcount=\z@\dcolcount=\l@dcolcount\moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #2}\hss}}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #2}\hss}}}

\rightctab \rightctab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} for \edaftertab in \ctab.

\newcommand{\rightltab}[2]{{}\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\edef\dampcount=\z@\dcolcount=\l@dcolcount\moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #2}\hss}}}

\rightltab \rightltab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} for \edaftertab in \ltab.

\newcommand{\rightltab}[2]{{}\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\edef\dampcount=\z@\dcolcount=\l@dcolcount\moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}\hss}}\hb@xt\z@{\vbox{\edtabindent \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #2}\hss}}}

\rightltab \rightltab{⟨text⟩}{⟨math⟩} for \edaftertab in \ltab.
XXXII.2 Tabular environments

\rightrtab \rightrtab{⟨math⟩}{⟨text⟩} for \edaftertab in \rtab.

\newcommand{\rightrtab}[2]{%
\setbox\hilfsbox=hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}\%
\disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$\%
\advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox\%
\advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep\%
\moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}\%
}
%

\lefttab \lefttab{⟨body⟩} typesets ⟨body⟩ as an array with the entries right justified.

The process is first to measure the ⟨body⟩ to get the column widths, and then in a second pass to typeset the body.

\newcommand{\measurembody}[1]{%
\disablel@dtabfeet\%
\l@dcolcount=0\%
\nullsetzen\%
\measuremrow #1\&\%
\enablel@dtabfeet}
%

\measurembody{⟨body⟩} measures the array ⟨body⟩.

\newcommand{\measurembody}[1]{%
\disablel@dtabfeet\%
\l@dcolcount=0\%
\nullsetzen\%
\l@dcolcount=0\%
\measuremrow #1\&\%
\global\l@dampcount=1}
\rtabtext \tabtext{(body)} typesets (body) as a tabular with the entries right justified.

\measuretbody \measuretbody{(body)} measures the tabular (body).

\ltab \edbeforetab \edaftertab Array with entries left justified.

\ltabtext Tabular with entries left justified.
\settrowleft #1\\&\%
\enablel@dtabfeet
%

\ctab Array with centered entries.

\newcommand{\ctab}[1]{% 
\l@dnullfills 
\def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftctab{##1}{##2}}% 
\def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightctab{##1}{##2}}% 
\measurebody{#1}\
\l@drestorefills 
\variab 
\settrowcenter #1\\&\%
\enablel@dtabfeet}
%

\ctabtext Tabular with entries centered.

\newcommand{\ctabtext}[1]{% 
\l@dnullfills 
\measuretbody{#1}\
\l@drestorefills 
\variab 
\settrowcenter #1\\&\%
\enablel@dtabfeet}
%

\spreadtext\newcommand{\spreadtext}[1]{%\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount% 
\hb@xt\the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{#1}\hss}}
%

\spreadmath\newcommand{\spreadmath}[1]{% 
\hb@xt\the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\hss}}
%

\HILFSkip \Hilfsskip More helpers.

\newskip\HILFSkip
\newskip\Hilfsskip
XXXII Arrays and tables

\EDTABINDENT\newcommand{\EDTABINDENT}{%  
  \ifnum\l@dcolcount=30\let\NEXT\relax  
  \l@dcolcount=0\%  
  \else\stepl@dcolcount\%  
  \advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dcolwidth\%  
  \ifdim\l@dcolwidth=0pt\advance\hilfscount\@ne\%  
  \else\advance\Hilfsskip by \the\hilfscount\edtabcolsep\%  
  \hilfscount=1\fi\%  
  \let\NEXT=\EDTABINDENT\%  
  \fi\NEXT\%  
\}\

\edtabindent (was \tabindent)
\newcommand{\edtabindent}{%  
  \l@dcolcount=0\relax  
  \Hilfsskip=0pt\%  
  \hilfscount=1\relax  
  \EDTABINDENT\%  
  \hilfsskip=\hsize\%  
  \advance\hilfsskip -\Hilfsskip\%  
  \hilfsskip=0.5\hilfsskip\%  
  \}%  
\}\

\EDTAB (was \TAB)
\def\EDTAB #1|#2|{%  
  \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\%  
  \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#2}$}\%  
  \advance\tablskip -\wd\tabhilfbox\%  
  \advance\tablskip -\wd\tabHilfbox\%  
  \unhbox\tabhilfbox\%  
  \unhbox\tabHilfbox\%  
\}%  

\EDTABtext (was \TABtext)
\def\EDTABtext #1|#2|{%  
  \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{#1}\%  
  \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{#2}\%  
  \advance\tablskip -\wd\tabhilfbox\%  
  \advance\tablskip -\wd\tabHilfbox\%  
  \unhbox\tabhilfbox\%  
  \unhbox\tabHilfbox\%  
\}%  

\tabhilfbox  
\tabHilfbox  

Further helpers.
XXXII.2.4 Environments

edarrayl edarrayc edarrayr The environment forms for \ltab, \ctab and \rtab.

\newenvironment{edarrayl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltab}{}
\newenvironment{edarrayc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctab}{}
\newenvironment{edarrayr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtab}{}

\newenvironment{edtabularl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltabtext}{}
\newenvironment{edtabularc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctabtext}{}
\newenvironment{edtabularr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtabtext}{}

XXXIII Quotation’s commands

This macro, called at the beginning of any numbered section, locally redefines the quotation and quote environments, in order to allow their use inside of numbered sections.

\initnumbering@quote defines quotation environment.

\newcommand{\initnumbering@quote}{
  \ifnoquotation\else
    \renewcommand{\quotation}{\par\leavevmode%
      \parindent=1.5em%
      \skipnumbering%
      \iftautopar%
        \vskip-\parskip%
      \else%
        \vskip\topsep%
      \fi%
      \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
      \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
    }
  \renewcommand{\endquotation}{\par%
    \global\leftskip=0pt%
    \global\rightskip=0pt%
    \leavevmode%
  }
}
XXXIV  Section’s title commands

XXXIV.1  Commands to disable some feature

\ledsectnotoc  The \ledsectnotoc only disables the \addcontentsline macro.

\newcommand{\ledsectnotoc}{\let\addcontentsline@gobblethree}

\ledsectnomark  The \ledsectnomark only disables the \chaptermark, \sectionmark and \subsectionmark macros.

\newcommand{\ledsectnomark}{%}
\let\chaptermark@gobble%
\let\sectionmark@gobble%
\let\subsectionmark@gobble%
XXXIV.2 General overview

The system of \eledxxxx commands to section text work like this:

1. When one of these commands is called, reledmac writes to an auxiliary files:
   - The section level.
   - The section title.
   - The side (when reledpar is used).
   - The pstart where the command is called.
   - If we have starred version or not.

2. reledmac adds the title of the section to pstart, as normal content. This is to enable critical notes.

3. When \LaTeX is run a other time, this file is read. That:
   - Adds the pstart number to a list of pstarts where a sectioning command is used.
   - Defines a command, the name of which contains the pstart number, and which calls the normal \LaTeX sectioning command.

4. This last command is called when the pstart is effectively printed.

XXXIV.3 \beforeeledchapter command

We do not define commands for \eledsection and related if the noeledsec option is loaded. We use etoolbox tests and not the if xxx...else...fi structure to prevent problem of expansions with command after the ifxxx which contains fi. As we patch command inside this test, we need to change the category code of # character before \notbool statement, because the second argument is read with the standard catcode (read The TeXbook to understand when the catcode’s change has effect).

\beforeeledchapter For technical reasons, not yet solved, page-breaking before chapters can’t be made automatically by eledmac. Users have to use \beforeeledchapter.
XXXIV Section’s title commands

XXXIV.4 Auxiliary commands

\usepackage{reledmac}

\newcommand\beforeeledchapter{\
    \if@openright\\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi\}
\fi

\print@leftmargin@eledsection and \print@rightmargin@eledsection are added by reledmac inside the code of sectioning command, in order to affix lines numbers. They include tests for RTL languages.

\def\print@rightmargin@eledsection{\
    \if@eled@sectioning\
        \begingroup\
        \if@RTL\let\rlap\llap\let\rightlinenum\leftlinenum\let\rightlinenumR\leftlinenumR\let\l@dld@ta\l@drd@ta\let\l@dlsn@te\l@dlsn@te\fi\hfill\l@drd@ta \csuse{LR}{\l@dlsn@te}\endgroup\fi\%
    \fi\}

\def\print@leftmargin@eledsection{\
    \if@eled@sectioning\
        \leavevmode\begingroup\
        \if@RTL\let\llap\rlap\let\leftlinenum\rightlinenum\let\leftlinenumR\rightlinenumR\let\l@dlsn@te\l@dld@ta\let\l@dld@ta\l@drd@ta\fi\l@dld@ta\csuse{LR}{\l@dlsn@te}\endgroup\fi\%
    \fi\}

%
XXXIV.5 Patching standard commands

We have to patch \LaTeX, book and memoir sectioning commands in order to:

• Disable \texttt{edtext} inside.
• Disable page breaking (for \texttt{chapter}).
• Add line numbers and sidenotes.

Unfortunately, Maieul Rouquette was not able to try if memoir is loaded. That is why eledmac tries to define for both standard class and memoir class.

\begin{verbatim}
\AtBeginDocument{%
\pretocmd{\M@sect} {
\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
}{}
\apptocmd{\M@sect} {
\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
{}
\patchcmd{\M@sect} {
#9}
{ #9%
\print@rightmargin@eledsection%}
{}
{}
\patchcmd{\M@sect} {
\hskip #3\relax}
{\hskip #3\relax%
\print@leftmargin@eledsection%}
{}
{}
\patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect} {
#5}
{ #5%
\print@leftmargin@eledsection%}
{}
{}
\end{verbatim}
XXXIV Section title commands

\patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
  \{\hskip #1\}
  \{\hskip #1\%
  \print@rightmargin@eledsection\%
  \}
  \{
  \}

\patchcmd{\scr@startchapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{\%
  \if@eled@sectioning\else\%
  \ifl@dprintingpages\else\%
  \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi\%
  \}
  \}\%

\patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}
  \{
  \}%

\patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}{\if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi}{\%
  \if@eled@sectioning\else\%
  \if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi\%
  \}
  \%
  \%

\patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}{\% For BIDI
  \{
  \}%

\patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}{\%
  \{\%
  \%
  \%

\patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}
  \{
  \}%

\patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}{\%
  \{\%
  \%
  \%

\patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}
hyperref also redefines \@sect. That is why, when manipulating arguments, we patch \@sect and the same only if hyperref is not used. If it is, we patch the \H@old commands.

```latex
\ifdef{\H@old@sect}{%
  \patchcmd{\H@old@sect}{% #6 % #6 \print@rightmargin@eledsection% }{#6}{}

  \patchcmd{\H@old@sect}{% #5 % #5 \print@leftmargin@eledsection% }{#5}{}

  \patchcmd{\H@old@@sect}{% #5 % #5 \print@rightmargin@eledsection% }{#5}{}

  \patchcmd{\H@old@sect}{% #6 % #6 \print@leftmargin@eledsection% }{#6}{}

  \patchcmd{\H@old@sect}{% #6 % #6 \print@rightmargin@eledsection% }{#6}{}
```

XXXIV.5  Patching standard commands  395
Section’s title commands

{#5\%}
\print@rightmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}

\patchcmd{\H@old@@sect}\%
{\hskip #1}
{\hskip #1\%}
\print@leftmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}

\patchcmd{\@sect}
{#8}\%
{#8\%}
\print@rightmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}

\patchcmd{\@sect}
{\hskip #3\relax}
{\hskip #3\relax\%}
\print@leftmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}

\patchcmd{\@ssect}
{#5}\%
{#5\%}
\print@rightmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}
\patchcmd{\@ssect}
{\hskip #1}
{\hskip #1\%}
\print@leftmargin@eledsection{}
{}
{}

%
XXXIV.5  Patching standard commands

Close the \notbool{@noeled@sec} statement. Also, we have finished patching the
commands, using # with a catcode equal to 12, so we are restoring the normal catcode
for #.

\protect\catcode`\#=6  %Space NEEDS by \catcode

\chapter

We patch the \chapter command even if the noeledsec option is called, because we
can use \chapter in the optional argument of a \pstart in parallel typesetting.

\if@eled@sectioning
The boolean \if@eled@sectioning is set to true when a sectioning command is called
by a \eledxxx command, and set to false after. It is used to enable/disable line number
printing.

We reopen a new \notbool{@noeled@sec} statement, as we will define the \elesection
commands.
XXXIV.6 Main code of `eledxxx` commands

`eled@sectioning@out` is the output file, to dump the pstarts where a sectioning command is used.

```
\newwrite\eled@sectioning@out
\section
```

And now, the user sectioning commands, which write to the file, and also add content as a "normal" line.

```
\newcommand{\eledchapter}[2][]{%
  \disable@famiariotes
  #2%
  \restore@famiariotes
  \if\eledRcol%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
      \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{}{R}%
    }%
  \else%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
      \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{}{}%
    }%
  \fi%
}
```

```
\newcommand{\eledsection}[2][]{%
  \disable@famiariotes
  #2%
  \restore@famiariotes
  \if\eledRcol%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
      \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{}{R}%
    }%
  \else%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
      \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{}{}%
    }%
  \fi%
}
```

```
\newcommand{\eledsubsection}[2][]{%
  \disable@famiariotes
  #2%
  \restore@famiariotes
  \if\eledRcol%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
      \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{}{R}%
    }%
  \else%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
      \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{}{}%
    }%
  \fi%
}
```

```
\newcommand{\eledsubsubsection}[2][]{%
  \disable@famiariotes
  #2%
  \restore@famiariotes
  \if\eledRcol%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
      \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{}{R}%
    }%
  \else%
    \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
      \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{}{}%
    }%
  ```
XXXIV.6  Main code of \eledxxx commands

\immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
\string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}%
}\fi%
\newcommand{\eledsubsubsection}{%\closequote}{%
\disable@familiarnotes
#2
\restore@familiarnotes
\ifledRcol
\immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
\string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
}%}{(R)}
\else
\immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
\string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{*}{}
}%}{%\closequote}
\fi%
\WithSuffix\newcommand{\eledchapter}{%\closequote}{%\closequote}{%}
\disable@familiarnotes
#2
\restore@familiarnotes
\ifledRcol
\immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
\string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
}%\closequote
\else
\immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
\string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{*}{}
}%\closequote
\fi%
\WithSuffix\newcommand{\eledsection}{%\closequote}{%\closequote}{%}
XXXIV.7 Macros written in the auxiliary file

The sectioning macros, called in the auxiliary file. They have five arguments:

1. Optional arguments of \LaTeX sectioning command.
2. Mandatory arguments of \LaTeX sectioning command.
3. Pstart number.
4. Side: R if right, nothing if left.
5. Starred or not.

\def\eled@chapter#1#2#3#4#5{\% 
  \ifstrempty{#4}\%
  \ifstrempty{#1}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\showlemma\chapter{#2}}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark{#2}}\%
  ){Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%}
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\showlemma\chapter*[#1]{#2}}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark{#2}}\%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%
  \%}
  \%}
  \%}
  \ifstrempty{#1}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark{#2}}\%
  \%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%}
  \%}
  \%}
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark{#2}}\%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%
  \%}
  \%}
  \%}
  \ifstrempty{#1}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark*{#2}}\%Bug in LaTeX!\%
  \%\}
  \%\}
  \%\}
  \listcsgadd{eled@sections@500}{#3}\}
  }\%
  \def\eled@section#1#2#3#4#5{\%
  \ifstrempty{#4}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark{#2}}\%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%
  \%}
  \%}
  \%}
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#1}{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark{#1}}\%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.\%
  \%}
  \%}
  \%}
  \ifstrempty{#1}\%
  \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#2}}%
  \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext\sectionmark*{#2}}\%Bug in LaTeX!\%
  }\%
  \listcsgadd{eled@sections@500}{#3}\}
  }\%
  \def\eled@subsection#1#2#3#4#5{\%
XXXV  Page breaking or no page breaking depending on specific lines

By default, page breaks are automatic. However, the user can define lines which will force page breaks, or prevent page breaks around one specific line. On the first run, the line-list file records the line number of where the page break is being changed (either
forced, or prevented). On the next run, page breaks occur either before or after this line, depending on how the user sets the command. The default setting is after the line.

\texttt{\normal@page@break} is an \texttt{etoolbox} list which contains the absolute line number of the last line, for each page.

\begin{verbatim}
\10572 \def\normal@page@break{}
\10573 \%
\prev@pb The \texttt{\1\prev@pb} macro is a \texttt{etoolbox} list, which contains the lines in which page breaks occur (before or after). The \texttt{\1\prev@nopb} macro is a \texttt{etoolbox} list, which contains the lines with NO page break before or after.

\10574 \def\l@prev@pb{}
\10575 \def\l@prev@nopb{}
\10576 \%
\ledpb The \texttt{\1\ledpb} macro writes the call to \texttt{\led@pb} in line-list file. The \texttt{\1\ledpbnum} macro writes the call to \texttt{\led@pbnum} in line-list file. The \texttt{\1\lednopb} macro writes the call to \texttt{\led@nopb} in line-list file. The \texttt{\1\lednopbnum} macro writes the call to \texttt{\led@nopbnum} in line-list file.

\10577 \newcommand{\ledpb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pb}}
\10578 \newcommand{\ledpbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pbnum{#1}}}
\10579 \newcommand{\lednopb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopb}}
\10580 \newcommand{\lednopbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopbnum{#1}}}
\10581 \%
\led@pb The \texttt{\1\led@pb} adds the absolute line number in the \texttt{\prev@pb} list. The \texttt{\1\led@pbnum} adds the argument in the \texttt{\prev@pb} list. The \texttt{\1\led@nopb} adds the absolute line number in the \texttt{\prev@nopb} list. The \texttt{\1\led@nopbnum} adds the argument in the \texttt{\prev@nopb} list.

\10582 \newcommand{\led@pb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{\the\absline@num}}
\10583 \newcommand{\led@pbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{#1}}
\10584 \newcommand{\led@nopb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{\the\absline@num}}
\10585 \newcommand{\led@nopbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{#1}}
\10586 \%
\led@check@pb The \texttt{\1\led@check@pb} and \texttt{\1\led@check@nopb} are called before or after each line. They check if a page break must occur, depending on the current line and on the content of \texttt{\1\nopb}.

\10587 \%
\end{verbatim}
XXXVI  Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break

\texttt{\iflednopbinverse} The \texttt{\lednopbinverse} boolean is set to false by default. If set to true, \texttt{reledmac} will automatically prevent page breaks inside verse. The declaration is made at the beginning of the file, because it is used as a package option.

\texttt{\check@pb@in@verse} The \texttt{\check@pb@in@verse} checks if a verse is broken in two page. If true, it adds:
\begin{itemize}
  \item The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the \texttt{\led@pb} list, if the page break must occur before the verse.
  \item The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the \texttt{\led@nopb} list, if the page break must occur after the verse.
\end{itemize}
XXXVII  Tools for hyperref package

\Hy@raisedlink@left

The hyperref package provides a \Hy@raisedlink command, to be used to add an anchor to the top of a line and not to the bottom of it\footnote{http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/17138/7712}. However, this command disrupts the line breaking mechanism when it is called before any word. This is why \reledmac defines \Hy@raisedlink@left that is called to the left of words, at the beginning of \edtext or inside the \edlabel commands\footnote{The code is inspired by an answer given by @unbonpetit. Thanks to him \url{http://texnique.fr:80/osqa/questions/781/hyraisedlink-perturbe-la-maniere-dont-se-fait-la-coupure-de-ligne/801}}.

\def\Hy@raisedlink@left#1{\ifvmode #1\else \Hy@SaveSpaceFactor \llap{\smash{\begingroup \let\HyperRaiseLinkLength\@tempdima \setlength\HyperRaiseLinkLength\HyperRaiseLinkDefault \HyperRaiseLinkHook \expandafter\endgroup \expandafter\raise\the\HyperRaiseLinkLength\hbox{\Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor #1\Hy@SaveSpaceFactor}}}\Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor \penalty\@M\hskip\z@relax \fi} %

XXXVIII  Compatibility with eledmac

Here, we define some commands for the eledmac\-compat option.

\^http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/17138/7712\footnote{The code is inspired by an answer given by @unbonpetit. Thanks to him \url{http://texnique.fr:80/osqa/questions/781/hyraisedlink-perturbe-la-maniere-dont-se-fait-la-coupure-de-ligne/801}}.
\ifeledmaccompat%
\newcommand{\footnormal}{\arrangement{normal}}%
\newcommand{\footparagraph}{\arrangement{paragraph}}%
\newcommand{\foottwocol}{\arrangement{twocol}}%
\newcommand{\footthreecol}{\arrangement{threecol}}%
\unless\ifnocritical%
\newcommand{\footnormal}{\Xarrangement{normal}}%
\newcommand{\footparagraph}{\Xarrangement{paragraph}}%
\newcommand{\foottwocol}{\Xarrangement{twocol}}%
\newcommand{\footthreecol}{\Xarrangement{threecol}}%
\let\hsizetwocol=Xhsizetwocol
\let\hsizethreecol=Xhsizethreecol
\let\bhookNote=XhookNote\Xboxsymlinenum
\let\boxsymlinenum=Xboxsymlinenum
\let\beforenumberinfootnote=Xbeforenumber
\let\afternumberinfootnote=Xafternumber
\let\beforeXsymlinenum=Xbeforexboxlinenum
\let\afterXsymlinenum=Xafterxboxlinenum
\let\inplaceofnumber=Xinplaceofnumber
\let\Xlemmaseparator=lemmaseparator
\let\afterXrule=Xafterrule
\let\numberonlyfirstinline=Xnumberonlyfirstinline
\let\numberonlyfirstintwolines=Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines
\let\nonumberinfootnote=Xnonumberinfootnote
\let\pstartinfootnote=Xpstart
\let\pstartinfootnoteeverytime=Xpstarteverytime
\let\onlyXpstart=Xonlypstart
\let\Xnonumberinfootnote=Xnonumber
\let\nonbreakableafternumber=Xnonbreakableafternumber
\let\maxXnotes=Xmaxxnotes
\let\beforeXnotes=Xbeforenotes
\let\xboxlinenum=Xboxlinenum
\let\xboxlinenumalign=Xboxlinenumalign
\let\xboxstartlinenum=Xboxstartlinenum
\let\xboxendlinenum=Xboxendlinenum
\let\twolines=xtwolines
\let\morethantwolines=xmorethantwolines
\let\twolinesbutnotmore=xtwolinesbutnotmore
\let\twolinesonlyinsamepage=xtwolinesonlyinsamepage

\fi
\unless\ifnofamiliar%
\let\notes=xtwocolnotes
\fi
\newcommandx{\parafootsep}[2][1, usedefault]{% 
\Xparafootsep[#1]{#2} 
\parafootsepX[#1]{#2} 
}%

\newcommandx{\afternote}[2][2, usedefault]{% 
\Xafternote[#1]{#2} 
\afternoteX[#1]{#2} 
}%

\unless\ifnoend@
  \let\XendXtwolines\Xendtwolines
  \let\XendXmorethantwolines\Xendmorethantwolines
  \let\bhookXendnote\Xendbhooknote
  \let\boxXendlinenum\Xendboxlinenum
  \let\boxXendlinenumalign\Xendboxlinenumalign
  \let\boxXendstartlinenum\Xendboxstartlinenum
  \let\boxXendendlinenum\Xendboxendlinenum
  \let\XendXlemmaseparator\Xendlemmaseparator
  \let\XendXbeforelemmaseparator\Xendbeforelemmaseparator
  %
</code>
Appendix A  Things to do when changing versions

A.1  Migrating from EDMAC to ledmac

If you have never used EDMAC, ignore this section. If you have used EDMAC and are starting on a completely new document, ignore this section. Only read this section if you are converting an original EDMAC document to use ledmac.

The package still provides the original \text command, but it is (a) deprecated, and (b) its name has been changed to \critext; use the \edtext macro instead. However, if you do use \critext (the new name for \text), the following is a reminder.

Within numbered paragraphs, footnotes and endnotes are generated by forms of the \critext macro:

\critext{(lemma)(commands)}/

The (lemma) argument is the lemma in the main text: \critext both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the (commands) you specify to generate notes. The / at the end terminates the command; it is part of the macro’s definition so that spaces after the macro will be treated as significant.

For example:

I saw my friend \critext{Smith} \footnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.

The lemma Smith is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, Jones C, D. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The (lemma) may contain further \critext commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

\critext{I saw my friend Smith}{\footnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.}/

\footnote{The date was July 16, 1954.}/

However, \critext cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; a \critext that starts in the (lemma) argument of another \critext must end there, too. (The \lemma and \linenum commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

The second argument of the \critext macro, (commands), is the same as the second argument to the \edtext macro.

It is possible to define aliases for \critext, which can be easier to type. You can make a single character substitute for \critext by saying this:

\catcode`\<=\active

\critext{I saw my friend Smith}{\footnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.}/

\footnote{The date was July 16, 1954.}/

\catcode`\<=\active

A name like \text is likely to be defined by other \LaTeX{} packages (it certainly is by the AMS packages) and it seems sensible to try and avoid clashes with other definitions.
A.2 Migration from ledmac to eledmac

Then you might say $\text{<Smith\textsuperscript{variant} Jones>}$ . This of course destroys the ability to use $<$ in any new macro definitions, so long as it remains in effect; hence it should be used with care.

Changing the character at the end of the command requires more work:

\begin{verbatim}
\let\le\crtext
\def\xtext##1##2>{\crtext{##1}{##2}/}
\let\le\xtext
\end{verbatim}

This allows you to say $\text{<Smith\textsuperscript{Afootnote} Jones>}$.

Aliases for \crtext of the first kind shown here also can’t be nested—that is, you can’t use the alias in the text that forms the first argument to \crtext. (See [VI] p. 140 to find out why.) Aliases of the second kind may be nested without any problem.

If you really have to use \crtext in any of the tabular or array environments, then \edtext must not be used in the same environment. If you use \crtext in one of these environments then you have to issue the declaration \usingcritext beforehand. The declaration \usingedtext must be issued to revert to the default assumption that \edtext will be used.

A.2 Migration from ledmac to eledmac

In eledmac, some changes were made in the code to allow easy customization. This may cause problems for people who have already made their own. The next sections explain how to handle this.

If you have created your own series using \addfootins and \addfootinsX, you must use instead the \newseries command (see [6.7.1] p. 42), and remove any \Xfootnote command.

If you have customized the \XXXXXfmt command, please check whether you can achieve the same by the commands documented for display options (7) p. 33 or \Xfootnote options (6.2.2) p. 30. Otherwise please add a new ticket on Github to request a new function for doing this.

If for some reason you do not want to make the modifications to use the new functions of eledmac, you can continue using your own \XXXXXfmt command, but you must replace:

\begin{verbatim}
\renewcommand*{XXXXfmt}{3}
\end{verbatim}

with

\begin{verbatim}
\renewcommandx*{XXXXfmt}{4}[4=Z]
\end{verbatim}

\footnote{https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues}
Appendix A  Things to do when changing versions

If you do not make that, you will get a spurious $[X]$, where $X$ is series letter.
If you used a $\texttt{\protect}$ command inside a $\texttt{\footnote}$ command inside a numbered section, you must change the $\texttt{\protect}$ to $\texttt{\noexpand}$. Otherwise the command after the $\texttt{\protect}$ will be discarded.

A.3  Migration to eledmac 1.5.1

The version 1.5.1 corrects a bug in $\texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition}$ (cf. 9.3 p. 59). This bug had two consequences:

1. $\texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition}$ did not work when its value was greater than 2.
2. $\texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition}$ worked wrong when its value was equal to 2.

So, if you used $\texttt{stanzaindentsrepetition}$ with a value equal to 2, you had to change your $\texttt{\setstanzaindents}$. Explanation:

\begin{verbatim}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
\end{verbatim}

This code, in versions prior to 1.5.1, made the first line have an indentation of 0, the second line of 1, the third verse of 0, the fourth verse of 1 and so forth.
But this code should have instead achieved quite the contrary: the first line would have an indentation of 1, the second line of 0, the third line of 1, the fourth line of 0 and so forth.

So version 1.5.1 corrected this bug. If you want to keep the former presentation, you must change:

\begin{verbatim}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
\end{verbatim}

to:

\begin{verbatim}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,0,1}
\end{verbatim}

A.4  Migration to eledmac 1.12.0

The migration to eledmac 1.12.0 is easy:

- You must first delete all the auxiliary files, then compile your document three times as usual.
- If you have modified $\texttt{\l@reg}$, which is not advisable, you must rename it to $\texttt{\@nl@reg}$.

There is an additional problem. If you have put text into brackets just after $\texttt{pstart}$ or $\texttt{pend}$, this text will be considered to be an optional argument of $\texttt{pstart}$ or $\texttt{pend}$ (see 5.2.3 p. 19). If so, add a $\texttt{\relax}$ between $\texttt{pstart}$/$\texttt{pend}$ and the first bracket.

The version 1.12.0 also introduce a better way to handle sectional divisions inside numbered text. Please read 16.2 p. 77.
A.5  Migration to eledmac 17.1

This version changes the default setting of \Xpstart. Henceforth, pstart numbers will be printed in footnotes within the section of text where you have called \numberpstarttrue.

We do not see any reason to print them in the other sections. However, if you want to print the \pstart numbers in every footnote, whatever the section, without having to use \numberpstarttrue, you can use \Xpstarteverytime.

A.6  Migration to eledmac 1.21.0

A.6.1 \Xledsetnormalparstuff and \ledsetnormalparstuffX

The \ledsetnormalparstuff has been split into two different commands:

- \Xledsetnormalparstuff for critical notes;
- \ledsetnormalparstuffX for familiar notes.

Both commands can take an optional argument which is the series letter. If you have redefined \ledsetnormalparstuff or any of the commands which call them, you must change them accordingly.

A.6.2  Endnotes

In any case, delete the .end file before the next run.

The previous version of Eledmac had a bug: there were two spaces between the starting page number and the starting line number, but only one space between the ending page number and the ending line number.

As a matter of fact, a spurious space was added after the first \printnpnum. This spurious space has been deleted. However, if you want to keep the previous spurious space, you may load the package with the oldprintnpnumsapce option.

If you have redefined \endprint, you must:

- Contact us and ask for the feature that required your hack, in order to avoid such a hack in the future.
- Use the new fifth argument.
- Add \xdef\@currentseries{#4} at the beginning of your own command.

A.7  Migration to eledmac 1.22.0

The \ledinnote command now takes a first optional argument, which is the label for the hyperreference. If you have redefined it, change your redefinition, and check whether you can avoid this redefinition by only redefining \ledinnotemark.

A.8  Migration to eledmac 1.23.0

You must delete the numbered auxiliary files before compiling with the new version of eledmac.
A.9 **Migration from eledmac to reledmac**

There are many changes in reledmac which require the user to make modifications.

A.9.1 **Risk of ‘no room for a new’**

The risk to obtain a ‘no room for a new something’ error is greater in reledmac than it is in eledmac. See [19.1.3 p. 80](#) in order to know how to limit it.

A.9.2 **Multiple indices with memoir**

Eledmac and ledmac used the specific indexing tools of the memoir class designed to produce multiple indices. However, eledmac could also use imakeidx or indextools tools independently of the memoir class. This system forced to maintain redundant code. Since reledmac, we use only the imakeidx or indextools tools.

Consequently: Users of memoir are invited to use indextool or imakeidx to produce multiple indices.

A.9.3 ** Deprecated commands and options**

The table of deprecated commands and their alternatives follows. Note that the way some commands must be used may have changed. Please read the handbook.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deprecated command</th>
<th>Replaced with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\addfootins</td>
<td>\newseries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\addfootinsX</td>
<td>\newseries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\critext</td>
<td>\edtext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\falseverse</td>
<td>\newverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\interparanoteglue</td>
<td>\afternoteX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ledchapter</td>
<td>\eledchapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ledsection</td>
<td>\eledsection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ledsetnormalparstuff</td>
<td>\ledsetnormalparstuffX  and \ledsetnormalparstuffX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ledsubsection</td>
<td>\eledsubsection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ledsubsubsection</td>
<td>\eledsubsubsection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\noeledsec</td>
<td>Package option noeledsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\noendnotes</td>
<td>Package option noendnotes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\pageparbreak</td>
<td>\ledpb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ledsecnolinenumber option has been removed, because it was related to deprecated commands.

The oldprintnpnumspace option has been removed too, because it was related to a historical bug. The \usingedtext and \usingcritext commands are also deprecated.
A.9.4 \renewcommand replaced by command

Many uses of \renewcommand have been replaced with uses of specific commands. Please read handbook about specific commands.

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\texttt{Deprecated \renewcommand} & \texttt{Replaced with} \\
\hline
\texttt{@led@extranofeet} & \texttt{\newseries} \\
\texttt{apprefprefixmore} & \texttt{\setapprefprefixmore} \\
\texttt{apprefprefixsingle} & \texttt{\setapprefprefixsingle} \\
\texttt{endstanzaextra} & Optional argument of \& \\
\texttt{hangingsymbol} & \texttt{\sethangingsymbol} \\
\texttt{ledfootinsdim} & \texttt{\Xmaxhnotes} and \texttt{\maxhnotesX} \\
\texttt{parafoottmsep} & \texttt{\Xparafootsep} and \texttt{\parafoottmsepX} \\
\texttt{notenumfont} & \texttt{\notenumfont, \Xendnotenumfont} \\
& \texttt{and \notenumfontX} \\
\texttt{notefontsetup} & \texttt{\Xnotefontsize,} \\
& \texttt{\Xendnotefontsize} and \texttt{\notefontsizeX} \\
\texttt{\textbackslash setsidenotsep} & \texttt{\Xsymlinenum} \\
\texttt{startstanzahook} & Optional argument of \texttt{\stanza} \\
\texttt{\symlinenum} & \texttt{\Xnotefontsize} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

A.9.5 Commands the names of which have been changed

In order to help the migration from eledmac to reledmac, you may load reledmac with eledmac\-compat option. However, it is advised not to, and to change the command names themselves instead. In many cases, you use only a few of them, except the \texttt{\footparagraph} command.

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\texttt{Old command} & \texttt{New command} \\
\hline
\texttt{\footparagraph} & \texttt{\Xarrangement} \\
\texttt{\footnormal} & \texttt{\Xarrangement} \\
\texttt{\foottwocol} & \texttt{\Xarrangement} \\
\texttt{\foottreecol} & \texttt{\Xarrangement} \\
\hline
\texttt{\footparagraphX} & \texttt{\XarrangementX} \\
\texttt{\footnormalX} & \texttt{\XarrangementX} \\
\texttt{\foottwocolX} & \texttt{\XarrangementX} \\
\texttt{\foottreecolX} & \texttt{\XarrangementX} \\
\hline
\texttt{\afterlemmaseparator} & \texttt{\Xafterlemmaseparator} \\
\texttt{\afternote} & \texttt{\Xafternote and \afternoteX} \\
\texttt{\afternumberinfootnote} & \texttt{\Xafternumber} \\
\texttt{\afterXrule} & \texttt{\Xafterrule} \\
\texttt{\afterXsymlinenum} & \texttt{\Xtersymlinenum} \\
\texttt{\beforelemmaseparator} & \texttt{\Xbeforelemmaseparator} \\
\texttt{\beforenumberinfootnote} & \texttt{\Xbeforenumber} \\
\texttt{\beforerule} & \texttt{\Xbeforerules} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
### Appendix A  Things to do when changing versions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old command</th>
<th>New command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\beforeXsymlinenum</td>
<td>\beforeesymlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\bhookXNote</td>
<td>\bhookendnote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\bhookXNote</td>
<td>\bhooknote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxendlinenum</td>
<td>\boxendlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxlinenum</td>
<td>\boxlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxlinenumalign</td>
<td>\boxlinenumalign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxstartlinenum</td>
<td>\boxstartlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxsymlinenum</td>
<td>\boxsymlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxXendlinenum</td>
<td>\Xendboxlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxXendlinenumalign</td>
<td>\Xendboxlinenumalign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\boxXendstartlinenum</td>
<td>\boxXendstartlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\letboxXendendlinenum</td>
<td>\Xendletboxendlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hsizetwocol</td>
<td>\Xhsizetwocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hsizethreecol</td>
<td>\Xhsizethreecol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\inplaceoflemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\inplaceofnumber</td>
<td>\Xinplaceofnumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\lemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xlemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\maxhXnotes</td>
<td>\Xmaxhnotes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\morethan twolines</td>
<td>\Xmorethan twolines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\nonumberinfotnote</td>
<td>\Xnonumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\notesXwidthliketwocolumns</td>
<td>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\noXlemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xnolemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\numberonlyfirstinline</td>
<td>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\numberonlyfirstintwolines</td>
<td>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\nonbreakableafternumber</td>
<td>\Xnonbreakableafternumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\onlyXpstart</td>
<td>\Xonlypstart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\parafootsep</td>
<td>\Xparafootsep and \parafootsepX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\pstartinfootnote</td>
<td>\Xpstart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\pstartinfootnoteeverytime</td>
<td>\Xpstarteverytime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\symlinenum</td>
<td>\Xsymlinenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twolines</td>
<td>\Xtwolines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twolinesbutnotmore</td>
<td>\Xtwolinesbutnotmore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twolinesonlyyinsamapage</td>
<td>\Xtwolinesonlyyinsamapage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\txtbeforeXNotes</td>
<td>\XtxtbeforeNotes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXafterlemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xendafterlemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXbeforelemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXplaceoflemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xendplaceoflemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXlemmaseparator</td>
<td>\Xendlemmaseparator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXmorethan twolines</td>
<td>\Xendmorethan twolines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\XendXtwolines</td>
<td>\Xendtwolines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xnonumberinfotnote</td>
<td>\Xnonumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\lineref</td>
<td>\edlineref</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A.9.6 Endnotes

With \reledmac, there is now one auxiliary file for each endnotes set (.Aend, .Bend, .Cend etc.). If you have overridden \doendnotes (which you should not have done) you must adapt your code.

A.9.7 Z Series

The ‘Z’ series of notes has been removed. Only five series are provided now by default: A, B, C, D, E.

A.9.8 Internal commands

Users who have overridden internal commands, which is wrong, must adapt according to the following. Or better, they should not override any of such commands and use \reledmac options instead.

- If you have modified \Xfootfmt, note that the fourth argument is now mandatory.
- \unvxh has been replaced with \Xunvxh and \unvxhX with two mandatory arguments.

A.10 Migration to \reledmac 2.1.0

\reledmac 2.1.0 fix some bugs when using \Xbhooknote and \bhooknoteX not in order to execute code at the beginning of each notes, but to insert content at the beginning of each notes.

People who use these commands to do it, which is not the original idea, must change the following:

1. Horizontal space is no longer automatically added after the content of the \Xbhooknote/bhooknoteX argument. You must include it manually. So instead of \Xbhooknote{content}, use \Xbhooknote{content}.

2. Indent is no longer automatically added before the content of the \Xbhooknote/bhooknoteX argument. If you want to keep it, add \indent to the argument of \Xbhooknote/bhooknoteX.

A.11 Migration to \reledmac 2.1.3

\reledmac 2.1.3 fix an historical bug, (style in \ledmac 0.7!) which doubled the space before the rules of paragraphed familiar footnotes. Consequently, if you use paragraphed familiar footnotes, you should maybe adapt it, playing with \beforenotesX.

A.12 Migration to \reledmac 2.3.0

Before \reledmac 2.3.0, for typesetting verse, any empty line was considered a paragraph inside verses. Counting empty lines this created breaking verse, hanging verses, and also added spurious vertical spaces. Version 2.3.0 disables paragraph in stanza. If you want vertical space, use the optional argument of \stanza or \endverse.
A.13 Migration to reledmac 2.4.0

It is not mandatory, but strongly recommended, to change any `\renewcommand\endashchar{\ldots}` to the use of `\Xlinerangeseparator` or `/` and `\Xendlinerangeseparator` [7.4.4 p. 46].

A.14 Migration to reledmac 2.5.0

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\printnpnum` and to use the hooks documented in [7.4.3 p. 46].

`\xlineref` does not print anymore the side flag (R for right side), because it is incompatible with numerical list. Use `\xflagref` to obtain it.

The `\printlines` and `\printendlines` commands take now an eighth argument, which is the side flag. It is strongly recommended to NEVER redefine these two commands and to use the setting commands instead (or to ask for new setting commands if the actual does not answer to your needs). However, if you have done it, just change your redefinition to have a new argument.

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\fullstop` and to use `\Xsublinesep` instead.

A.15 Migration to reledmac 2.7.0

`\SErefonlypage` (introduced in reledmac 2.5.0) added an parenthesis after the page number. This was just an error, linked to a bad imitation of `\SErefwithpage`. That has been deleted. And so, the `\Xendafterpagenumber\SErefonlypage` to set it was also deleted.

`\rigidbalance` is split to two new commands: `\Xrigidbalance` for critical footnotes and `\rigidbalanceX` for familiar footnotes. If you have redefined it — but why should you have? — you should split your single redefinition in two redefinitions.

A.16 Migration to reledmac 2.7.2

`\Xhsize` is already defined in the `floatrow` package. It becomes `\Xwidth`, and, consequently, `\hsizeX` becomes `\widthX`.

The ancient names are temporarily maintained as aliases.

A.17 Migration to reledmac 2.8.0

Reledmac 2.8.0 fix spurious indents for paragraphed critical and familiar footnotes in `ledgroup` and `minipage`. You can re-establish the indent with `\Xparindent` and `\parindentX`.

A.18 Migration to reledmac 2.13.1

Reledmac 2.5.0 added a bug, which makes the right flag to be printed on the right side of critical footnotes, even if not explicitly requested by using `\Xlineflag`. 
Version 2.13.1 solves this issue. Please use \Xlineflag if you want to add the right flag.

**A.19 Migration to reledmac 2.18.0**

After updating reledmac, and before any new compilation, you need to clean your .aux files, if you use \edlabel or related.

**A.20 Migration to reledmac 2.21.0**

Previously, there was a bug, which meant that the description in the handbook was incorrect. If you wrote

The \edtext{creature} was quite unafraid}{\Afootnote{Of the mouse, that is.}}

“elephant” was indexed in the main text and in the critical footnotes. With the new version of reledmac, it is indexed only in main text. If you also want to index it in critical footnotes, do

The \edtext{creature} was quite unafraid}{\Afootnote{\edindex{elephant}Of the mouse, that is.}}

**A.21 Migration to reledmac 2.24.0**

When using \labelpstarttrue, a spurious space was introduced after the pstart number (only for normal typesetting, not while typesetting in parallel). The new version of the package has deleted this spurious space. If you consider that it was NOT a spurious space, you should add it manually in your definition of \thepstart.

**A.22 Migration to reledmac 2.26.0**

You must delete your .aux file after having upgraded to this new version of reledmac.

**A.23 Migration to reledmac 2.27.1**

This release fixes spurious space in \hidenumbering. If you considered this spurious space as normal, you must insert it manually using.

\texttt{xx\hidenumbering\ xx}

To get the space after xx.

**A.24 Migration to reledmac 2.30.0**

If you have multiple annotations for the same line, these are now separated with a comma in the margin. You can use \setlinenumannotationsep to change the separator.
Appendix B Auxiliary softwares

A.25 Migration to reledmac 2.31.1
If you use \Xgroupbyline, the indentation of the notes has been deleted, in order to have the same behavior as for normal critical notes.
Use \Xparindent to restore indentation.

A.26 Migration to reledmac 2.32.7
For paragraphed familiar footnotes, the separator between notes was \Xparafootsep instead of \parafootsepX. This release fixes this bug. You may adapt your settings.

A.27 Migration to reledmac 2.33.0
You should not redefine anymore \ledinnote, but use instead \innotemarkX and \Xinnotemark.
If you have personal script which parses for \ledinnote or if you redefine \ledinnote (but normally, you should not), this macro have new arguments. Look at the code for more details.

Appendix B Auxiliary softwares

This appendix lists some software and tools related to reledmac that may be useful.

B.1 samewords
The samewords program (Michael Stenskjær Christensen) automatically adds \sameword commands (6.3 p. 34) into a .tex file.
https://samewords.readthedocs.io/en/latest/

B.2 critical-keys for Emacs
The Emacs editor has a package to help inserting reledmac’s commands (Juan Manuel Macías Chain).
https://gitlab.com/maciaschain/critical-keys

B.3 critical-marks for Emacs
A set of functions for Emacs that run in the export process from Org Mode to LaTeX and replace a series of simple textual marks with the basic reledmac’s commands (Juan Manuel Macías Chain)
https://gitlab.com/maciaschain/critical-marks

B.4 Import from TEI

B.5 Import from TEI
There are multiple tools to convert from XML-TEI to reledmac. Here is a non exhaustive-list:
B.5 Import from TEI

- [https://github.com/fizzbucket/tei_transformer](https://github.com/fizzbucket/tei_transformer)
- [https://github.com/TEIC/Stylesheets](https://github.com/TEIC/Stylesheets)
- [http://lombardpress.org/print/](http://lombardpress.org/print/)
- [https://github.com/Jean-Baptiste-Camps/TEItoLaTeX](https://github.com/Jean-Baptiste-Camps/TEItoLaTeX)

Please, tell us if you know of other tools.
References


Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\k</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\EDEROWFILLO</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@adv</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@advancestanzanumber</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@annot</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@annot@end@print</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@annot@start@print</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@beforeinsertofthisedtext</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@check@edtext@args</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doclearpage</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doreinfeetX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doclearpage</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doreinfeetX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doclearpage</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@doreinfeetX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@set</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@sidenotesep</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ssect</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@startstanza</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@stopmsd</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@stopstanza</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@sw</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@tag</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xloop</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ympar</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>80, 393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memoir</td>
<td>231, 232, 299–302, 339, 393, 412, 478, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrbook</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND\footnote</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@footnotemark...</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND...d@ta</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND-hook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@&lt;series</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND-hookname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;pseudoseries</td>
<td>287, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND-type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footfmt</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@line</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@MM</td>
<td>192, 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@Rlineflag</td>
<td>341, 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@SErefprefix</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@SErefprefixmore</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@add@</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@adv</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@annot</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@annot@end@print</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@annot@start@print</td>
<td>220, 225, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@apprefprefixmore</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@apprefprefixsingle</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@beforeinsertofthisedtext</td>
<td>148, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@bsphack</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@docclearpage</td>
<td>300, 301, 472, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@doreinfeetX</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@dprintingcolumns</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@edindex@hyperref</td>
<td>341, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@edtext@level</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@esphack</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@firstofone</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@fnpos</td>
<td>253, 296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@footnotemark</td>
<td>232, 472, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@footnotetext</td>
<td>232, 233, 472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@gobble</td>
<td>28, 38, 142, 143, 177, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND@gobblefive</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

COMMAND@gobblefour ........................................ 478
COMMAND@gobbleseven .................................. 282
COMMAND@gobblethree .................................... 471
COMMAND@h .............................................. 209
COMMAND@hangingsymbol ................................. 347
COMMAND@iiiminipage .................................... 330, 332, 471, 482
COMMAND@iiiminipage .................................... 330
COMMAND@l ................................................ 476
COMMAND@l@dtempcnta .................................. 173, 178, 186
COMMAND@l@dtempcntb .................................. 178
COMMAND@l@reg .......................................... 476
COMMAND@lab .............................................. 119, 304, 307, 312, 471
COMMAND@ldunboxmpfoot ................................. 333
COMMAND@led@extranofeet ................................ 413
COMMAND@ledinnote@command .......................... 336, 337
COMMAND@lemma .......................................... 148, 150
COMMAND@lock ........................................... 113, 348
COMMAND@lopL ............................................ 472
COMMAND@lopR ............................................ 472
COMMAND@makecol ........................................ 296, 299, 482
COMMAND@mempnum ...................................... 302
COMMAND@mpfnpos ...................................... 253
COMMAND@msd ............................................ 359
COMMAND@msd@c .......................................... 359
COMMAND@msd@options@iffullofpage ................. 366
COMMAND@msdata@list .................................. 359, 360
COMMAND@nl .............................................. 119, 121–124, 134, 177, 307, 471, 472
COMMAND@nl@reg ........................................ 119, 410, 472, 476
COMMAND@opXfeet ....................................... 472
COMMAND@opfeetX ........................................ 482
COMMAND@opxtrafeeti .................................... 482
COMMAND@outputpage .................................... 302, 303
COMMAND@page ........................................... 119, 121, 307
COMMAND@pend ........................................... 472
COMMAND@pendR ......................................... 472
COMMAND@ref .............................................. 119, 129–131, 135, 136, 142
COMMAND@ref@later .................................... 131, 137
COMMAND@ref@reg ....................................... 130, 177, 472
COMMAND@ref@reg@parsearg ......................... 131
COMMAND@reinserts ...................................... 296–299, 482
COMMAND@resetannot .................................... 177
COMMAND@secondoftwo .................................. 82
COMMAND@sect ............................................. 395
COMMAND@series ......................................... 284
COMMAND@set ............................................. 124
COMMAND@sidenotesep ................................... 329
COMMAND@stopmsd ......................................... 360
COMMAND@sw .............................................. 131, 152, 156, 157
COMMAND@tag ............................................. 143, 145, 150
COMMAND@tempcnta ..................................... 96
Index

COMMAND \XendbeforepagernumberSerefonlypage ........................................ 68
COMMAND \Xendbeforesymlinenum ............................................................ 49, 53, 483
COMMAND \Xendbefooklineofnumber ......................................................... 53, 483
COMMAND \Xendbefooklinenumber ............................................................. 53, 483
COMMAND \Xendbefooknote ........................................................................ 54
COMMAND \Xendbefoxendlinenumber ........................................................... 51, 481
COMMAND \Xendbefoxlinenum ................................................................. 51, 414, 479
COMMAND \Xendbefoxlinenumalign ............................................................ 51, 414, 481
COMMAND \Xendbefoxstartlinenum .............................................................. 51, 481
COMMAND \Xendbefoxsymlinenum ............................................................... 50, 483
COMMAND \Xendbefootnote ......................................................................... 144
COMMAND \Xendbehangindent .................................................................... 53, 483, 485
COMMAND \Xendbelemplaceoflemmaseparator .......................................... 31, 51, 414
COMMAND \Xendbelemplaceofnumber ......................................................... 49, 482
COMMAND \Xendbelemplaceofpagenumber ............................................... 46, 487
COMMAND \Xendbeleminsertsep ................................................................. 261
COMMAND \Xendblemmadisablefontselection ........................................... 52
COMMAND \Xendblemmafont ..................................................................... 52, 484
COMMAND \Xendblemmseparator ............................................................... 32, 51, 414
COMMAND \Xendbleboxendlinenumber ....................................................... 414
COMMAND \Xendblineflag ......................................................................... 68
COMMAND \Xendblinelemannotationonlyfirst ........................................... 48, 266, 491
COMMAND \Xendblinelemannotationonlyfirstintwo .................................... 48, 266, 491
COMMAND \Xendblinelemannotationposition ............................................. 27, 69
COMMAND \Xendblineprefixmore ............................................................... 46, 68
COMMAND \Xendblineprefixsingle ............................................................. 46, 68
COMMAND \Xendblinerangeseparator ......................................................... 46, 68, 214, 416, 483
COMMAND \Xendblinemorethanwilolinenum ......................................... 31, 47, 68, 414, 480, 481
COMMAND \Xendblineidenticallinenumnotation ....................................... 28, 69, 265, 490
COMMAND \Xendblinenumber ................................................................. 492
COMMAND \Xendblinenumberalignment ................................................. 48, 492
COMMAND \Xendblinenumber ................................................................. 47, 482
COMMAND \Xendbnotboxingsubline ............................................................ 51, 493
COMMAND \Xendbnote .......................................................................... 257, 280–282, 480
COMMAND \Xendbnotefontsize ................................................................ 52, 413
COMMAND \Xendbnotetextsize ................................................................. 52, 413
COMMAND \Xendbnotenumfont ................................................................. 52, 53, 413
COMMAND \Xendbnotes .......................................................................... 260
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirstineline ............................................. 45, 483
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirstintwolinenum .................................... 45, 483
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirst ............................................................. 45, 487
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirstintwolinenum ..................................... 45, 487
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirstintwolinenum ..................................... 45, 487
COMMAND \Xendbnumberonlyfirstintwo .................................................. 46, 487
COMMAND \Xendbparagraph ................................................................. 58, 477
COMMAND \Xendbsep ............................................................................. 58, 491
COMMAND \Xendbstorelinelineinfo ........................................................... 259
COMMAND \Xendbsublinesep ................................................................. 49, 68, 214
COMMAND \Xendbsymlinenum ................................................................. 45, 483, 491
COMMAND \Xendbsymlinenumannotation ............................................... 48, 491
COMMAND \Xendbsympagenum ................................................................. 46, 487
COMMAND \Xendbtwolinenum ................................................................. 31, 47, 68, 414, 480, 481
Index

427

COMMAND\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore ........................................ 47, 69, 480, 481
COMMAND\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage ................................ 47, 69, 480, 481
COMMAND\Xendtxtbeforenotes ........................................... 56, 489
COMMAND\Xendwrapcontent ................................................ 53, 486
COMMAND\Xendwraplemma ................................................. 53, 486
COMMAND\Xendwraplinenumannotation ................................ 28, 69
COMMAND\Xfootfmt ......................................................... 415
COMMAND\Xfootgroup ....................................................... 198
COMMAND\Xfootins ........................................................ 197
COMMAND\Xfootnote ......................................................... 65, 72, 143, 144, 409, 474, 478–480, 484, 486
COMMAND\Xfootstarts ....................................................... 198
COMMAND\Xgroupbyline ................................................... 55, 56, 185, 229, 294, 418, 489–491, 493
COMMAND\Xgroupbylines ................................................... 487
COMMAND\Xgroupbylinesepearsetwolines ................................ 56
COMMAND\Xhangindent ..................................................... 53, 483, 491
COMMAND\Xhsizetwelvelines ............................................. 416, 484, 485
COMMAND\Xhsizethreecol .................................................. 55, 57, 414
COMMAND\Xhsizetwocol .................................................... 55, 57, 287, 414
COMMAND\Xinnote .......................................................... 72, 418, 492
COMMAND\Xinplaceofflemmaseparator ................................ 31, 51, 414
COMMAND\Xinplaceofnumber ............................................. 31, 49, 414, 479, 481
COMMAND\Xinsertparafootsep ............................................. 204, 205
COMMAND\Xledsetnormalparstuff ....................................... 411, 412, 480
COMMAND\Xlemmadioablefontselection ................................ 52
COMMAND\Xlemmabfont ..................................................... 52, 484
COMMAND\Xlemmaseparator ............................................... 51, 214, 289, 292, 295, 414
COMMAND\Xlineflag ........................................................ 68, 416, 417, 486
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst ................................ 48, 225, 491
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo ......................... 48, 225, 491
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationposition ................................ 27, 68, 176
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationposition@side ......................... 176
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationpositionside ................................ 27
COMMAND\Xlinerangeseparator ............................................ 46, 68, 214, 416, 483
COMMAND\Xmaxnotes ....................................................... 57, 80, 81, 413, 414, 477, 479
COMMAND\Xmorethanwolines .......................................... 31, 46, 47, 68, 414, 479
COMMAND\Xnoidenticalcallinenumannotation ........................ 28, 68, 225, 490
COMMAND\Xnoindent ........................................................ 483
COMMAND\Xnolemmaseparator ........................................... 51, 295, 414
COMMAND\Xnolinenum ..................................................... 220, 492
COMMAND\Xnolinenumber ................................................ 48, 220, 492
COMMAND\Xnonbreakableafternumber ................................ 49, 414, 475
COMMAND\Xnonote ........................................................... 45, 492
COMMAND\Xnonumber ....................................................... 47, 414
COMMAND\Xnonumberinfootnote ......................................... 414
COMMAND\Xnopagenumberifcurrent ..................................... 47, 227, 493
COMMAND\Xnotboxingsubline .......................................... 51, 493
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize .................................................. 52, 413
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize@(s) ........................................... 204, 208, 209
COMMAND\Xnotenumfont .................................................. 52, 413
COMMAND\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns ................................ 57, 478
Index

COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstinline . . . 45, 46, 55, 116, 216, 259, 288, 289, 292, 414, 474, 479, 488
COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines ................. 45, 56, 414, 474, 488
COMMAND\Xonlyypstart ................................ 48, 414, 474, 479
COMMAND\Xpagelinesep ................................. 49, 487
COMMAND\Xparafootsep ................................. 55, 116, 413, 414, 418, 486, 488, 489
COMMAND\Xparafootsep@series ......................... 204
COMMAND\Xparindent .................................. 53, 416, 418, 480, 483, 485, 491
COMMAND\Xprenotes .................................. 56, 254, 486
COMMAND\Xprenotes@ ................................ 197, 254, 474
COMMAND\Xprintlines ................................ 115
COMMAND\Xpstart ...................................... 47, 48, 411, 414, 474, 479
COMMAND\Xpstarteverytime ............................ 48, 411, 414, 479
COMMAND\Xpstartonlyfirst ............................. 48, 492
COMMAND\Xpstartseparator ............................ 48, 492
COMMAND\Xragged ..................................... 55
COMMAND\Xrigidbalance ............................... 206, 416, 484
COMMAND\Xsethangindent .............................. 213
COMMAND\Xstanza ...................................... 48, 62
COMMAND\Xstanzaonlyfirst ............................ 48, 492, 493
COMMAND\Xstanzaseparator ............................ 48
COMMAND\Xstorelineinfo ............................... 216
COMMAND\Xsublinesep ................................ 23, 49, 68, 214, 416
COMMAND\Xsublinesepside ............................. 23, 49
COMMAND\Xsymlinenum ................................ 45, 55, 413, 414, 481, 488
COMMAND\Xsymlinenunnumnotation .................... 48, 491
COMMAND\Xtextbeforenotes ......................... 188
COMMAND\Xtoendnotes ................................ 32, 281
COMMAND\Xtwolines .................................. 31, 46, 47, 68, 224, 226, 287, 414, 479
COMMAND\Xtwolinesappref ............................. 287
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmore ......................... 47, 68, 414, 480
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref ............... 288
COMMAND\Xtwolinessonlyinsamepage .................. 47, 68, 414, 480
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenotes ............................. 56, 414, 486, 487, 489
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce ................. 56, 489
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenumber ......................... 46
COMMAND\Xunvxxh .................................. 201, 415
COMMAND\Xwidth ................................... 57, 416, 485
COMMAND\Xwrapcontent ................................ 53, 486
COMMAND\Xwraplemma ................................ 52–54, 486
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumnotation ..................... 27, 28, 68, 176
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumnotation@ref ................ 176
COMMAND\Xwraplinenunnumnotation@side .......... 176
COMMAND\Xwraplinenunnumnotationref ............ 28
COMMAND\Xwraplinenunnumnotationside .......... 28
COMMAND\& ........................................ 413
COMMAND\absline@num ................................ 112, 172
COMMAND\accent ...................................... 142
COMMAND\actionlines@list ........................... 113, 173
COMMAND\actions@list ............................... 113
COMMAND\add@Xgroupbyline .......................... 185
Index

429

COMMAND\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs ........................................ 294
COMMAND\add@inserts .......................................................... 113, 184, 185
COMMAND\add@inserts@next .................................................. 184, 185
COMMAND\add@msd@ ............................................................ 359
COMMAND\add@msdata .......................................................... 359, 360
COMMAND\add@msdata@firstlineofpage .................................. 363
COMMAND\add@msdata .......................................................... 359
COMMAND\add@penalties ....................................................... 172, 186
COMMAND\add@content@line .................................................. 390
COMMAND\add@footnotes ...................................................... 409, 412
COMMAND\add@footnotesX ....................................................... 409, 412
COMMAND\add@toendnotes ..................................................... 281
COMMAND\advancelabel@refs ................................................... 306
COMMAND\advanceline .......................................................... 24, 115, 123, 138, 482
COMMAND\affixline@num ......................................................... 178, 181, 183, 329, 472
COMMAND\affix@start@num ..................................................... 183
COMMAND\after@ruleX ............................................................ 413
COMMAND\after@Xsymlinenum ................................................... 413
COMMAND\after@antilabe ........................................................ 63
COMMAND\after@group ........................................................... 141, 147
COMMAND\after@lemmasep@arator .......................................... 413
COMMAND\after@note ............................................................. 413
COMMAND\after@noteX ........................................................... 55, 412, 413
COMMAND\after@number@info@footnote .................................... 413
COMMAND\after@rule@X ........................................................... 57, 477, 480
COMMAND\annot@end@print .................................................... 225, 266
COMMAND\annot@list ............................................................. 115, 178
COMMAND\annotation@ref ...................................................... 27, 28, 64
COMMAND\antilabe ................................................................. 16, 63, 492
COMMAND\app@label .............................................................. 67, 147, 308–310, 480, 486, 493
COMMAND\app@ref ................................................................. 65, 67–69, 314, 318, 484, 485, 491
COMMAND\app@prefix@more ...................................................... 67, 413
COMMAND\app@prefix@single .................................................... 67, 413
COMMAND\app@with@page .......................................................... 67–69, 314, 318, 481, 484, 492
COMMAND\arrangement@X ......................................................... 44, 81, 235, 286, 413
COMMAND\arrangement@X@normal .......................................... 241
COMMAND\article ................................................................. 16
COMMAND\at@every@pend ......................................................... 163
COMMAND\autopar ............................................................... 19, 160, 164, 165, 251, 473, 475, 476, 480, 490
COMMAND\ballast ................................................................. 81
COMMAND\ballast@count ......................................................... 172, 186
COMMAND\baselineskip .......................................................... 44, 200, 204
COMMAND\before@Xnotes .......................................................... 413
COMMAND\before@Xsymlinenum .................................................. 414
COMMAND\before@antilabe ........................................................ 63
COMMAND\before@ed@chapter ................................................... 11, 78, 391
COMMAND\before@inserting@X .................................................. 54
COMMAND\before@lemmasep@arator .......................................... 413
COMMAND\before@notes@X .......................................................... 56, 415, 476, 477, 480
COMMAND\before@number@info@footnote ................................... 413
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command names</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>\begin</code></td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\beginnumbering</code></td>
<td>18–21, 97–99, 102, 103, 112, 116, 133, 164, 257, 358, 474, 477, 481, 482, 487, 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bf</code></td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bfseries</code></td>
<td>52, 474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bhooknoteX</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bhookgroupX</code></td>
<td>56, 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bhooknoteX</code></td>
<td>54, 415, 482, 483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\body</code></td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\bodyfootmarkA</code></td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\book</code></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendlinenumalign</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxendlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxscorefootnote</code></td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxlinenumalign</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxlinenumnumalign</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxstartlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendlinenumalign</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\boxXendlinenum</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\break</code></td>
<td>44, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\brokpenalty</code></td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\c@page</code></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\c@page@page</code></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\centering</code></td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\check@l@ck</code></td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\check@lsub@l@ck</code></td>
<td>181, 472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\chapter</code></td>
<td>77, 393, 397, 477, 480, 482, 486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\chaptermark</code></td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\check@pb@in@verse</code></td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\colalignX</code></td>
<td>54, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\collect@body</code></td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\color</code></td>
<td>486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\colorbox</code></td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\columns</code></td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\columnwidth</code></td>
<td>200, 478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\command</code></td>
<td>287, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\command@sync@linenumber@single@text</code></td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\copyright</code></td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\correct@Xfootins@box</code></td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\correct@footinsX@box</code></td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\count</code></td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\critex</code></td>
<td>473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\critextext</code></td>
<td>151, 408, 409, 412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\csname</code></td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\csquotes</code></td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\etab</code></td>
<td>384, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\etabtext</code></td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\current@annot</code></td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

377
83, 101
207
57
201
186
296, 472, 482, 487
172, 174, 472
472
172, 173
172, 186
296
475
113, 141, 162, 166, 169, 184, 186, 348, 472, 473, 475, 477
472
114
114
471
31, 261, 415, 481, 488
31, 261, 282, 481, 488
488
28, 477
29, 170, 490
28, 477
482
482
471
482
482
142
76, 383–385
311
76, 382
76, 77, 382
76, 383, 384
382
150
74, 336, 493
485
488
73
64–
66, 310
66, 310
67
64, 304, 414, 479, 481, 484, 488
66, 320, 321
64, 304, 310, 320
Index

COMMAND\firstsublinenum ................................. 22, 473
COMMAND\flag@end ...................................... 135, 136, 149, 477
COMMAND\flag@end@RTL ................................. 136
COMMAND\flag@end@later ................................. 137
COMMAND\flag@start ..................................... 135, 136, 149, 477, 478
COMMAND\flag@start@RTL ................................. 136
COMMAND\flag@start@later ............................... 137
COMMAND\flagstanza ...................................... 63
COMMAND\floatingpenalty ................................ 192, 479
COMMAND\flush@notes .................................. 187
COMMAND\fnpos ........................................... 43, 253, 476, 487
COMMAND\footfmt ....................................... 192, 194
COMMAND\footfmt... ..................................... 235
COMMAND\footfootmarkA .................................. 41
COMMAND\footfudgefactor ................................. 202
COMMAND\footfudgefiddle ................................ 81, 199, 200, 471
COMMAND\footgroup ...................................... 192
COMMAND\footins ........................................ 197
COMMAND\footnormal .................................... 286, 413, 471
COMMAND\footnormalX .................................. 413
COMMAND\footnote ....................................... 41, 80, 231–233, 410, 472
COMMAND\footnote@lang ................................ 214
COMMAND\footnoteA ...................................... 17, 41
COMMAND\footnoteB ...................................... 17
COMMAND\footnoteC ...................................... 29
COMMAND\footnoteD ......................................
COMMAND\footnoteE ...................................... 41
COMMAND\footnotetext ................................... 9, 42, 278, 279, 487
COMMAND\footnotetextX@reading ......................... 279
COMMAND\footnotetextXmark ............................ 280, 488, 491
COMMAND\footnotetextXmk ................................ 295
COMMAND\footnotetextXtext .............................. 280, 488, 491
COMMAND\footnoteX ...................................... 143
COMMAND\footnotemarkX .................................. 42
COMMAND\footnotemarkX@mk ............................. 42
COMMAND\footnotemarkX@nomk .......................... 42
COMMAND\footnotemarkX@text ........................... 42
COMMAND\footnotetextlang@lua .......................... 191
COMMAND\footnotetextlang@poly ........................ 191
COMMAND\footnotemark .................................. 42, 280
COMMAND\footnotetextoption@ .......................... 190, 483
COMMAND\footnoterule .................................. 207
COMMAND\footnotesize .................................. 52
COMMAND\footnotetext .................................. 42, 280
COMMAND\footparagraph ................................ 200, 286, 413, 477
COMMAND\footparagraphX ................................. 246, 413, 477
COMMAND\footnoteskips .................................. 472, 479
COMMAND\footstart ...................................... 192, 197, 207
COMMAND\footstrut ...................................... 192, 203
COMMAND\foothreecol .................................... 413
COMMAND\foothreecolX ................................... 413, 480
436

Index

COMMAND\indtl@wrindexentry ............................................. 88
COMMAND\initnumbering@quote ........................................ 389, 482
COMMAND\initnumbering@reg ........................................... 472
COMMAND\initnumbering@sectcmd ....................................... 482
COMMAND\innoteX ....................................................... 72, 418, 492
COMMAND\ inplaceoflemmaseparator .................................. 414
COMMAND\ inplaceofnumber ............................................. 414
COMMAND\ insert ......................................................... 149, 184, 192, 194, 195, 209, 229, 235
COMMAND\ insert@Xtxtbeforenotes .................................... 188, 209
COMMAND\ insert@count ................................................ 129, 135, 145
COMMAND\ insert@countR ............................................... 145
COMMAND\ insert@msdata ............................................... 359, 365
COMMAND\ insert@txtbeforenotes ..................................... 188
COMMAND\ insertthangingsymbol ..................................... 475
COMMAND\ insertlines@list ............................................. 113, 129, 130
COMMAND\ insertparafootsepX ........................................ 249
COMMAND\ inserts@list .................................................. 141, 160, 184, 201
COMMAND\ interAfootnotelinepenalty ................................ 473
COMMAND\ interfootnotelinepenalty .................................. 473
COMMAND\ interlinepenalty ............................................. 192
COMMAND\ interparanoteglue .......................................... 412
COMMAND\ justifying ................................................... 54
COMMAND\ keep@this@crosref@forinserting ............................ 230
COMMAND\ l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes .......... 482
COMMAND\ l@d@@wrindexhyp ........................................... 478
COMMAND\ l@d@add ....................................................... 151
COMMAND\ l@d@end ...................................................... 257, 280
COMMAND\ l@d@nums ...................................................... 145, 149, 151, 220, 221
COMMAND\ l@d@section .................................................. 257
COMMAND\ l@d@set ....................................................... 124, 139
COMMAND\ l@d@dampcount ............................................... 374
COMMAND\ l@d@dbnote .................................................... 233, 472
COMMAND\ l@d@checkstartend ......................................... 383
COMMAND\ l@d@dchset@num .............................................. 124
COMMAND\ l@d@dcolcount ............................................... 374, 375
COMMAND\ l@d@collect@@body ......................................... 367
COMMAND\ l@d@collect@body ........................................... 367
COMMAND\ l@d@dcsnote .................................................. 477
COMMAND\ l@d@dcsnotetext ............................................. 170, 326
COMMAND\ l@d@dcsnotetext@l .......................................... 170, 326
COMMAND\ l@d@dcsnotetext@r .......................................... 170, 326
COMMAND\ l@d@dodoreintrafeet ....................................... 297, 471
COMMAND\ l@d@dodotext ................................................ 296, 297, 471
COMMAND\ l@d@emptyd@ta .............................................. 472
COMMAND\ l@d@dend@close ............................................. 256
COMMAND\ l@d@dend@open ............................................... 256
COMMAND\ l@d@dend@stuff ............................................... 257
COMMAND\ l@d@denvbody ............................................... 367
COMMAND\ l@d@dfeetbeginmini ........................................ 471
COMMAND\ l@d@dfeetendmini ............................................ 471
Index

COMMAND\led@pbnun ........................................... 403
COMMAND\led@reinit@index@fornote ........................ 344
COMMAND\led@set@index@fornote .......................... 343
COMMAND\ledRflag ......................................... 341
COMMAND\ledchapter ...................................... 412, 474
COMMAND\ledfootinsdim .................................... 413
COMMAND\ledinnernote .................................... 70, 323, 477, 486
COMMAND\ledinnote ....................................... 338, 411, 418, 481
COMMAND\ledinnotemark .................................. 411, 418, 480, 492
COMMAND\ledleftnote ...................................... 70, 323
COMMAND\ledlinenum ..................................... 110, 473
COMMAND\ledleftfill ...................................... 171
COMMAND\ledlnotefontsetup .............................. 486
COMMAND\ledlnotesep ...................................... 70
COMMAND\ledlnotewidith .................................. 70
COMMAND\lednopb ......................................... 79, 403
COMMAND\lednopbinverse .................................. 404
COMMAND\lednopbinversetruem ................................ 61, 79
COMMAND\lednopbnun ...................................... 403
COMMAND\ledouternote .................................... 70, 323, 477, 486
COMMAND\ledpb ........................................... 79, 403, 412
COMMAND\ledpbnun ........................................ 403
COMMAND\ledpbsetting ..................................... 79, 403, 483
COMMAND\ledrightnote .................................... 70, 323
COMMAND\ledrsnotefontsetup .............................. 486
COMMAND\ledrsnotesep ..................................... 70
COMMAND\ledrsnotewidith .................................. 70
COMMAND\ledsection ....................................... 412
COMMAND\ledsectnomark .................................... 390
COMMAND\ledsectnotoc ..................................... 390
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff ............................ 411, 412, 480
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff@common .................. 251
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff@X .......................... 411, 412, 480
COMMAND\ledsidenuote .................................... 70, 323, 326
COMMAND\ledsidenuote@ ................................... 323
COMMAND\ledsubsection .................................... 412
COMMAND\ledsubsubsection ................................ 412
COMMAND\ledxxx ........................................... 477
COMMAND\left .............................................. 76
COMMAND\leftctab .......................................... 384
COMMAND\leftheadline ..................................... 110
COMMAND\leftlinenum .................................... 23, 110, 471, 473
COMMAND\leftlinenumannotation .......................... 111
COMMAND\leftli ........................................... 383
COMMAND\leftnoteupfalse .................................. 70
COMMAND\leftpsdtunum .................................... 183
COMMAND\leftrt ........................................... 384
COMMAND\lefttsidenote .................................... 326
COMMAND\leftskip ......................................... 197, 200, 202
COMMAND\lemma 3, 30, 33, 35, 36, 38, 140, 145–147, 150, 151, 153, 408, 473, 474, 481, 482, 484, 493
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>\maxhXnotes</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\maxhnotesX</code></td>
<td>57, 81, 413, 476, 477, 479, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\maxlinesinpar@list</code></td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\measurebody</code></td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\measuretbody</code></td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\memorybreak</code></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\metaXXXvfootnote</code></td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\microntype</code></td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\morenoexpands</code></td>
<td>81, 82, 141, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\morethanwolines</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\mpfnpos</code></td>
<td>43, 253, 476, 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\mpnormalfootgroup</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\mpnormalvfootnote</code></td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\msdata</code></td>
<td>39, 40, 357–359, 488, 490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\msdataposition</code></td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\multifootsep</code></td>
<td>41, 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\multiplefootnotemarker</code></td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\musicxtext</code></td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\num@num</code></td>
<td>473, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\num@num@ref</code></td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\new@line</code></td>
<td>134, 472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\new@series</code></td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newcommand</code></td>
<td>34, 83, 101, 231, 307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newcommandx</code></td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhookcommand@specific</code></td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhookcommand@series</code></td>
<td>287, 288, 480, 492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhookcommand@series@reload</code></td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhookcommand@toggle@reload</code></td>
<td>288, 478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhooktoggle@series</code></td>
<td>288, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newhooktoggle@specific</code></td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newif</code></td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newline</code></td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newlinechar</code></td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newseries</code></td>
<td>42, 409, 412, 413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newseries@</code></td>
<td>270, 271, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\newverse</code></td>
<td>62, 63, 412, 477, 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\next</code></td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\next@action</code></td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\next@actionline</code></td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\next@insert</code></td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\next@line@list@stuff</code></td>
<td>133, 489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\nl@regR</code></td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\no@expands</code></td>
<td>81, 143, 150, 279, 347, 471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\noXlemmaseparator</code></td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\nobreak</code></td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\nocritical</code></td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\noledsec</code></td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\noendnotes</code></td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\noexpand</code></td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\nofamiliar</code></td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

\texttt{COMMAND:\pageparbreak} ........................................ 412
\texttt{COMMAND:\pagebreak} ........................................... 32, 44, 164, 165, 215
\texttt{COMMAND:\par} .................................................. 53, 416, 483, 485, 491
\texttt{COMMAND:\parskip} .............................................. 20, 61, 62, 165
\texttt{COMMAND:\parse@annot} ...................................... 247
\texttt{COMMAND:\parshape} .......................................... 247
\texttt{COMMAND:\parshapeX} ........................................ 486
\texttt{COMMAND:\parfillskip} ........................................ 201, 204
\texttt{COMMAND:\parindent} ......................................... 203
\texttt{COMMAND:\parindentX} ........................................ 53, 416, 483, 485, 491
\texttt{COMMAND:\parindent} ........................................... 202, 203, 486
\texttt{COMMAND:\parindentX} ........................................ 202, 203, 486
\texttt{COMMAND:\parskip} ............................................. 203
\texttt{COMMAND:\pause@numbering} ................................ 102
\texttt{COMMAND:\pausenumbering} .................................. 21, 102, 117, 118, 165, 476, 478, 485
\texttt{COMMAND:\pausenumbering@page@num} ...................... 102
\texttt{COMMAND:\penalty} ............................................ 203
\texttt{COMMAND:\pend} ................................................ 2, 7, 18–21, 23, 24, 78, 138, 141, 144, 152, 159, 160, 162–166, 183, 184, 356, 410, 476, 477, 486–489
\texttt{COMMAND:\pret@notes} ......................................... 480, 486
\texttt{COMMAND:\prenotes} ............................................ 56, 255, 480
\texttt{COMMAND:\prepare@Xgroupbyline} ......................... 229, 230
\texttt{COMMAND:\prepare@Xprenotes} ................................ 254
\texttt{COMMAND:\prev@nopb} ......................................... 403
\texttt{COMMAND:\prev@pb} .......................................... 403
\texttt{COMMAND:\prevline} .......................................... 116
\texttt{COMMAND:\prevlineX} .......................................... 116
\texttt{COMMAND:\prevpage@num} .................................... 116
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@Xfootnoterule} .......................... 480
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@Xnotes} ...................................... 297, 298
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@Xnotes@forpages} ......................... 479
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@eledsection} ................................ 168
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@footnote@rule} .............................. 480
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@leftmargin@eledsection} ................. 392
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@lemma} ....................................... 215
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@line} ......................................... 166
\texttt{COMMAND:\print@notesX@forpages} ............................ 479
Index

443

COMMAND\print@rightmargin@eledsection .......................... 392
COMMAND\printendlines ........................................... 262, 270, 318, 416, 471, 473
COMMAND\printlinefootnote ........................................ 216, 217, 479
COMMAND\printlinefootnotearia .................................... 218, 222, 479
COMMAND\printlinefootnotenumbers ................................ 216
COMMAND\printlines ............................................... 196, 214, 220, 221, 262, 318, 416, 471, 473, 479, 484
COMMAND\printnpnum ............................................... 411, 416
COMMAND\printnpstart ............................................. 215
COMMAND\protect .................................................... 142, 410
COMMAND\providecommand .......................................... 231, 471
COMMAND\pstarL ...................................................... 159
COMMAND\pstartinfotnote ........................................... 414
COMMAND\pstartinfotnoteeverytime ................................. 414
COMMAND\pstartnum .................................................. 183
COMMAND\pstartref ................................................... 64, 304, 312, 476, 488
COMMAND\pstarts .................................................... 473, 474
COMMAND\pstarts@readL ........................................... 159
COMMAND\pstarts@typeset@L ....................................... 159
COMMAND\raggedX .................................................... 55
COMMAND\raggedright ............................................... 54
COMMAND\raggedleft ................................................ 54
COMMAND\raw@text .................................................. 159, 160
COMMAND\rbracket .................................................. 51
COMMAND\read@linelist ............................................. 116, 118
COMMAND\ref ........................................................ 66, 69, 73
COMMAND\reformatted .............................................. 318
COMMAND\reformattedwithpage ..................................... 318
COMMAND\relax ....................................................... 20, 124, 149, 172, 184, 353, 372, 410
COMMAND\renewcommand ........................................... 81, 413, 416
COMMAND\reset@current@annot .................................... 177
COMMAND\reset@msd@options@iffullpage .............................. 366
COMMAND\resetlinenumannotation .................................. 26, 177
COMMAND\resetprevline@ .......................................... 116
COMMAND\resetprevpage@ .......................................... 116
COMMAND\resumenumbering ......................................... 21, 97, 98, 102, 103, 117, 118, 165, 473, 477, 478, 483
COMMAND\right ....................................................... 76
COMMAND\rightctab .................................................. 384
COMMAND\rightlinenum ............................................. 23, 110, 471, 473
COMMAND\rightlinenumannotation ................................. 111
COMMAND\rightltab .................................................. 384
COMMAND\rightnoteupfalse ......................................... 70
COMMAND\rightrtab .................................................. 385
COMMAND\right sidenote ............................................ 326
COMMAND\rightskip ................................................ 197, 200, 202, 203
COMMAND\rightstartswith .......................................... 183
COMMAND\rigidbalance ............................................. 206, 207, 209, 416, 484
COMMAND\rigidbalanceX ............................................ 206, 416, 484
COMMAND\robustify .................................................. 45, 48
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>\roman</code></td>
<td>377, 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\rtab</code></td>
<td>384, 385, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\rtabtext</code></td>
<td>386, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sameparallelpagenumber</code></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sameword</code></td>
<td>17, 34–36, 38, 132, 152–155, 157, 418, 479, 481, 483, 486, 489, 491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sameword@inedtext</code></td>
<td>153, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sameword</code></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\scriptsize</code></td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\section</code></td>
<td>77, 473, 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\section@num</code></td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sectionmark</code></td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\select@lemmamfont</code></td>
<td>58, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\series</code></td>
<td>270, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\series@</code></td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\seriesatbegin</code></td>
<td>42, 284, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\seriesatend</code></td>
<td>42, 284, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@Xtxtbeforenotes</code></td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@continuousnumberingforl</code></td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@line</code></td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@line@action</code></td>
<td>114, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@txtbeforenotesX</code></td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setSErefonlypagexprefixmore</code></td>
<td>67, 318, 485, 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setSErefonlypagexprefixsingle</code></td>
<td>67, 68, 318, 485, 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setSErefprefixmore</code></td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setSErefprefixsingle</code></td>
<td>67, 413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setapprefprefixmore</code></td>
<td>67, 69, 413, 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setapprefprefixsingle</code></td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setcontinuosnumberingforl</code></td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sethangingsymbol</code></td>
<td>61, 347, 413, 483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\sethangingsymbol</code></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setistwofollowinglines</code></td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\set@dlprbox</code></td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setline</code></td>
<td>24, 115, 119, 124, 138, 142, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setlinenum</code></td>
<td>24, 119, 124, 139, 163, 471, 489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setlinenumannotationsep</code></td>
<td>28, 417, 490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setmsdlabel</code></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setmsdataposition</code></td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setmsdataseries</code></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setprintdirectories</code></td>
<td>262, 266, 473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setprintlines</code></td>
<td>221, 226, 262, 473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setsidenotesep</code></td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setsidenotesep</code></td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setstanzaindent</code></td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setstanzaindents</code></td>
<td>60, 349, 410, 492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setstanzapenalties</code></td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\setstanzavalues</code></td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\settoggle@series</code></td>
<td>285, 474, 478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\showlemma</code></td>
<td>142, 471, 472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\showwordrank</code></td>
<td>38, 154</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

COMMAND\sidemacro ........................................... 38
COMMAND\sidepstartnumtrue ................................ 20
COMMAND\skip .................................................. 197
COMMAND\skipnumbering ....................................... 25, 127, 128, 140, 473, 480, 481
COMMAND\skipnumbering@reg .................................. 480
COMMAND\small ................................................. 52
COMMAND\smallmacro .......................................... 38
COMMAND\special .............................................. 14
COMMAND\splitmaxdepth ....................................... 206
COMMAND\splitoff .............................................. 192, 208, 209
COMMAND\split topskip ......................................... 206
COMMAND\stanza ............................................... 24, 25, 61–63, 98, 353, 413, 415, 483, 488
COMMAND\stanza@hang ......................................... 352
COMMAND\stanza@line ......................................... 352
COMMAND\stanzaindent ......................................... 60, 350, 479
COMMAND\stanzaindent* ........................................ 60
COMMAND\stanzaindentbase .................................... 349
COMMAND\stanza numwrapper .................................. 62
COMMAND\startlock ............................................. 22, 24, 114, 139, 353
COMMAND\startstanzahook ..................................... 413
COMMAND\startsub ............................................. 23, 114, 137
COMMAND\stopmsdata .......................................... 40, 357, 358
COMMAND\store@annot@to@absline .............................................. 177
COMMAND\strip@pt ............................................. 200
COMMAND\strutbox ............................................. 208
COMMAND\sub@on ............................................... 114, 125
COMMAND\sub@off ............................................. 113
COMMAND\sub@lock ............................................. 122, 307
COMMAND\sub@on ............................................. 122, 307
COMMAND\subline@num .......................................... 112, 114
COMMAND\sublinenum@rep ..................................... 471
COMMAND\sublinenum@style .................................... 24, 109, 471
COMMAND\sublinenumincrement ................................ 22
COMMAND\sublinenummax ...................................... 109, 471, 473
COMMAND\sublinenumref ...................................... 109, 473
COMMAND\sublinenumrep ...................................... 109, 473
COMMAND\sublinenum@p ........................................ 64, 304, 311
COMMAND\subsectionmark ...................................... 390
COMMAND\sw@inthisedtext .................................... 145
COMMAND\sw@list@inedtext .................................... 150, 158
COMMAND\sw@txt .................................................. 154
COMMAND\swnoexpand ........................................... 38, 489
COMMAND\symlinenum .......................................... 414
COMMAND\symlinenum .......................................... 413
COMMAND\sza@penalty .......................................... 352
COMMAND\tag .................................................... 479
COMMAND\text ................................................... 408
COMMAND\text{(language)} ......................................... 53

\text{(…)}
446

Index

\textcolor .......................................................... 82
\textwidth ............................................................ 81
\textsuperscript ................................................... 27, 96, 176
\textwidth ............................................................ 134, 471
\textwidth ............................................................ 134, 471
\textwidth ............................................................ 41
\textwidth ............................................................ 475
\textwidth ............................................................ 342
\textwidth ............................................................ 119, 134, 302
\textwidth ............................................................ 20, 417
\textwidth ............................................................ 474
\textwidth ............................................................ 474
\textwidth ............................................................ 209
\textwidth ............................................................ 208, 209, 486
\textwidth ............................................................ 244
\textwidth ............................................................ 207
\textwidth ............................................................ 244
\textwidth ............................................................ 207
\textwidth ............................................................ 207
\textwidth ............................................................ 244
\textwidth ............................................................ 208
\textwidth ............................................................ 244
\textwidth ............................................................ 32, 260, 486
\textwidth ............................................................ 486
\textwidth ............................................................ 242
\textwidth ............................................................ 242
\textwidth ............................................................ 242
\textwidth ............................................................ 242
\textwidth ............................................................ 285, 414
\textwidth ............................................................ 285
\textwidth ............................................................ 285
\textwidth ............................................................ 285
\textwidth ............................................................ 241
\textwidth ............................................................ 241
\textwidth ............................................................ 241
\textwidth ............................................................ 241
\textwidth ............................................................ 241
\textwidth ............................................................ 56, 188, 489
\textwidth ............................................................ 56, 489
\textwidth ............................................................ 20
\textwidth ............................................................ 42
\textwidth ............................................................ 166, 201
\textwidth ............................................................ 202–204
\textwidth ............................................................ 203
\textwidth ............................................................ 203, 415
\textwidth ............................................................ 203, 415
\textwidth ............................................................ 383
\textwidth ............................................................ 409, 412
Index

COMMAND\usingedtext ........................................... 409, 412
COMMAND\v\Afootnote ........................................... 192
COMMAND\v\adjjust ............................................. 136
COMMAND\v\variant ............................................... 33
COMMAND\v\bbox .................................................. 162, 164, 201, 206, 253
COMMAND\v\footnote .............................................. 192, 197, 201, 208
COMMAND\v\l@dbfnote .............................................. 233, 472
COMMAND\v\l@disnote .............................................. 326
COMMAND\v\l@dlsnote .............................................. 326
COMMAND\v\l@donsnote ............................................ 326
COMMAND\v\l@drsnote .............................................. 326
COMMAND\v\numfootnoteX ......................................... 473
COMMAND\v\size ................................................. 57, 81
COMMAND\v\split ................................................ 186
COMMAND\waklam .................................................. 383
COMMAND\waklamec .............................................. 383
COMMAND\wapunktel .............................................. 383
COMMAND\wastricht ............................................... 383
COMMAND\widthX .................................................. 57, 416, 485
COMMAND\wrap@edcrossref ....................................... 310, 478
COMMAND\wrapcontentX ........................................... 53, 486
COMMAND\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX ................................ 250
COMMAND\wrapped@footfootmarkX ................................ 250
COMMAND\x ........................................................ 65
COMMAND\xabslineref ........................................... 311
COMMAND\xannnotationref ....................................... 65
COMMAND\xdef ................................................... 104, 353
COMMAND\xflagref ................................................ 65, 312, 416, 484
COMMAND\xleft@appenditem ...................................... 104, 141
COMMAND\xlineref ............................................... 65, 416, 484
COMMAND\xpagereref ............................................. 65
COMMAND\xpars ................................................... 39
COMMAND\xpstartref .............................................. 65, 476, 489
COMMAND\xr ...................................................... 69
COMMAND\xright@appenditem ..................................... 104
COMMAND\xsublineref ............................................ 65
COMMAND\xxref ................................................... 66, 313, 321, 476, 479, 486
COMMAND\xxxmatter ............................................. 302
ENVIRONMENT\astanza ........................................... 98, 484
ENVIRONMENT\edarrayc .......................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\edarrayl .......................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\edarrayr .......................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\edtabular ......................................... 491
ENVIRONMENT\edtabularc ....................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\edtabularl ....................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\edtabularrr ...................................... 389
ENVIRONMENT\ledgroup ......................................... 87, 333, 416, 484
ENVIRONMENT\ledgroupsize ..................................... 334
PACKAGE\edmac .................................................. 42
PACKAGEEDMAC .................................................. 1, 6, 11, 13–15, 83, 220, 231, 304, 349, 408, 420, 471
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Lines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eledmac</td>
<td>114, 339, 411, 412, 479, 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eledpar</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etoolbox</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reledmac</td>
<td>63, 415, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsmath</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babel</td>
<td>53, 82, 377, 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblatex</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidi</td>
<td>53, 54, 88, 483, 491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calc</td>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eccaption</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecolor</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esquotes</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eedstanzan</td>
<td>1, 14, 15, 347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweledmac</td>
<td>1, 2, 11, 15, 17, 21, 231, 335, 339, 370, 393, 405, 409, 411–413, 475, 477, 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweledpar</td>
<td>192, 420, 473, 477–479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etex</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ettoolbox</td>
<td>103, 152, 271, 285, 296, 326, 391, 403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fancyhdr</td>
<td>299, 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floatrow</td>
<td>80, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footmisc</td>
<td>41, 82, 88, 231, 420, 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossoaries</td>
<td>73, 74, 344, 484, 493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossoaries-extra</td>
<td>73, 493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handout</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperlink</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isfuatex</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixetex</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imakeidx</td>
<td>71, 80, 87, 88, 335, 339, 412, 475–477, 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indextools</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indextool</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indextools</td>
<td>71, 80, 87, 88, 97, 335, 339, 343, 412, 479, 484, 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledarab</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledmac</td>
<td>1, 11, 14, 15, 82, 103, 339, 408, 409, 412, 415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledpar</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mememoir</td>
<td>87, 339, 412, 420, 477, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morewrites</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mustctex</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagepagemargin</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyglossia</td>
<td>51, 82, 191, 214, 484, 491, 493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ragged2e</td>
<td>54, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eledpar</td>
<td>1, 4, 6, 9, 17, 20, 22, 42, 57, 65, 68, 79, 80, 82, 84, 97, 105, 117, 122, 133, 134, 145, 149, 159, 194, 197, 252, 253, 271, 278, 295, 297, 298, 301, 335, 347, 391, 483, 484, 486, 487, 489, 490, 493</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index 449

PACKAGESUFFIX ................................................. 86
PACKAGETABMAC .................................................. 1, 14, 15, 420
PACKAGETHALIE .................................................. 63
PACKAGETILEM .................................................... 42
PACKAGETUNIXNORMALIZE ........................................ 35
PACKAGEXARGS .................................................... 34, 86
PACKAGEXKEYVAL ................................................ 84, 295
PACKAGEXPARSE .................................................. 86, 490
PACKAGEXXR ...................................................... 5, 69, 321, 485
PACKAGEXREF ..................................................... 321
PACKAGEXSTRING ................................................ 86, 341

A
\absline@num .................................................... 1
Abu Kamil Shuja’ b. Aslam ........................................ 14
\actions@list ....................................................... 1
\actions@list ....................................................... 1
\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs .................................. 1
\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs ................................ 1
\add@inserts ....................................................... 1
\add@inserts@next ................................................. 1
\add@msd@ ......................................................... 1
\add@msdata ....................................................... 1
\add@msdata@firstlineofpage ................................... 1
\add@penalties ................................................... 1
\add@tol@deovbody ................................................. 1
Adelard II .......................................................... 14
\advancelabel@refs ............................................... 1
\advanceline ...................................................... 24
\Aendnote .......................................................... 31
\affixline@num ................................................... 1
\affixxpstart@num ................................................. 1
\affixside@note ................................................... 1
\Afootnote .......................................................... 30
\afterantilabe ...................................................... 63
\afternoteX ......................................................... 55
\afterruleX ........................................................ 56
\ampersand ........................................................ 63
\annot@list ........................................................ 1
\annotationref .................................................. 64
\antilabe .......................................................... 62
\append@notesX .................................................... 1
\append@notes ..................................................... 1
\applabel ........................................................... 67
\appref ............................................................. 67
\appref@withpage ................................................ 67
\arrangementX ..................................................... 44
\arrangementX@normal ............................................ 1
\arrangementX@paragraph ........................................ 1
### Index

| \arrangementX@threecol | 1 |
| \arrangementX@twocol | 1 |
| \atEveryPend | 1 |
| \AtEndEveryPend | 1, 20 |
| \AtEveryPend | 1, 20 |
| \AtEveryPstart | 1, 20 |
| \AtEveryStanza | 1, 61 |
| \AtEveryStopStanza | 1, 62 |
| \AtStartEveryPstart | 1, 20 |
| \atEveryStanza | 1, 61 |
| \autopar | 1, 19 |

#### B

| \ballast | 81 |
| \ballast@count | 1 |
| Beeton, Barbara Ann Neuhaus Friend | 19 |
| \beforeantilabe | 63 |
| \beforeeledchapter | 1 |
| \BeforeEveryStopStanza | 1, 62 |
| \beforeinsertingX | 54 |
| \beforeinserttion@X | 1 |
| \beforenotesX | 56 |
| \beginnumbering | 1, 18 |
| \Endnote | 31 |
| \bfootnote | 30 |
| \bhookgroupX | 56 |
| \bhooknoteX | 54 |
| \bodyfootmarkA | 41 |
| \boxfootnotenumbers | 1 |
| Bredon, Simon | 14 |
| Breger, Herbert | 14, 370 |
| Brey, Gerhard | 14 |
| Busard, Hubert L. L. | 14 |
| \bypage@false | 1 |
| \bypage@true | 1 |
| \bypstart@false | 1 |
| \bypstart@true | 1 |

#### C

| \c@addcolcount | 1 |
| \c@ballast | 1 |
| \c@firstlinenum | 1 |
| \c@firstsublinenum | 1 |
| \c@labidx | 1 |
| \c@linenumincrement | 1 |
| \c@sublinenumincrement | 1 |
| \c@sublinumincrement | 1 |
| \c@Endnote | 31 |
| \c@Footnote | 30 |
| \ch@ck@l@ck | 1 |
| \ch@csub@l@ck | 1 |
Index

\chapter .......................................................... 1
\checkopb@in@verse ........................................... 1
Chester, Robert of ........................................... 14
Claassens, Geert H. M. ..................................... 14
\colalignX ..................................................... 54
\continuoussnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext 1
Copernicus, Nicolaus ....................................... 14
\critext ...................................................... 408
\ctab ......................................................... 1
\ctabtext .................................................... 1
\current@annot ............................................. 1

D
Dekker, Dirk-Jan .............................................. 82
\Dendnote ................................................... 31
\Dfootnote .................................................. 30
\disable@endnotes ......................................... 1
\disable@familiarnotes ..................................... 1
\disable@notes ............................................... 1
\disable@sidenum .......................................... 1
\disable@sidetable ......................................... 1
\do@actions ................................................ 1
\do@actions@fixedcode .................................... 1
\do@actions@next .......................................... 1
\do@ballast ................................................ 1
\do@feet@custom@order ................................... 1
\do@feetX .................................................. 1
\do@insidelinehook ....................................... 1
\do@line .................................................. 1
\do@linehook ............................................... 1
\do@lockoff ............................................... 1
\do@lockoff@L ............................................. 1
\do@lockon ................................................ 1
\do@lockon@L ............................................. 1
\do@Xfeet .................................................. 1
\doedindex@label .......................................... 1
\doendnotes ................................................ 1
\doendnotes@bysection ................................... 1
\doinsidelinehook ....................................... 1
\doinside@this@linehook ................................ 1
\dolinehook ............................................... 1
\dosplits .................................................. 1
Downes, Michael .......................................... 81, 201, 203
\dummy@edindex ........................................... 1
\dummy@edtext ............................................. 1
\dummy@edtext@showlemma ................................ 1
\dummy@ref ................................................ 1

E
\edafter@tab ................................................ 1
Index

edarrayc (environment) ........................................... 74
edarrayl (environment) ........................................... 74
edarryr (environment) ........................................... 74
\edatleft .......................................................... 76
\edatright ......................................................... 76
\edbeforetab ....................................................... 76, 383
\edfillldimen ...................................................... 1
\edfont@info ........................................................ 1
\edindex ............................................................. 71
\edindexlab ......................................................... 73
\EDLABEL ............................................................. 1
\edlabel ............................................................. 64
\edlabelE ............................................................. 66
\edlabelS ............................................................. 66
\edlabelSE ............................................................ 67
\edlineref ........................................................... 64
\edmakelabel ........................................................ 66
\edpagereft ........................................................ 64
\edrowfill ........................................................... 75
\EDTAB ................................................................. 1
\edtabcolsep ........................................................ 75
\EDTABINDENT ....................................................... 1
\edtabindent ......................................................... 1
\EDTABtext ........................................................... 1
edtabularc (environment) ........................................... 74
edtabularl (environment) ........................................... 74
edtabularr (environment) ........................................... 74
\EDTEXT ............................................................... 1
\edtext ............................................................... 30
\edtext@notes ....................................................... 1
\edtext@notes@start ................................................. 1
\edvertdots ........................................................... 77
\edvertline ........................................................... 77
\Eendnote ............................................................. 31
\Efootnote ............................................................. 30
\eled@chapter ........................................................ 1
\eled@section ........................................................ 1
\eled@sectioning@out ................................................. 1
\eled@subsection ................................................... 1
\eled@subsubsection ................................................ 1
\eledchapter ........................................................ 1
\eledchapter* ....................................................... 1
\eledsection ........................................................ 1
\eledsection* ....................................................... 1
\eledsubsection .................................................... 1
\eledsubsection* .................................................... 1
\eledsubsubsection ................................................ 1
\eledsubsubsection* ................................................ 1
\enable@dtabfeet .................................................... 1
\end@lemmas .......................................................... 1
environments:
  edarrayc ................................................. 74
  edarrayr ................................................. 74
  edarrayl ................................................. 74
  edtabularc .............................................. 74
  edtabularl .............................................. 74
  edtablarr ............................................... 74
  ledgroup ............................................... 64
  ledgroupszied ........................................... 64
  minipage ............................................... 63

Euclid ................................................ 14
extensionchars .......................................... 79

\endashchar .................................................. 1
\endline@num ................................................ 1
\endlock ..................................................... 1, 24
\endminipage ............................................... 1
\endnumbering ............................................... 1, 18
\endpage@num ................................................ 1
\endprint ................................................... 1
\endquotatation ............................................. 1
\endquote ................................................... 1
\endsub ..................................................... 1, 23
\endsubline@num ............................................. 1

Fairbairns, Robin ....................................... 41
\first@linenum@out@false ................................ 1
\first@linenum@out@true .................................. 1
\firsthalf@antilabe@wd ................................... 1
\first@linenum ............................................ 1, 22
\firstseriesX@ ............................................ 1
\firstsublinenum ......................................... 1, 22
\firstXseries@ ............................................ 1
\flag@end ................................................ 1
\flag@end@later ........................................... 1
\flag@end@RTL ............................................. 1
\flag@start ................................................. 1
\flag@start@later ......................................... 1
\flag@start@RTL ........................................... 1
\flagstanza ............................................... 1, 63
\flush@notes ............................................... 1
\fnpos ................................................... 1, 42
Folkerts, Menso ........................................... 14
\footfootmark@A ........................................... 41
\footfudgefiddle .......................................... 1, 81
\footnote ................................................ 1
\footnoteA ................................................ 41
\footnoteB ................................................ 41
\footnoteC ................................................ 41

Index 453
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\footnoteD</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnoteE</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnotelang@lua</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnotelang@poly</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnoteoptions@</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnoteXmark</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footnoteXtext</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\footsplicekips</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\fullstop</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gädcke, Nora</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@edindex@hyperref</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@edindex@ledinnote@command</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@fmk</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@fmkX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@index@command</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@linelistfile</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@pstartcounter</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@stanzacounter</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@sw@txt</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@thisfootnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@thisfootnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\get@line@num</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\gl@p</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\h@num</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hangindentX</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hidenumbering</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hidenumbering@onleftpage</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hidenumbering@onrightpage</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfsbox</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfsbox</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfscount</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfscount</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfskip</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfskip</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hilfskip</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hookarg@specific</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hooktoggle@specific</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hsizethreecolX</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hsizetwocolX</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Hy@raisedlink@left</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hyperlinkformat</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hyperlinkformat@R</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hyperlinkR</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\if@addsw</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Jayaditya ............................................................... 14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\000advance\parledgroup\beforenormalnotes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000add</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000nums</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000section</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000set</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000Xend</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000ampcount</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dbcount</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000checkcols</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000checkstartend</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000chset\num</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000colcount</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000collect\body</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000collect\body</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000colwidth</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000csnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000csnotetext</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000csnotetext\l</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000csnotetext\r</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000ddodoreinxtrafeet</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000ddoxtrafeet</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dedbeginmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dedendmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000empty\sta</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000end\close</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000end\open</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000end\stuff</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000end\false</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000end\true</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000envbody</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000esnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dfambeginmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dfamendmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dffeetbeginmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000dffeetendmini</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000getline\margin</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000getlock\disp</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000gref\num</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000getsidenote\margin</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000gobbleoptarg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000hnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000label\parse</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000lota</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000lorbox</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\000lspan\ote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kabelschacht, Alois</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\keep\this@crossref@forinserting</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin ........................................ 1
\led@warn@BadSubblockdisp ........................................ 1
\led@warn@DuplicateLabel ......................................... 1
\led@warn@edinde@outsidenumbering .............................. 1
\led@warn@LineFileObsolete ...................................... 1
\led@warn@NoFile .................................................. 1
\led@warn@NoIndexFile ............................................ 1
\led@warn@NoMarginpars ........................................... 1
\led@warn@RefUndefined ........................................... 1
\led@warn@SeriesStillExist ...................................... 1
\led@warning@hsizenodeprecated ................................ 1
\led@warning@mdatawithoutstop .................................. 1
\led@warning@preNotes@deprecated ............................ 1
\led@warning@Xhsizenodeprecated ................................ 1
ledgroup (environment) ............................................ 64
ledgroupsize (environment) ....................................... 64
\ledinnernote ...................................................... 1, 70
\ledinnote ........................................................ 1
\ledinnotemark ..................................................... 1
\ledleftnote ........................................................ 1
\ledlinenum ........................................................ 1
\ledlffill ........................................................... 1
\ledlsnotefontsetup ................................................ 1
\ledlsnotesep ....................................................... 1
\ledlsnotewidth .................................................... 1
\lednopb ............................................................. 1, 79
\lednopbinversetrue ............................................. 79
\lednopbnum ......................................................... 1
\ledouternote ........................................................ 1, 70
\ledpb ............................................................... 1, 79
\ledpbnum ........................................................... 1
\ledpnbsetting ...................................................... 1, 79
\ledrightnote ........................................................ 1
\ledrffill ........................................................... 1
\ledrsnotefontsetup ............................................... 1, 70
\ledrsnotesep ....................................................... 1, 70
\ledrsnotewidth .................................................... 1, 70
\ledsectnomark ..................................................... 1
\ledsectnotoc ........................................................ 1
\ledsetnormalparstuff@common .................................. 1
\ledsetnormalparstuffX ........................................... 1
\ledsidenote ........................................................ 1, 70
\ledsidenote@ ....................................................... 1
\leftctab ............................................................ 1
\leftlinenum ........................................................ 1, 23
\leftlinenumannotnation .......................................... 1
\leftlltab ............................................................ 1
\leftnoteupfalse .................................................... 70
\leftpstartnum ...................................................... 1
\leftpsstartnum ...................................................... 1
\leftrctab ............................................................ 1
\leftrdsnotefontsetup ............................................. 1
\leftrfill ............................................................ 1
\leftrlnumannotation ................................................ 1
\leftrlnum ........................................................... 1
\leftrnoteupfalse ................................................... 70
\leftstrtab .......................................................... 1
\lefttrtab ............................................................ 1
Index

Mayer, Gyula .......................................................... 14
Luecking, Dan ......................................................... 86
Leibniz ................................................................. 14
\lemma ................................................................. 1
\letsforverteilen ................................................ 1
\line@list ............................................................. 1
\line@list@stuff ................................................... 1
\line@list@version ................................................ 1
\line@num ........................................................... 1
\line@set ............................................................ 1
\lineannot .......................................................... 1
\lineannot@set ..................................................... 1
\lineation .......................................................... 1
\linenum ........................................................... 1
\linenum@out ........................................................ 1
\linenumannotation ............................................... 1
\linenumannotation@othersidetrue ................................ 1
\linenumberlist ................................................... 1
\linenumberstyle ................................................ 1
\linenumincrement .............................................. 1
\linenummargin .................................................. 1
\linenum@p ........................................................ 1
\linenum@rep ...................................................... 1
\linenum@sep ....................................................... 1
\linenum@sep@ ..................................................... 1
\list@clear .......................................................... 1
\list@clearing@reg ............................................... 1
\list@create ........................................................ 1
\lock@disp ........................................................ 1
\lock@off .......................................................... 1
\lock@on ........................................................... 1
\lock@up ............................................................ 1
\lock@disp ........................................................ 1
Lorch, Richard ....................................................... 14
\ltab ................................................................. 1
\ltabtext ........................................................... 1
M ................................................................. 461
Index

Middleton, Thomas ........................................ 14, 112
minipage (environment) .................................. 63
Mittelbach, Frank ........................................ 13, 14
\morenoexpands ........................................... 1, 81
\mpappend@notesX ......................................... 1
\mpappend@Xnotes .......................................... 1
\mpfnpos .................................................. 1, 42
\mpnormalfootnote ....................................... 1
\mpnormalfootnoteX ...................................... 1
\mpnormalvfootnote ...................................... 1
\mpnormalvfootnote@inserted ............................... 1
\mpnormalvfootnoteX ...................................... 1
\mppara@footnoteX ....................................... 1
\mppara@vfootnote ........................................ 1
\mpparafootnote .......................................... 1
\mmparafootnote .......................................... 1
\mpthreecolfootnote .................................... 1
\mpthreecolfootnoteX ................................... 1
\mpthreecolfootsetup ................................... 1
\mpthreecolfootsetupX .................................. 1
\mptwocolfootnote ...................................... 1
\mptwocolfootnoteX ...................................... 1
\mptwocolfootsetup ..................................... 1
\mptwocolfootsetupX .................................... 1
\msdata .................................................. 1, 39
\msdata@c ................................................. 1
\msdata@cR ............................................... 1
\multifootsep ........................................... 1, 41
\multiplefootnotemarker ................................ 1
\n@num ..................................................... 1
\n@num@stanza ............................................. 1
\new@line ................................................ 1
\newhookarg@specific ................................... 1
\newhookcommand@series ................................ 1
\newhookcommand@series@reload .......................... 1
\newhooktoggle@series .................................. 1
\newhooktoggle@series@reload ............................ 1
\newhooktoggle@specific ................................ 1
\newseries@ .............................................. 1
\newverse ................................................ 1
\NEXT ..................................................... 1
\next@line@list@stuff ................................... 1
\no@expands .............................................. 1
\nomk@ ................................................... 1
\nonoteX .................................................. 45
\normal@footnotemarkerX ................................ 1
\normal@page@break ........................................ 1
\normal@pars ............................................. 1
Index

\normalbnoteX ........................................ 1
\normalbodyfootmarkX .................................. 1
\normalfootfmt ........................................ 1
\normalfootfmtX ........................................ 1
\normalfootfootmarkX .................................. 1
\normalfootgroup ....................................... 1
\normalfootgroupX ...................................... 1
\normalfootnoterule ................................... 1
\normalfootnoteruleX ................................... 1
\normalfootstart ....................................... 1
\normalfootstartX ...................................... 1
\normalvfootnote ...................................... 1
\normalvfootnote@inserted .............................. 1
\normalvfootnoteX ...................................... 1
\notefontsizex .......................................... 52
\notenumfontX .......................................... 52
\notescanged@false .................................... 1
\notescanged@true ..................................... 1
\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX ............................ 57
\nulledindex ........................................... 1
\nullsetzen ............................................ 1
\num@lines ............................................. 1
\numberedpar@false .................................... 1
\numberedpar@true ..................................... 1
\numberingfalse ........................................ 1
\numberingtrue ........................................ 1
\numberinlinefalse .................................... 21
\numberlinetrue ...................................... 21
\numberpstartfalse .................................... 20
\numberpstarttrue .................................... 20
\numberstanzafalse ................................... 62
\numberstanzatrue ................................... 62
\numlabfont ........................................... 1, 58

O

\old@hsize ............................................. 1
\one@line .............................................. 1
optionafter ........................................... 27
optionantilabe ...................................... 63, 356
optionauxdir ........................................... 16, 486
optionbefore ......................................... 27
optioncontinuousnumberingwithcolumns ............... 97, 168, 175, 485, 490, 493
optiondraft ........................................... 79
optionfinal ........................................... 79
optioninnote .......................................... 484
optioninnote .......................................... 484
optionlinerangesep ................................... 295
optionminus ........................................... 485
optionnocritical ..................................... 482, 484
optionnoledsec ........................................ 78, 397, 486
Index

optionnoend  .................................................. 484
optionnofamiliar ................................................. 482, 490
optionnopenalties ............................................. 81, 486
optionnoprefix .................................................. 69, 491
optionnoresetlinenumannotation ......................... 25, 48, 490
optionnotenumber ............................................... 484, 487
optionparapparatus ........................................... 493
optionplus ........................................................ 485
optionprefixmore ............................................... 69, 491
optionsameparallelpagenumber ......................... 490
optionswcaseinsensitive .................................. 34, 489

P
\page@action .................................................. 1
\page@num ..................................................... 1
\pagelinesep ................................................... 1, 72
\pageref ....................................................... 66
\par@line ........................................................ 1
\par@patch@pagenumbering .................................. 1
\par@patch@thepage .......................................... 1
\para@footgroupX .............................................. 1
\para@footsetup .............................................. 1
\para@footsetupX ............................................. 1
\para@vfootnotex ............................................. 1
\parafootfmt .................................................. 1
\parafootfmtX ................................................ 1
\parafootgroup ................................................ 1
\parafootsepX ................................................ 1
\parafootsepx ............................................... 55
\parafootstart ............................................... 1
\parafootstartX .............................................. 1
\paravfootnote ................................................ 1
\parindentX ..................................................... 53
\parse@annot .................................................. 1
\pausenumbering .............................................. 1, 21
\pausenumbering@pagenumber ......................... 1, 18
\pend ........................................................... 1

Plato of Tivoli ............................................... 14
\postbodyfootmark .......................................... 1
\prebodyfootmark ........................................... 1
\prenotesX ..................................................... 56
\prepare@edindex@fornote .................................. 1
\prepare@prenotesX ......................................... 1
\prepare@xgroupbyline ..................................... 1
\prepare@xprenotes ......................................... 1
\prev@nopb ..................................................... 1
\prev@pb ......................................................... 1
\prev@page@num .............................................. 1
\print@eledsection ........................................... 1
\print@footnotexrule ....................................... 1
\print@leftmargin@eledsection ......................... 1
Index

\print@lemma ........................................ 1
\print@line ........................................ 1
\print@notesX ............................................... 1
\print@rightmargin@eledsection ...................... 1
\print@Xfootnoterule ................................... 1
\print@Xnotes .......................................... 1
\printendlines .......................................... 1
\printlineendnote ....................................... 1
\printlineendnotearea .................................. 1
\printlinefootnote ...................................... 1
\printlinefootnotearea .................................. 1
\printlinefootnotearea .................................. 1
\printlines ........................................... 1
\printlines@count ...................................... 1
\printnpnum ............................................ 1
\printpstart ........................................... 1
\printsymlineendnotearea .............................. 1
\printsymlineendnotearea .............................. 1
\printXafternumber .................................... 1
\printXbeforenumber ................................... 1
\psstart ............................................. \ref{1,18}
\pstartref ............................................ 1
\pstarttref ........................................... 1
\pstart@read@L ........................................ 64
\pstart@typeset@L ..................................... 1
\pstarts@read@L ........................................ 1

Q
\quotation ............................................. 1
\quote .................................................. 1

R
\raggedX ................................................ 55
\raw@text ................................................ 1
\rbracket ............................................... 1
\read@linelist ......................................... 1
\ref .................................................. 66
\ref@reg@later ......................................... 1
\Relax ................................................... 1
\reledmac@error ....................................... 1
\reledmac@warning ...................................... 1
\removehboxes ......................................... 1
\reset@current@annot .................................. 1
\reset@mind@options@iffullpage ...................... 1
\reset@linenumannotation ............................ 1
\reset@prevline ...................................... \ref{1,116}
\reset@prevpage ....................................... 1
\reset@prevpage@num .................................. 116
\restore@eendnotes .................................... 1
\restore@familiarnotes ................................ 1
\restore@notes ......................................................... 1
\restore@sidenames .............................................. 1
\resumenumbering .................................................... 1
\rightctab ............................................................ 1
\rightlnum ............................................................. 1
\rightlinenum ......................................................... 1
\rightlinenumannotation ........................................... 1
\rightltab ............................................................. 1
\rightnoteupfalse .................................................... 1
\rightrtab ............................................................. 1
\rightstartnum ....................................................... 1
\rigidbalance ........................................................ 1
\rigidbalanceX ....................................................... 1
\rtab ................................................................. 1
\rtabtext ............................................................. 1

S
Sacrobosco ........................................................ 14
\sameword ............................................................ 14
\sameword@linedtext .............................................. 1
Schöpf, Rainer ....................................................... 1
\section@num .......................................................... 1
\select@lemmafont .................................................. 1
\select@lemmafont .................................................. 58
\SEref ............................................................... 67
\SErefonlypage ...................................................... 67
\SErefwithpage ...................................................... 67
\series ............................................................... 1
\series@begin ........................................................ 1
\series@end .......................................................... 42
\set@continuousnumberingforL .................................... 1
\set@line ............................................................. 1
\set@line@action ................................................... 1
\set@this@c@p@ge ................................................... 1
\set@txtbeforenotesX ............................................. 1
\set@Xtxtbeforenotes ............................................. 1
\setapprefprefixmore ............................................. 67
\setapprefprefixsingle ........................................... 67
\setcommand@series ............................................... 1
\setindentX .......................................................... 1
\sethangingsymbol ................................................. 61
\setistwofollowinglines .......................................... 1
\set@dlp@rbox ....................................................... 1
\set@drp@box ........................................................ 1
\setline ............................................................ 24
\setl@num ............................................................ 24
\setlinenum ........................................................ 28
\setlinenumannotationsep ........................................ 1
\setmcellcenter .................................................... 1
\setmcellleft ....................................................... 1
\setmcellright ..................................................... 1
\setmrowcenter .................................................... 1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\setmrowleft</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setmrowright</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setmsdatalabel</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setmsdataposition</td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setmsdataseries</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setparindentX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setprintendlines</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setprintlines</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefprefixmore</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefprefixsingle</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setsidenotesep</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzapenalties</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzavalues</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentsbase</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindent</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindent*</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefprefixmore</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setSErefprefixsingle</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setsidenotesep</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzapenalties</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzavalues</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentsbase</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindent</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindent*</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindentbase</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\setstanzaindents</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

\store@annot@to@absline ........................................... 1
\strip@szacnt ...................................................... 1
\sub@action .......................................................... 1
\sub@lock ............................................................. 1
\sub@off .............................................................. 1
\sub@on ............................................................... 1
\subline@num ........................................................ 1
\sublinenumberstyle ................................................ 1.24
\sublinenumincrement .............................................. 1.22
\sublinenum@p ........................................................ 1
\sublinenumrep ........................................................ 1
\sublineref .......................................................... 1.64
\sublines@false ...................................................... 1
\sublines@true ........................................................ 1
\subblock@disp ........................................................ 1
\subblock@disp ........................................................ 1
Sullivan, Wayne ..................................................... 14, 81, 96, 102, 201, 202, 304, 347
\sv@noexpand ........................................................ 1
\sno@expands .......................................................... 1.38
\sza@penalty ........................................................... 1

T
\tabHilfbox ............................................................ 1
\tabhilfbox ............................................................ 1
\thead@addcol@count ................................................ 1
\thead@text ........................................................... 1
\thead@line@pg @line ................................................ 1
\thead@footnote@A .................................................... 1
Theodosius .............................................................. 14
\thead@line ........................................................... 1
\thead@par@page ...................................................... 1
\thead@start .......................................................... 1.20
\thead@stanza ........................................................ 1.62
\thead@start@line .................................................... 1
\this@@line@@list@@version ........................................ 1
\this@@section@@last@@page@@num ................................ 1
\this@@section@@page@@num ........................................ 1
\three@col@begin@@insert ........................................... 1
\three@col@footfmt .................................................. 1
\three@col@footfmt@X ................................................ 1
\three@col@footgroup ................................................ 1
\three@col@footgroup@X .............................................. 1
\three@col@footsetup ............................................... 1
\three@col@footsetup@X .............................................. 1
\three@col@footnote .................................................. 1
\three@col@footnote@@inserted .................................... 1
\three@col@footnote@X ................................................ 1
\to@endnotes .......................................................... 1.32
\to@endnotes* ......................................................... 1
\two@col@footfmt ........................................................ 1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\twocolfootfmtX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolfootgroup</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolfootgroupX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolfootsetup</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolfootsetupX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolvfootnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolvfootnote@inserted</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\twocolvfootnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\txtbeforenotesonlyonceX</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\txtbeforenotesX</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\unvXhX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vamana</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\variabX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vbfnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@dbfnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@dcsnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@disnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@disnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@dosnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@dosnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@drsnote</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl@drsnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\vnumfootnoteX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitney, Ron</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\widthX</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\wrap@edcrossref</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\wrapcontentX</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\wrapped@footfootmarkX</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\write@lemma</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wujastyk, Dominik</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\X@atbegininsertion</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\X@beforeinsertion</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\X@doreinfeet</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xabslineref</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xafterlemmaseparator</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xafternote</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xafternumber</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xafterrule</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xafterstsymlinenum</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xannotationref</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xarrangement</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xarrangement@normal</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Xarrangement@paragraph</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

\notboxingsubline ........................................... 50
\notefontsize .................................................. 52
\notenumberfoot ............................................. 52
\noteswidthliketwocolumns .................................... 57
\numberonlyfirstinline ........................................ 45
\numberonlyfirstintwolines ................................... 45
\onlypstart .................................................... 48
\pagelinesep ................................................... 49
\paggerf ........................................................ 1, 65
\parafootsep .................................................... 55
\parindent ....................................................... 53
\prenotes ...................................................... 1, 56
\prenotes@ ...................................................... 1
\pstart ........................................................ 47
\pstarteverytime ............................................... 47
\pstartonlyfirst ................................................ 48
\pstartref ....................................................... 1, 65
\pstartseparator ................................................. 48
\ref@test ........................................................ 1
\ref@test@mac .................................................. 1
\ref@test@mac@test ............................................. 1
\ragged .......................................................... 55
\right@appenditem ............................................... 1
\rigidbalance ................................................... 1
\setchangindent ................................................ 1
\setparindent ................................................... 1
\stanza ........................................................ 48
\stanzaonlyfirst ............................................... 48
\stanzaseparator ............................................... 48
\storelineinfo .................................................. 1
\sublineref ..................................................... 1, 65
\sublinesep ..................................................... 23, 49
\sublinesepside ................................................ 23
\asymlinenum ................................................... 45
\asymlinenumannotation ...................................... 48
\toendnotes ..................................................... 32
\twolines ....................................................... 46
\twolinesonlyinsamepage ..................................... 46
\txtbeforenotes ................................................ 47
\txtbeforenotesonlyonce ...................................... 56
\txtbeforenumber .............................................. 56
\unvtxh ........................................................ 46
\width .......................................................... 57
\wrapcontent ................................................... 53
\wrapendlemma ................................................ 53
\wraplemma ..................................................... 52
\wraplinenumannotation@ref .................................. 1
\wraplinenumannotation@side ................................ 1
\xxref ........................................................... 1, 65
Index

Z
\zz0000 ................................................................. 1
\zz0000 ................................................................. 1
Change History

v0.1.0.
   General: First public release ........................................... 1

v0.2.0.
   \if@dmemoir: Added \if@dmemoir for memoir class having been used ...... 87
   \morenoexpands: Added \morenoexpands to \no@expands .................. 143
   \reledmac@error: Added \reledmac@error and replaced error messages .. 88
   General: Added tabmac code, and extended indexing ..................... 1

v0.2.1.
   \@lab: Removed page setting from \@lab ................................. 307
   \edlabel: Tweaked \edlabel to get correct page numbers ............... 304
   \dodoreinxtrafeet: Renamed \ddodoreinxtrafeet to \l@dodoreinxtrafeet ... 297
   \ddxtrafeet: Renamed \ddxtrafeet to \l@ddxtrafeet .................... 296
   \morenoexpands: Removed some \let s from \no@expands. These were in
                   EDMAC but Peter Wilson feels that they should not have been as
                   they disabled page/line refs in a footnote ....................... 143
   General: Added text about normal labeling ............................. 66
   Bug fixes and match with mempatch v1.8 .................................. 1
   Major changes to insert code when memoir is loaded ................... 299

v0.2.2.
   \footfudgefiddle: Added \footfudgefiddle ............................... 199
   \next@line@list@stuff: Added initial write of page number in \line@list@stuff 133
   \para@footsetup: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetup .......... 200
   \para@footsetupX: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetupX ....... 246
   General: Improved paragraph footnotes .................................. 1
   New Dekker example ...................................................... 1
   Used \providecommand for \@gobblethree to avoid clash with the amsfonts
   package ............................................................. 95

v0.3.0.
   \@lab: Replaced \the\line@num by \linenumr@p\line@num in \@lab, and similar
         for sub-lines .................................................................. 307
   \@nl@reg: A bunch of code to \@nl for handling \setlinenum ............. 119
   \ledlinenum: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenum@rep to \leftlinenum
               and \rightlinenum .............................................. 110
   \linenumberlist: Added \linenumr@p mechanism ........................... 96
   \printlines: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenum@p to \printlines .... 266
   \printlines@count: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenum@p to \printlines 228
   \sublinenum@p: Added \linenumberstyle and \sublinenumberstyle ........ 109
   General: Includes edstanza and more .................................... 1

v0.3.1.
   General: Not released. Added remarks about the parallel package ......... 1

v0.4.0.
   \@iiiminipage: Modified kernel \@iiiminipage and \endminipage to cater for
                  critical footnotes ............................................. 332
   \Xarrangement@normal: Added minpage footnote setup to \footnormal ...... 194
   \edtext: Added \showlemma to \edtext ................................... 144
   \l@dfeetendmini: Added \l@dfeetendmini, \l@dfeetbeginmini, \l@dfeetendmini
                    and all their supporting code ................................ 330
   \mpnormalfootgroup: Added \mpnormalfootgroup .......................... 198
\hsize: Changed \hsize in ledgroup environment otherwise page number can be in wrong place .................................................. 334
\ref@reg: Added \ref@reg, \ref@R, \ref@L and \ref@R in anticipation of parallel processing ................................................................. 122
\n1@reg: Extended \n1 to include the page number ........................................ 119
\get@thisfootnote: Changed \get@thisfootnote and \vl@dbfnote as originals could give incorrect markers in the footnotes ........................................ 233
\set@this@c@page: Extended \new@line to output page numbers ............... 134
General: Fixed long paragraphs looping ........................................ 1
Fixed minor typos ........................................................................ 1
Prepared for eledpar package ..................................................... 1
v0.7.0.
\n1@reg: Added \n1@reg .................................................................. 119
\ref@reg: Added \ref@reg ............................................................... 130
\affixline@num: Added skipnumering to \affixline@num .................... 178
\do@actions@fixedcode: Added \do@actions@fixedcode .......................... 174
\do@actions@next: Added number skipping to \do@actions ................. 172
\do@insidelinehook: Added \do@linehook for use in \do@line .............. 169
\endnumbering: Changed \endnumbering for eledpar .......................... 101
\f@x@l@cks: Added \ch@cksub@l@ck, \ch@ck@l@ck and \f@x@l@cks .................... 181
\footnoteskips: Added \footnoteskips for use in many footnote styles ..... 192
\get@linelistfile: Added \get@linelistfile ...................................... 118
\initnumbering@reg: Added \initnumbering@reg ............................. 99
\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes: Added \l@dunboxmpfoot containing some common code ........................................ 333
\l@dcsnotetext@r: Added \l@dempty@ta ........................................... 170
\@dgetline@margin: Added \@dgetline@margin ................................. 106
\@dgetline@disp: Added \@dgetline@disp ................................. 108
\@dgetline@margint: Added \@dgetline@margin ............................ 322
\@dnumberstartsL: Added \@dnumberstartsL, \ifdRcol and \ifnumberR for/from eledpar ................................. 97
\@dline@conte: Added \@dline@conte and \@dline@conte for use in \do@line ................................. 170
\@dzeropenalties: Added \@dzeropenalties ............................... 164
\ledlinenum: Added \ledlinenum for use by \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum ................................. 110
\list@clearing@reg: Added \list@clearing@reg ............................ 118
\n@num: Added \n@num ................................................... 127
\next@line@list@stuff: Deleted \page@start from \line@list@stuff ................................. 133
\normalbfnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \normalbfnoteX ................................. 240
\vnumfootnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \vnumfootnoteX ................................. 240
General: Added \setprintendlines for use by \printendlines ................................. 262
cledmac having been available for 2 years, deleted the commented out original edmac texts .................................................. 1
Maïeul Rouquette new maintainer .................................................. 1
Made macros of all messages .................................................. 88
Replaced all \interAfootnotelinepenalty, etc., by just \interfootnotelinepenalty .................................................. 1
Tidying up for eledpar and ledarab packages ........................................ 1

v0.8.0.
General: Bug on endnotes fixed: in a // text, all endnotes will print and be placed at the ends of columns () ................................. 1

v0.8.1.
General: Bug on \edtext ; \critex ; \lemma fixed: we can now use non-switching commands .................................................. 1

v0.9.0.
General: No more ledpatch. All patches are now in the main file ................................. 1

v0.9.1.
General: Fix some bugs linked to integrating ledpatch on the main file ................................. 1

v0.10.0.
General: Corrections to \section and other titles in numbered sections .................................................. 1

v0.11.0.
General: Makes it possible to add a symbol on each verse’s hanging, as in French typography. Redefines the command \hangingsymbol to define the character ................................. 1

v0.12.0.
\@dnumberstartsL: Added \ifdRcol and \ifnumberR for/from eledpar ................................. 97
General: For compatibility with eledpar, possibility to use \autopar on the right side ................................. 1
Possibility to number \pstart ................................. 20
Possibility to number the pstart with the commands \numberpstarttrue ................................. 1

v0.12.1.
General: Do not number \pstarts of stanza ................................. 1
The numbering of \pstart{} restarts on each \begin{numbering}.

v0.13.0.
\managetstanza@modulo: New \stanzaindentsrepetition{} counter to repeat stanza indents every \textit{n} verses.
General: New \stanzaindentsrepetition{} counter to repeat stanza indents every \textit{n} verses.

v0.13.1.
General: \thestart{} and \thestart{} use now \textit{\bfseries} and not \textit{\bf}, which is deprecated and makes conflicts with \texttt{memoir} class.

v0.14.0.
\edlabel: Tweaked \edlabel{} to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.
General: Tweaked \edlabel{} to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.

v0.15.0.
\affixline@num: Line numbering can be disabled.
\ifinserthangingsymbol: New management of hanging\symbol{} insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.
\printlines@count: Line numbering can be reset at each \pstart{}.
General: Line numbering can be reset at each \pstart{}.
Possibility to print \pstart{} number at the sides of the text.

v0.17.0.
\ifinserthangingsymbol: New new management of hanging\symbol{} insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.

v1.0.0.
\morenoexpands: Change to be compatible with new features.
General: \lemma{} can contain commands.
Debug in lineation command.
New generic commands to customize footnote display.
Options nonum and nosep in \Xfootnote{}.
Options of \Xfootnotes{}.
Possibility to have commands in sidenotes.
Some compatibility break with eledmac. Change of name: eledmac.

v1.0.1.
General: Correction on \Xnumberonlyfirstinline with lineation by \pstart{} or by page.

v1.1.0.
\Xprenotes: New skip \Xprenotes@.
\settoggle@series: \settoggle@series switch the global value of the toggle, not only the local value.
General: Add \label{}\pstart{}\true{}.
Add \Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines.
Add \Xpstart{} and \Xonlypstart.
New hook to add arbitrary code at the beginning of the notes.
New options for block of notes.
New package option: parapparatus.
New tools to change order of series.
Sectioning commands.

v1.2.0.
\Xprenotes: Debug in familiar footnotes (bug introduced by v1.1).
\endquote: Compatibility of \ledchapter{} with the \texttt{memoir} class.
v1.3.0.
\endquote: Quotation and quote environment inside numbered sections. ............. 389
v1.4.0.
\edtext: Compatibility of \edtext with the right-to-left direction (with Polyglossia). 144
\ledsetnormalparstuffX: Direction of footnotes with polyglossia. ................. 251
\newseries@: Remembers the language of the lemma, in order to create a correct
direction for the footnote separator. .................................................. 274
\rbracket: Switch the right bracket to a left bracket when the lemma is RTL (needs
polyglossia or LuaTeX). ................................................................. 214
General: Compatibility with LuaTeX of RTL notes. ....................................... 1
v1.4.1.
\affixside@note: Remove spurious spaces. ............................................. 329
\endquote: New option noquotation. .................................................. 389
\get@thisfootnote: Compatibility of standard footnotes with eledmac when these
footnotes contain any commands. ...................................................... 233
\labelrefsparsesubline: Fix a bug with \edlabel. ................................. 306
v1.4.2.
General: Debug with some special classes. ............................................. 1
v1.4.3.
General: Add \textbackslash nonbreakableafternumber. ................................ 49
Spurious space after familiar footnotes. ............................................ 1
v1.4.4.
General: Label inside familiar footnotes. ............................................ 1
v1.4.5.
General: Bug with komasscript + eledpar + chapter. .................................. 1
v1.4.6.
General: Bug with memoir class introduced by 1.4.5. .................................. 1
v1.4.7.
\endquote: Compatibility of sectioning commands with \autobar. .................... 389
v1.4.8.
General: Corrects a bug with parallel texts introduced by 1.1. ..................... 1
v1.4.9.
\normalbfnoteX: Allow to redefine \thefootnoteX with alph when some packages
are loaded. ...................................................................................... 238
v1.5.0.
\do@insidelinehook: Added \do@insidelinehook for use in \do@line ................. 169
\edindex: Compatibility with \makeidx package, and possibility to use multiple index
with \edindex. .................................................................................... 339
General: Correct indexing when the call is made in critical notes. .................. 335
v1.5.1.
\managestanza@modulo: Correct stanzaindentsrepetition counter .................... 349
\normalvfootnoteX: Fix a bug with normal familiar footnotes when mixing RTL and
LTR text. ......................................................................................... 235
v1.6.0.
\falseverse: Add \falseverse macro. .................................................... 353
v1.6.1.
\AtStartEveryPstart: Spurious space in \pstart. ...................................... 160
\ifinserthangingsymbol: Hang verse is now not automatically flush right. ........ 348
\l@dunhbox@line: Move the call to \inserthangingsymbol to allow use \hfill
inside. ............................................................................................ 166
Change History

\pekt: Spurious space in \pekt. .................................................. 162
General: Corrects a false hanging verse when a verse is exactly the length of a line. ..... 1
v1.7.0.
General: New features for managing page breaks. ......................................... 79
v1.8.0.
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. ....................... 389
\get@index@command: Debug \get@index@command and compatibility with
hyperref package. ................................................................. 338
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxnotesX which
did not work. ................................................................. 288
\prevpage@num: Correct \parafootsep when using with ledgroup. ....................... 205
General: Compatibility with parledgroup option of eledpar package. .................. 1
If \imakeidx and hyperref are loaded, adds hyperref in the index. ..................... 335
v1.8.1.
General: Debug endnotes when more than one series is used (change the position where
tools for endnotes are defined). ........................................... 256
v1.8.2.
General: Debug compatibility problem with hebrew option of babel package. .......... 1
v1.8.3.
General: Fix spurious spaces added by v1.7.0. .......................................... 1
v1.8.5.
General: Debug indexing in right column, with eledpar. .................................. 335
v1.9.0.
\do@ddoxtrafeet: Add \fnpos to choice the order of footnotes. ......................... 296
\def@feetendmini: Add \mpfnpos to choice the order of footnotes in minipage /
ledgroup. ................................................................. 330
v1.10.0.
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. ...................... 389
General: Add \pstartref and \xstartref to refer to a pstart number (extension of
\edlabel). ................................................................. 1
v1.10.1.
General: Compatibility with cleveref. .................................................. 1
v1.10.2.
General: Compatibility of stanza with v1.8a of babel-greek. .......................... 1
v1.10.3.
General: Debug of cross-referencing. .................................................. 1
v1.10.4.
General: Debug of critical notes in edtabular environment. ........................... 1
v1.10.5.
General: Debug of \pausenumbering. .................................................. 1
\xref. ................................................................. 1
v1.10.6.
General: Debug of interaction between \autopar and \pausenumbering. ................ 1
v1.11.0.
General: Add hooks to disable the font selection for lemma in footnote. .............. 52
v1.11.1.
General: Correct a bug when a critical note starts with plus or minus. .............. 1
v1.12.0.
\nl@reg: To ensure compatibility with \musixtex, \o1 becomes \l1. Consequently,
\l1@reg becomes \nl@reg. .................................................. 119
\AtStartEveryPstart: New optional argument for \pstart, to execute code before it. 160
\edindex: Use correctly default index when imakeidx is loaded. ............ 339
\endquote: \eledxxx sectioning commands are deprecated and replaced by \eledxxx
commands. ............................................. 389
\initnumbering@reg: \beginnumbering is defined only on eledmac, not on eledpar. 99
\@dgetsdifnote\margin: \sidenotemargin is now directly defined in eledmac to
be able to manage eledpar. ................................ 322
\@dunhbox@line: \do@line is split in more little commands. ................. 166
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxhnotesX which
did not work when called after \footparagraphX. .......................... 288
Debug \beforenotes and \maxhnotes which did not work when called after
\footparagraph. ........................................... 288
\pend: New optional argument for \pend, to execute code after it. ............. 162
\stanza: & can have an optional argument: content to be printed after. .... 353
\Stanza can have an optional argument: content to be printed before. ... 353
Add \falseverse macro, \falseverse deprecated. .......................... 353
General: Add \eledinnernote and \eledouternote commands. .................. 70
Add \endparagraph and related settings. .................................... 58
Add hyperlink to crossref (needs hyperref package). ......................... 64
Compatibility with musixtex. ........................................... 1
Debug eledmac sectioning command after using \resumenumbering. .......... 335
New hooks: \xafterrule and \afterruleX ............................... 56
New options for ragged-paragraph notes .................................... 55
New sectioning commands. ............................................... 77
Optional arguments for \pstart and \pend. ................................ 19
\v1.12.1.
\@wrap@edcrossref: Fix spurious spaces. .................................... 310
\v1.12.2.
\@dunhbox@line: Fix a bug with critical notes at the tops of pages (added by v12.0.0) 166
\v1.12.3.
\flag@end: \flag@start and \flag@end are now defined only one time for eledmac
and eledpar .............................................. 135
\flag@start send a error message when a \edtext is done without insert (note) 135
\reledmac@error: Replaced error messages .................................. 88
General: Add macros for new messages since v0.7 ........................... 88
Correct bug with side and familiar notes in tabular environments. ......... 1
Debug \eledxxx with some paper size .................................... 1
Debug \eledinnernote and \eledouternote commands in the top of pages. .... 70
Debug left and right notes (bugs added by 1.12.0) .......................... 1
Underline lemma in \eledxxx when using draft mode. .......................... 1
\v1.12.4.
General: Debug spurious page breaks before \chapter (bug added in 1.12.0) .... 1
\v1.12.5.
\@edindex@hyperref: Debug \edindex when hyperref is not loaded .......... 341
\@ssect: Debug \eledchapter in parallel with memoir ........................ 393
\doinsidelinehook: Added \dolinehook and \doinsidelinehook .......... 169
\endnumbering: Allow to mix parallel columns and normal text when using
\pausenumbering .................................................. 101
\l@dgobbleoptarg: \l@dgobblearg becomes \l@dgobbleoptarg ........ 372
\l@drestoreforedtext: Debug optional arguments of \Xfootnote in tabular context 373
\pausenumbering@page@num: Debug \resumenumbering .......................... 102
v1.12.7.
\wrap@edcrossref: \wrap@edcrossref is now robust ...................... 310
v1.12.8.
\flag@end: \flag@start do not send a error message when a \edtext is done
without insert (note) but have a endnote ............................ 135
v1.13.0.
\newhooktoggle@series@reload: Add \newhookcommand@toggle@reload .... 288
\para@footsetupX: In \para@footsetupX, use \columnwidth instead of \hsize . 246
\settoggle@series: \settoggle@series can take an optional arguments to reload
series setup. ...................................................... 285
General: Add \Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns and \noteswidthliketwocolumnsX . 57
Added widthliketwocolumns option .................................. 84
v1.13.1.
\ifat@every@pstart@star@: Add \l@dzeropenalties in \pstart ............... 160
General: Coming back of page and line breaking penalties’s management, deleted by
error in v0.17. ...................................................... 1
Debug quotation environment inside of a \pstart preceded by a sectioning command. 1
v1.13.2.
\l@dnumpstartsL: Add \ifl@dpaging for eledpar ............................ 97
General: Fix a bug with normal footnotes, added by v1.13.0. ............... 1
v1.13.3.
General: Fix extra spaces with paragraphed footnotes, added by v1.13.0. .... 1
v1.13.4.
General: Fix a bug with index when memoir class is used without hyperref 1
v1.14.0.
\edindex: Let eledmac take advantage of imakeidx even when memoir class is used . 339
General: Debug spurious characters before endnotes. .......................... 256
Delete previous override of \l@d@windexhyp at the beginning of a document
when hyperref is not loaded. ......................................... 343
Move gobbling command ............................................. 95
Provide \gobblefour ................................................. 95
\@ssect: Debug sectioning commands when using both handout and hyperref
package. .......................................................... 395
v1.14.2.
\@ssect: Debug \edtext after starred sectioning commands when using memoir class. 393
v1.15.0.
\edtext@level: New boolean \if@edtext. .................................. 143
\arrangementX@paragraph: Correct bug with paragraphed familiar footnotes setting. 246
\endsub: Restore subtitle feature (disabled by mistake in v1.8.0). .......... 137
\if@lemmacommand@: New boolean \iflemmacommand@. ...................... 151
General: Fix a bug with footnotes layout when using some options of the geometry
package (bug add by v1.13.0). ..................................... 1
New commands \AtEveryPstart and \AtEveryPend .......................... 20
New tools to prevent ambiguous references in lemma .......................... 34
v1.15.1.
\next@line@list@stuff: Revert modification of 1.5.2 which makes bug with
numbering. Leave vertical mode to solve spurious space before minipage. .... 133

v1.16.0.
General: \edtext is now defined only in eledmac, not in eledpar. Debug wrong
numbering when using \sameword + eledpar + \tag command. ............... 144
Compatibility of standard footnotes with some biblatex styles. ................ 1
New \stanzaindent command. .............................................. 1

v1.16.1.
\xlineref: \lineref is not defined if defined by some other package, like lineno.
Eledmac provides \edlineref instead. ....................................... 310

v1.17.0.
\edtext: Error message when calling \edtext outside of a numbered paragraph. . . . 144

v1.18.0.
\@edindex@hyperref: Fix spurious space with \edindex when using
imakeidx/indextools + hyperref. ........................................... 341
\edlabel: \edlabel is now defined only one time for both eledmac and eledpar . 304
\@edsection: Option parapparatus works for endnotes. ........................ 257
\@ednumpstarts: Add \ifnum\@edprintingpages and \@edprintingcolumns for
eledpar .......................................................... 97
\print@line: Compatibility with Lua\LaTeX{} RTL languages. .................... 166
\printlinefootnote: Code refactoring in \printlinefootnote: the printing of the
numbers are factorized in \printlinefootnotearia. .......................... 216
\printpstart: Debug \Xpstart with parallel pages and columns (eledpar) ...... 215
General: Add \Xpstarteverytime ............................................. 47
Compatibility with Lua\LaTeX{} RTL languages. ................................ 1
Debug \@onlypstart when using \@num@onlyfirstinline and the current line
number differs from the previous. .......................................... 47

v1.19.0.
\footprints: \footprints doesn't set \floatingpenalty to \@MM when
processing parallel pages. .................................................. 192
\xref: \xref works also with right side numbers, when \@Rlineflag is not empty. 313
General: \@maxhnotes and \@maxhnotesX work now for both two-columns and
three-columns setting. ...................................................... 1
Compatibility with eledpar v.1.13.0. .................................... 1

v1.19.1.
General: Call \correct@footinsX@box and \correct@Xfootins@box directly in
\print@notesX@forpages and \print@Xnotes@forpages, that is in eledpar .... 1

v1.20.0.
\printlines@count: Added \if@undefined\more@than@twolines and
\if@undefined\more@than@twolines to \printlines ............................. 228
\stanza: & and \& can be preceded by spaces. ................................ 353
\xref: Debug \xref when not loading eledpar (Fix a bug added in 1.19.0). ...... 313
General: Add \Xendboxlinenum ............................................... 51
Add \Xtwolines and \Xmore@than@twolines hooks ................................ 46
Add series option. .......................................................... 1
Correct \Xinplaceofnumber hook. .......................................... 1
Explicit error message when calling \Xfootnote outside of \edtext. ........... 1
Fix a bug with line number typesetting direction when using \eledsection and
similar commands for RTL texts with Lua\LaTeX{} .......................... 1
Change History

Fix issues with RTL text in notes when using \TeX. .......................... 1
Options fulllines in \Xfootnote. .............................................. 30
The \newifs are not followed by boolean values set to false, because it is the \TeX default setting. ............................................. 1

v1.21.0.
\Xedindex@hyperref: Look at the hyperindex option of hyperref before inserting hyperref ................................. 341
\@edindex@hyperref: Look at the hyperindex option of hyperref before inserting \hyperref ................................. 341
\l@d@section: \Xendnotes take five arguments. ......................... 257
\ledinnotemark: \Xledinnotemark .............................. 338
\XedsetnormalparstuffX: \XledsetnormalparstuffX is deprecated and becomes \XledsetnormalparstuffX and \XledsetnormalparstuffX .......................... 251
\n@num: \n@ref deleted .................................................. 127
\n@num defined only one time for both Eledmac and Eledpar ............. 127
\newhookcommand@series: \newhookcommand@series can take an optional argument. ............................................. 287
\newhooktoggle@series: \newhooktoggle@series can take an optional argument. 288
\print@footnoteruleXrule: Code refactoring: the spaces after the footnote rules are directly managed in \print@Xfootnoterule and \print@footnoteruleXrule ........................ 253
\skipnumbering: \skipnumbering defined only one time for both Eledmac and Eledpar ............................................. 140
Correct \skipnumbering for stanza. ..................................... 140
Delete \skipnumbering@reg .............................................. 140
General: \AtEveryPstart and \AtEveryPend are now compatible with \autopar .................. 1
\Xafterrule and \XafterruleX features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page .......................... 1
\chapter inside optional argument of \pstart works when typesetting parallel pages ......................................................... 1
\preXnotes and \prenotesX features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page. .......................... 1
\seriesatbegin and \seriesatbegin more efficient ..................... 284
Add \applabel and related ................................................ 67
Add \beforenotesX and \Xbeforenotes features for notes set in two and three column. ......................................................... 1
Add \hidenumbering ......................................................... 25
Add \Xcolalign and \colalignX hooks ..................................... 54
Add \Xendtwolines, \Xendmorethantwolines, \Xendtwolinesbutnotmore and \Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage. .......................... 47
Add \Xparindent and \XhangindentX ........................................ 53
Add \Xtwolinesbutnotmore and \Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage. ............. 1
Add nocritical, noend, nofamiliar and noledgroup options. ................ 1
Add noeledsec package option ............................................ 1
Debug \beforenotesX \maxhnotesX \noteswidthliketwocolumnsX and \afterruleX with footnotes set in two and three columns. .......................... 1
Fix a bug when a \Xfootnote follows a \Xendnote in the second argument of \edtext (bug added in eledmac 1.0.0) .................................... 1
Fix a bug with \maxhnotesX when using \foottwocolX or \footthreecolX .................................... 1
Fix a bug with space between columns with notes in two columns (bug added in v1.13.0) .................................... 1
Fix spurious space after first page number in \doendnotes. oldprintnpnumspace option allows to come back to previous setting ........................................ 1
parapapparatus option works now with familiar footnotes. ........................................ 1
Provide \gobblefive .................................................................................................. 95
v1.22.0.
\ledinnote: \ledinnote takes a first optional argument, which is the label for hyperlinks. ........................................ 338
General: Add \doendnotesbysection command. ........................................ 31
Add option for lemma separator inside endnotes ........................................ 51
Adds hyperlink for references to notes in indices. ........................................ 1
Fix conflict between noend package option and edtabular environments ........................................ 1
Provides support for xindy. ....................................................................................... 31
Standardize endnotes handbook. ............................................................................... 31
When using hyperref package, internal links in index or with \edlineref are now targeted to the top and not longer to the bottom of the lines they refer to. .......... 1
v1.22.1.
\prevpage@num: Correct double symbol when using both \parafootsep and \Xsymlinenum. ........................................ 205
General: Fix a bug (added on v1.22.0) with \Xinplaceofnumber hook. .......... 1
v1.23.0.
\edtext@level: The boolean \if\edtext@ becomes the counter \edtext@level. .... 143
\SErefwithpage: Debug \Xendtwolines, \Xendmorethantwolines, \Xendtwolinesbutnotmore and \Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage when using \apprefwithpage. ...................................................... 318
\lemma: Fix spurious space after \lemma command ........................................ 150
\newseries@: Prevent spurious spaces when \Afootnote and similar commands are followed by spaces (bug added on 1.0.0). ........................................ 274
\sameword: In order to allow use of \sameword with inputenc, we detokenize its mandatory argument before using it in control sequence names. ........................................ 155
General: Add \Xboxlinenumalign and \Xendboxlinenumalign. ...................................... 50
Add \Xboxstartlinenum, \Xendboxstartlinenum, \Xboxendlinenum, \Xendboxendlinenum. ........................................ 50
Allow use of \sameword with inputenc managing of UTF-8. ........................................ 1
Compatibility between nofamiliar/nocriticals option and minipage/ledgroup. .......... 1
Error message when using \beginnumbering... \endnumbering without \pstart. ...... 1
Fix a bug with \sameword when the lemma overlaps multiple line. .............. 34
Fix a bug with \sameword when the same word is used for multiple notes or for nested \edtexts. ........................................ 34
Fix a bug with \skipnumbering called immediately after a \pstart. .............. 1
Fix error of \iftrue not closed. ................................................................................. 1
Fix spurious space with \skipnumbering (bug added on v1.21.0). ................. 1
New tools to ensure the line-list file uses the right version of commands when upgrading the ledmac version. ........................................ 1
Optional argument of \sameword can be a comma-separated list of \edtext depth. 34
v1.23.1.
General: Fix a bug with \lemma command in the right side. ......................... 1
v1.23.2.
General: Compatibility with \LaTeX's release 2015. ........................................ 1
v1.24.0.
  General: We can reinitialize \AtEveryPstart and \AtEveryPend providing to it an
  empty argument. .......................................................... 1

v1.24.1.
  General: \lemma is disabled when using nocritical option. .................. 1

v1.24.2.
  General: Fix incompatibility between nofamiliar option and memoir package. . 1

v1.24.3.
  General: Restore marginal numbers and notes with sectioning command (bug
  introduced in v1.21.0) ..................................................... 1

v1.24.4.
  General: Fix spurious space with \edindex when using xindy-hyperref option. .... 1

v1.24.5.
  General: Fix a bug of indent, when a added in 1.1.0, when a \beginnumbering
  immediately follow a sectioning command. ................................ 1

v2.0.0.
\@iiiminipage: Patch \@iiiminipage instead of redefining it. ..................... 332
\@xympar: Patching \@xympar instead of redefining it ........................ 322
\endminipage: Patch \endminipage instead of redefining it ...................... 332
\initnumbering@quote: \initnumbering@sectioncmd becomes
\initnumbering@quote ...................................................... 389
\@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes: Some conde of \@dumboxmpfoot
  moved to \@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes ........................ 333
newseries: One endnotes file by series. .................................. 280
General: \maketoc, \reinserts and \doclearpage are patched instead of begin
  redefined ............................................................... 299
\doxtrafeeti becomes \do@feett; \doextrafeetii becomes \do@feett;
\@opxtrafeeti becomes \opfeettX; \doreinxtrafeetii becomes
\@doreinf@feett; \doreinxtrafeetii becomes \@doreinf@feett. ................. 299
Add \endinplaceofnumber hook. ............................................. 1
Add \endnonumber hook. ................................................... 1
Add nonum option for endnotes. ............................................. 1
Fix a bug when printing only one series of endnotes, but wanted to keep endnotes for
  other series. ............................................................ 1
In order to have a more consistent name's convention, many names has been changed. 1
Many \F@X's output macros are now patched and not override. .................. 1
Package's name becomes reledmac. ......................................... 1
Patch \@footnotemark instead of redefine it ............................... 252
Suppress indexing command specific to memoir. ............................. 339

v2.0.1.
  General: Fix a bug in eledmac-compat option ............................... 1
  Fix incompatibility between optional argument of tpstart and \numberpstarttrue 1

v2.1.0.
  General: Fix a bug with \advanceline at the beginning of a \pstart. ........ 1
  Fix a bug with \chapter in optional argument of \pstart in parallel typesetting
  with scrbook. ............................................................ 1
  Fix a bug with \eledchapter in parallel typesetting with scrbook. .......... 1
  Fix a bug with \setline at the beginning of a \pstart. .................... 1
  Fix spacing bug with \@[b]hooknote and \@[b]hooknoteX when using them to insert text
  and not to execute code. .............................................. 1
New tools to number stanzas ............................................. 1

v2.1.1.
General: Fix a bug with \ledpbs{before} .................................. 1

v2.1.2.
General: Fix a bug with lineation by pstart and tabular environments (added in 2.1.0). 1

v2.1.3.
\ledsetnormalparstuffX: Replaced \noindent with \parindent set to 0pt. ... 251
General: \Xhangindent and \hangindentX work now with all the paragraphs in the note. ............................................................... 1
\Xnoindent and \noindentX work now again (broken in 2.0.0). ............ 1
Change some internal code in order to provide compatibility with \يج\release{october 2015} ......................... 1
Fix a bug which inserted double space before paragraphed familiar notes. ............. 1
Fix a bug with \edindex when using not-Latin characters without UTF-8 engines .... 1

v2.2.0.
General: Fix a bug with combination of \onehalfspacing and two columns and three columns notes typeset. ........................................ 1
Fix a bug with some setting command and optimization option. ........................... 1
Fix spurious space with paragraphed critical notes when using Lua\يجX. .............. 1
Increase line list version number to ensure compatibility with new options of reledpar package. ................................................ 1
New setting tools for endnotes: \Xendnumberonlyfirstinline, \Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines, \Xendsymlinenum, \Xendbeforenumber, \Xendafterenumber, \Xendbeforesymlinenum, \Xendsymlinenum, \Xendboxsymlinenum, \Xendhangindent, \Xendbhooklinenumber, \Xendahooklinenumber, \Xendbhooklinenumber, \Xendahooklinenumber, \Xendbhookinplaceofnumber, \Xendahookinplaceofnumber ............................................. 1

v2.2.1.
General: Compatibility with \يجXformat 2015/10/01. ......................... 1

v2.2.2.
General: Fix a bug in \sethangingsymbol. ................................ 1
Fix a bug with old version of etex. ........................................ 1

v2.3.0.
General: Disable empty lines as paragraph in stanza. .............................. 1
Fix incompatibility of paragraphed footnotes with bidi v17.9 and following. .......... 1
Warning message when using some setting commands inside rightside environment (deprecated behavior) ........................................... 1

v2.3.1.
General: Fix spurious space when using optional argument of \stanza (introduced in v2.3.0). .................................................. 1

v2.4.0.
\footnotelayouts: First argument of \footnotelayout is now mandatory, not optional. ......................................................... 190
General: \Xbhbooknote and \bhbooknoteX work with notes in columns. .......... 1
Fix a bug of \parindentX and \Xparindent with two columns and three columns notes. ......................................................... 1
Fix a bug with \sameword in right side. ...................................... 1
Fix spurious space in two columns and three columns notes. ........................... 1
Fix spurious space when using optional argument of \stanza (introduced in v2.3.0). 1
New hooks: \Xlinerangeseparator and \Xendlinerangeseparator ........................... 46
Change History

Option linerangesep for critical footnotes and endnotes. .......................... 46

v2.4.1.
General: Fix a bug with \appref and \apprefwithpage (introduced in v2.4.0). .... 1
Fix a bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages
that override LaTeX \roman command, like Greek. .................................. 1
Fix a bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages
that override LaTeX \roman command, like Greek. .................................. 1

v2.5.0.
\SErefwithpage: Debug \setapprefprefixsingle .................................... 317
\edlabel: Fix a bug when calling \edlabel in a footnotes of the right side ...... 304
\@d@section: \endnotes take six arguments. ....................................... 257
\printlines@count: \printlines takes an eighth argument: the line flag ....... 227
\xlineref: \xlineref does not include anymore the side flag. Use \xflagref to get
it. Not that \xlineref still contains the flag. .................................... 310
General: \apprefwithpage and \appref print double quotation mark when the label
was not defined. .................................................................................. 1
\apprefwithpage and \appref work with right side crossref. ....................... 1
\apprefwithpage works also when noend option is enabled. ....................... 1
\appref and \apprefwithpage can take linerangesep optional argument. ........ 1
\edlabel works now in \Xfootnote. ....................................................... 1
\lemma can be used even when the nocritical is enabled. ......................... 1
Compatibility with new hook and tools of reledpar 2.6.0. ....................... 1
Fix spurious vertical space in astanza environment (reledpar) ................. 1
Log now states “There were undefined references” when using wrong references in
\xlineref or \xlineref. ............................................................................ 1
New hooks to customize page and line number appearance in endnotes. ....... 1
New hooks: \Xhsize and \hsizeX ......................................................... 57
New tools to easily make cross-reference to a passage defined by a start and an end line 66

v2.6.0.
General: Adds compatibility with innote and notenumber options of indextools
package. ............................................................................................. 1
Fix a bug with footnote counter in \ledgroup (added in v2.5.0). ................. 1
Fix bug, introduced in v2.5.0, with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting when
using \perpage package. ..................................................................... 1

v2.7.0.
\@k: \rigidbalance is split in \Xrigidbalance and \rigidbalanceX. .............. 206
\@d@section: \endnotes take seven arguments. ..................................... 257
General: Add dash as default page range separator for \SEnonlypage ............ 1
Debug \SErefonlypage when referring to only one page. ......................... 1
Delete parenthesis after \SErefonlypage. ............................................ 1
Fix (again) bugs with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting while using
\ledgroup environments (bug added in v2.5.0). ................................ 1
Fix a bug with \SErefwithpage. ......................................................... 1
Fix bugs in compatibility with innote and notenumber options of indextools
package, when indexing outside of a \ledgroup. ................................ 1
New commands to make glossaries connected to page and linenumber with the
glossaries package ............................................................................. 1
New hooks: \Xhsize and \hsizeX ......................................................... 57
New hooks: \Xlemmafont and \Xendlemmafont ..................................... 52
New setting commands: \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle and \setSErefonlypageprefixmore 1
Warning for duplicate and undefined labels are parsable by latexmk 1
Warning for duplicate labels does not send any more a false line and page number 1
When using hyperref package, add link in familiar footnotes between the footnote marks in the text and the footnote marks in the footnote 1
When using hyperref package, add links for \SEref and related, \appref and related. 1
When using hyperref package, add links from critical footnotes and critical endnotes to the line of text they refers 1
v2.7.1.
General: Debug \Xbhookgroup hooks executed on columnar footnotes (moved to a larger group, to take effect). 1
v2.7.2.
General: \Xhsize and \hsizex become \Xwidth and \widthx 57
Fix problem of hyphenation when using hyperref package (added in v2.7.0). 1
v2.8.0.
\l@d@section: \Xendhangindent and \Xendafternote can take values which are relative to the font size of the endnote. 257
General: reledmac cross-referencing can take advantage of xr package. 1
More \edgls... commands. 1
No indentation for paragraphed notes in ledgroup. Can be changed with \Xparindent and \parindentx 1
v2.8.1.
General: Warnings for undefined labels are really parsable by latexmk 1
v2.8.2.
General: Fix a bug concerning indent in a paragraph immediately following a sectioning command (bug NOT fixed on reledpar). 1
Fix a bug with \AtEveryPstart added in version 2.0.0. 1
Fix a bug with vertical space after the between-sectioning command as optional argument of a \pstart and \pstart content 1
v2.9.0.
General: Allow continuing line numbering between normal text and parallel text, using \pausenumbering and \resumenumbering and the continuousnumberingwithcolumns option. 1
Fix a bug when using \linenation\{page\} and \pausenumbering...\resumenumbering. 1
Fix a bug with three- and two-column footnote setting (added in v.24.0). 1
Fix spurious space inside three-column familiar footnote. 1
Write correct metadata in numbered files when using \pausenumbering...\resumenumbering. 1
v2.9.1.
General: Fix a bug when notes start with plus or minus. 1
v2.9.2.
General: Fix a bug with hyperref package when a lemma starts with plus or “minus” (bug introduced in v. 2.7.0). 1
v2.9.3.
General: Fix a bug with line number position and reset added by v. 2.9.0 1
v2.10.0.
\print@lemma: Code refactoring between \parformat, \twocolfootfmt, \threecolfootfmt and \normalfootfmt. ................................................................. 215
General: Add \AtEveryStanza and \AtEveryStopStanza. ................................ 1
Fix a bug in \ledlnotefontsetup and \ledrnotefontsetup which could not handle \color command properly. ......................................................... 1
More specific error messages. ................................................................ 1
New hooks: \xwrapcontent, \xendwrapcontent and \xwrapcontentX .......... 53
New hooks: \xraplemma and \xraplemma ................................................. 52

v2.10.1.
General: Add nopenalties option. .......................................................... 1
Fix a bug introduced in v. 1.4: not paragraphed critical footnotes could prevent marginal line number from being displayed ........................................ 1

v2.11.0.
\do@actions@fixedcode: Add action 1010 ............................................ 174
General: Add new tools to produce an apparatus of manuscripts .............. 1
Fix a bug in \parafootsep in parallel typesetting .................................. 1
Make \parafootsepX work ...................................................................... 1
Prevent \xtxtbeforenotes hook from causing notes to go beyond the bottom margin

v2.12.0.
General: \preXnotes becomes \xrenotes (naming convention) .................... 1
Add \hidenumberingonleftpage and \hidenumberingonrightpage .............. 1
Add \toendnotes and related. ................................................................. 1
Add auxdir option .............................................................................. 1
Fix a bug in critical and familiar footnotes when using uppercase letters with accent mark ................................................................. 1
Fix a bug when using \chapter in optional argument of \pstart in parallel typesetting in combination with the noeledsec option. .............. 1
Fix a bug with \ledinnernote and \ledouternote in parallel typesetting ...... 1
Fix a bug with familiar footnote number in optional argument of \pstart or \pend in parallel typesetting ......................................................... 1
Fix spurious vertical space in \chapter when used as optional argument of \pstart in parallel typesetting ......................................................... 1
Make endnote compatible with \samepage option ................................... 1
More accurate message to control the position of \xfootnote and \applabel in the \LaTeX code ........................................................................... 1

v2.13.0.
General: Version 2.13.0 never existed. ............................................... 1

v2.13.1.
General: In critical footnotes, the right side flag is printed only if requested explicitly with \xlineflag (bug added in v. 2.5.0). ........................................... 1

v2.13.2.
General: Fix a bug added in v. 11.2 which could make parallel typesetting not work ................................................................. 1

v2.13.3.
General: Makes \xendafterpagenumbe affecting \Serefwithpage ............... 1

v2.14.0.
General: Hyperref with the line number inside critical footnotes is correct when using \xxref ................................................................. 1
Some internal changes for new features of reledpar. ............................. 1
v2.14.1.
General: Fix a bug when using \footnoteX in the first argument of \edtext. ...... 1
v2.14.1a.
General: Fix problematic typos in the handbook. ......................... 1
v2.15.0.
General: Add "byline" arrangement. ..................................... 1
Fix \Xtxtbeforenotes in ledgroup. ..................................... 1
v2.15.1.
General: Fix \edindex in tabular environments. ........................... 1
v2.15.2.
General: Fix a bug with fancyhdr package 3.8 and later. ............... 1
v2.15.3.
General: Fix a bug in optional argument of \pstart and empty line before \pend (bug added in v2.8.2). ...................................... 1
Simplification of the sectioning command code. .......................... 1
v2.16.0.
General: \Xdo@feet becomes \do@Xfeet .................................. 299
Add \Xendpagenumberonlyfirst, \Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo, \Xendinplaceofpagenumber and \Xendsympagenum hooks. .............................................. 1
Add \Xpagelinesep hook. .................................................. 49
Compatibility with new features of reledpar ............................. 1
Deleted dead code. ................................................................ 1
Display a warning message if using a version of \TeX that is too old. ..... 1
Fix a bug with \Xgroupbylines for notes in two columns ................ 1
Fix a bug with \Xtxtbeforenotes for notes in three or two columns ...... 1
Fix a bug with notenumber option of indextools package when indexing texts in familiar footnotes ................................. 1
Fix potential bug when using \edindex in critical footnotes. .......... 1
More explicit error message in case the stanza indentation is not defined. ...... 299
New options for \fnpos and \mpfnpos to set a customized order for familiar and critical footnotes. ................................. 1
When \edindex is called outside of a \beginnumbering...\endnumbering structure, it is automatically switched to \index, with a warning message. 1
When indexing texts in familiar footnotes with \edtext, refer to the line number where the footnote is called. ................................. 1
When indexing texts in sidenotes with \edtext, refer to the line number where the sidenote is called. ................................. 1
v2.16.1.
General: Fix a bug with redefinition of the style of the footnote number (bug added in v2.12.0) .............................................. 1
v2.16.2.
General: Error message if footmisc is loaded after reledmac. ............ 1
Fix a bug introduced by v2.16.1 when using non-expandable control sequence, like \normalfont, in the footnote number style. .......... 1
v2.16.3.
General: Fix a bug with \SERef (bug added in v2.7.0). ...................... 1
v2.16.4.
General: Fix a bug with vertical space before sectioning command in optional argument of \pstart (bug added in v2.15.3). ...................... 1
v2.16.5.
  General: Fix potential spurious spaces in endnotes. 1
v2.16.6.
  General: Fix a bug with the line number style in \doenotes when referring to right
  side line in parallel typesetting. 1
  Take into account \linenumberstyle when using \edlineref. 1
v2.16.7.
  General: Fix a bug with \msdata when using multiple \beginnumbering...
  \endnumbering. 1
  Fix a bug with \numberpstarttrue when using multiple \beginnumbering...
  \endnumbering. 1
v2.16.8.
  General: Fix a bug with \edindex in footnotes in parallel typesetting. 1
v2.17.0.
  General: Add \edglsadd command. 1
  Add \setmsdataposition setting. 1
v2.17.1.
  General: Fix spurious space in paragraphed footnotes when using Lua\TeX without using
  Right-To-Left text. 1
v2.17.2.
  General: Change log message when numbered files still don’t exist, in order to improve
  compatibility with latexmk. 1
v2.17.3.
  General: Fix a bug with \doendnotesbysection and \doendnotes. 1
v2.17.4.
  General: Fix a bug with \setSErefonlypageprefixsingle and
  \setSErefonlypageprefixmore. 1
v2.17.5.
  General: Fix a bug with \pstartref when referring to the left side in parallel typesetting. 1
v2.18.0.
  General: Fix a bug when using a \edtext in two lines or more in right-to-left
  typesetting with X\E\L\A \TeX. 1
  Fix a bug when using both \numberonlyfirstintwolines or
  \numberonlyfirstinline and \Xparafootsep and \Xsymlinenum. 1
v2.18.1.
  General: Fix a bug when using \msdata with Lua\TeX Xor with the hyperref package. 1
v2.19.0.
  General: Add \footnoteXmark and \footnoteXtext commands. 1
  Add better compatibility with the csquotes package when using familiar footnotes. 1
  Fix a bug with paragraph indent after sectioning command. 1
v2.20.0.
  General: Add \AtStartEveryStanza, \BeforeEveryStopStanza,
  \AtEndEveryPend, \AtStartEveryPstart. 1
  Add second optional argument to \pstart, \pend and \stanza. 1
  Add starred version of \AtEveryPstart, \AtEveryPend, \AtEveryStanza and
  \AtEveryStopStanza. 1
  Add third and fourth optional argument to \newverse. 1
  Fix a bug when using familiar footnotes in \eledsection and related. 1
  Reset font specification at the beginning of familiar footnotes. 1
Change History

v2.21.0.
General: Add the possibility of nested \sameword commands. ......................... 1
Fix a bug when using formatting command in the argument of \edindex inside \edtext. ......................................................... 1
Now, as explained in the handbook, a \edindex inside \edtext only creates an index reference to the main text, and not to the critical footnote. ......................... 1

v2.22.0.
General: Add \txtbeforenotesonlyonceX and \Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce hooks. 1
Add \txtbeforenotesX hook. .............................................. 1
Fix a bug added in v2.16.0 when using \Xtxtbeforenotes with paragraphed or normal footnotes. .............................................. 1
Fix a bug with three and two columns critical footnotes, broken in v. 2.17.6. ............... 1

v2.22.1.
General: Compatibility with new version of reledpar. .......................... 1
Fix a bug with some commands inside \sameword. .................................. 1

v2.22.2.
General: Do not print footnotes at the first run. .................................. 1

v2.23.0.
General: Add swcaseinsensitive option ........................................... 1
Optimisation of the code added on v2.22.2 to not print footnotes at the first run. ........... 1

v2.24.0.
\next@line@list@stuff: Add \next@line@list@stuff internal hook ............. 133
General: Add \svnoexpands macro to avoid problems with not fully expandable macro inside \sameword. ............................................. 1
Fix a bug with \edlabel at the beginning of a \pstart. ............................. 1
Fix spurious space with \labelpstarttrue .................................... 1
When a \setlinenum is used, it is stronger than the \lineation{page} setting. ............. 1

v2.24.1.
General: Compatibility with reledpar 2.20.2 .................................... 1

v2.24.2.
General: Fix bug between tabular environments and endnotes .................... 1

v2.25.0.
General: Add \Xendtxtbeforenotes hook .......................................... 1

v2.26.0.
General: Add a mechanism for annotation of stanza line numbering ............... 1
Fix bug in \xpstartref ............................................... 1

v2.26.1.
General: Fix bug with \linenumannotation ...................................... 1

v2.26.10.
General: Add error message when insertion a \pstart or \pend inside \edtext arguments .................................................. 1
Really fix bug with page number in footnote after \mainmatter (bug introduced in v2.26.7) ............................................. 1

v2.26.11.
General: Allow to use \edtext inside \sameword .................................. 1

v2.26.12.
General: Precise minimal version of xparse package required. .................... 1

v2.26.2.
General: Fix bug with \linenumannotation in parallel typesetting ............... 1
Fix bug with \Xgroupbyline and \Xparafootsep. .................................. 1
Fix bug with \Xgroupbyline and optional argument of critical footnotes. ............ 1
Fix bug with \Xgroupbyline for the series after the first one. ....................... 1

v2.26.3.
  General: Fix bug added by v2.26.0 with notes in parallel typesetting ............ 1

v2.26.4.
  General: Fix bug when using \numberpstarttrue and alternating between manual
  \pstart and automatic \pstart produced by \autopar .............................. 1

v2.26.5.
  General: Check that users have a enough recent version of xparse ................ 1
  Fix bug when using \eledsection with the \textit{continuousnumberingwithcolumns}
of \reledpar .............................................. 1
  Fix bug with \textit{continuousnumberingwithcolumns} ................................ 1
  Fix bug when using \eledsection and related when alternate normal typesetting and
  parallel typesetting .................................................. 1

v2.26.6.
  General: Fix bug with \lineation by page and nested \edtext between two pages
  (added in v. 2.24.0) .................................................. 1

v2.26.7.
  General: Fix page number in footnote and endnotes when using
  \textit{sameparallelpagenumber} option of \reledpar and typesetting critical text in
  single mode after critical text in double page mode ............................... 1

v2.26.8.
  General: Fix bug in some specific cases, introduced by v.2.27.7 .................. 1

v2.26.9.
  General: Fix bug with critical footnotes line number when alternating between
  \numberlinefalse and \numberlinetrue ........................................... 1
  Fix bug with page number in footnote after \mainmatter (bug introduced in v2.26.7) 1
  Workaround with a bug of \textit{LTX2018/04/01 patch level 3 to generate the .sty file from}
  a .ins file .......................................................... 1

v2.27.0.
  General: Add \Xnoidenticallinenumannotation and \Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation hooks 1
  Add separator between line number annotations in margin. Add
  \setlinenumnotationsep ................................................. 1
v2.31.0.
  General: Add noprefix and prefixmore to \appref and \Seref. .......................... 1
v2.31.1.
  General: Fix bug in vertical spacing with \Xgroupbyline. ............................. 1
  Fix bug with \Xhangindent and \hangindentX for right-to-left texts. ............... 1
  Fix bug with indentation with \Xgroupbyline. ......................................... 1
  Fix bug with multiple footnote layer and \Xgroupbyline. ............................ 1
  Fix incompatibility between \Xgroupbyline and hyperref package. ................ 1
  Fix incompatibility between \Xgroupbyline and optional argument of critical footnotes. ................................. 1
v2.31.2.
  General: Fix bug with familiar footnote containing non-default font (introduced with v. 2.20.0). ................................. 1
v2.31.3.
  General: Fix bug with paragraphed footnote in RTL context. ........................ 1
v2.32.0.
  General: Add \Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst, \Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo, \Xsymlinenumnotation, \Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst, \Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo and \Xendsymlinenumnotation. 1
v2.32.1.
  General: Do not print \Xendsymlinenum if we print \Xendsymlinenum. .............. 1
  When using \parindentX or \Xparindent and stanza, use the normal indentation in the footnote, not the verse indentation. ......................... 1
v2.32.2.
  General: Fix spurious vertical space in familiar footnotes with Lua\TeX. ......... 1
v2.32.3.
  General: Fix bug with critical footnotes when typesetting Arabic text with polyglossia. 1
v2.32.4.
  General: \footnoteXmark and \footnoteXtext can now have an optional argument, setting the footnote number. ................................. 1
  Fix bug \footnoteXmark and \footnoteXtext. ........................................... 1
  Fix bug when using \Xgroupbyline and twocol arrangement. ........................... 1
  Fix bug with three and two columns footnotes when using bidi. ................... 1
v2.32.5.
  General: Fix bug with \edindex inside \eledsection and related. .................. 1
  Fix bug with macro inside \sameword with no-X\TeX engines. ....................... 1
  Fix bug with page number in index with \edindex when indexing a critical notes. 1
v2.32.6.
  General: Add hyperref link when inserting glossary entries. ........................ 1
  Fix bug with glossary entries inside the first argument of \edtext. ............. 1
v2.32.7.
  General: Fix bug with \lineation[pstart] and \edtext in the very first line of a \pstart. ...................................................... 1
  Fix bug with \parafootsepX. ........................................................... 1
  Fix spurious spaces at the very first line of edtabular environments. ........ 1
v2.32.8.
  General: Add subline number in manuscript apparatus. ............................... 1
Change History

v2.33.0.
\ledinnotemark: \ledinnotemark redefinition is deprecated, use \Xinnotemark and
\innotemarkX instead. .......................................................... 338
\newhookcommand@series: \newhookcommand@series can take an second optional
argument (third argument). .................................................. 287
General: Add \Xinnotemark and \innotemarkX hooks. ...................... 1
Add antilabe feature. ......................................................... 1
Add startstanzaindentsrepetition feature. ............................... 1

v2.33.1.
General: Fix a spacing bug when the argument of \antilabe contains more than one
word. .................................................................................. 1

v2.34.0.
General: Add \Xpstartonlyfirst and \Xstanzaonlyfirst. ................. 1
Add \Xpstartseparator. ........................................................... 1

v2.34.1.
General: Fix bug with page number when using stanazindentsrepetition, bug introduced
in v2.33.0. ................................................................. 1

v2.34.2.
General: Fix bug with tabular environment, in some specific use case, added in v2.32.7... 1

v2.34.3.
General: Fix bug with \parafootsep when the footnotes are called outside of a
numbered section. .............................................................. 1
Fix incompatibility between lineation by \pstart and \astanza. ......... 1
Make commands like \hidenumbering working at the very beginning of a verse
when the first argument of \setstanzaindents is equal to 0. ............ 1

v2.34.4.
General: Fix bugs with \parafootsepX outside of numbered section. ...... 1
Fix some bugs with lineation by page, when a numbered section starts at the very
beginning of page. .............................................................. 1

v2.34.5.
General: Fix incompatibility between \apprefwithpage / \SErefwithpage and line
number annotation mechanism. ............................................. 1

v2.34.6.
General: Fix incompatibility with calc package (added with v2.34.4). .. 1

v2.34.7.
General: Fix bug with \parafootsepX in some circumstances (added with v2.34.4). ... 1

v2.35.0.
General: Add \linenumannotationothersidetrue. ....................... 1
Add new hooks: \Xnolinenumber, \Xendnolinenumber,
\Xnolinenumberifannotation, \Xendnolinenumberifannotation. ...... 1

v2.35.1.
General: Fix a bug when printing ending page number in endnotes and using the
hypperref package. .............................................................. 1

v2.36.0.
General: Add \Xnonote and \nonoteX. .......................................... 1
Fix bug with sublineation on right side of parallel typesetting. .......... 1

v2.36.1.
General: Fix bug with crossreferencing in parallel typesetting (added in v2.34.4) .. 1

v2.37.0.
General: Fix bug with \Xnonote ................................................ 1
Fix incompatibility between \eledsection (and related) and hyperref.
Incompatibility was introduced by some changes in hyperref package. ....... 1
Improve syntax check. ......................................................... 1

v2.37.1.
General: Fix bug with \edgls and related in \edtext argument. Require
glossaries-extra is glossaries is loaded. ..................................... 1

v2.37.2.
General: Fix bug with \Xgroupbyline and two or three columns notes. ......... 1
Fix bug with \Xstanzaonlyfirst. ............................................. 1
Fix bug with parapparatus option and nested \edtext. .......................... 1

v2.38.0.
General: Add \Xbeforepagernumber hook. ...................................... 1
Add \Xnopagernumberifcurrent hook. ....................................... 1
Add hyperlinks between footnote and lemma when using abbreviated line range. 1
Fix bug with \lemma and right-to-left typesetting with \Xelatex. .......... 1
Fix indent bugs with stanza and right-to-left typesetting. ................... 1

v2.38.1.
General: Fix incompatibility between reledpar’s option
continuousnumberingwithcolumns and lineation by page. .................. 1

v2.38.2.
General: Fix bug when using \applabel in conjunction with hyperref package. ..... 1
Fix some trouble in indentation in stanza, when switching to some language with
polyglossia. ................................................................. 1

v2.39.0.
General: Add \Xnotboxingsubline and \Xendnotboxingsubline hooks. .......... 1